PIC16F7X7
Data Sheet

28/40/44-Pin, 8-Bit CMOS Flash Microcontrollers with 10-Bit A/D and nanoWatt Technology

Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as “unbreakable.”

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break microchip’s code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

DNV Certification, Inc. USA — ANSI-RAB QMS ACCREDITED — DNV MSC The Netherlands Accredited by the RvA — DNV — ISO 9001 / QS-9000 REGISTERED FIRM

Microchip received QS-9000 quality system certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona in July 1999 and Mountain View, California in March 2002. The Company’s quality system processes and procedures are QS-9000 compliant for its PICmicro® 8-bit MCUs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, non-volatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip’s quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001 certified.

PIC16F7X7

28/40/44-Pin, 8-Bit CMOS Flash Microcontrollers with 10-Bit A/D and nanoWatt Technology

Low-Power Features:

- Power Managed modes:
  - Primary Run (XT, RC oscillator, 76 μA, 1 MHz, 2V)
  - RC_RUN (7 μA, 31.25 kHz, 2V)
  - SEC_RUN (9 μA, 32 kHz, 2V)
  - Sleep (0.1 μA, 2V)
- Timer1 Oscillator (1.8 μA, 32 kHz, 2V)
- Watchdog Timer (0.7 μA, 2V)
- Two-Speed Oscillator Start-up

Oscillators:

- Three Crystal modes:
  - LP, XT, HS (up to 20 MHz)
- Two External RC modes
- One External Clock mode:
  - ECIO (up to 20 MHz)
- Internal Oscillator Block:
  - 8 user-selectable frequencies (31 kHz, 125 kHz, 250 kHz, 500 kHz, 1 MHz, 2 MHz, 4 MHz, 8 MHz)

Analog Features:

- 10-bit, up to 14-channel Analog-to-Digital Converter:
  - Programmable Acquisition Time
  - Conversion available during Sleep mode
- Dual Analog Comparators
- Programmable Low Current Brown-out Reset (BOR) Circuitry and Programmable Low-Voltage Detect (LVD)

Peripheral Features:

- High Sink/Source Current: 25 mA
- Two 8-bit Timers with Prescaler
- Timer1/RTC module:
  - 16-bit timer/counter with prescaler
  - Can be incremented during Sleep via external 32 kHz watch crystal
- Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) with 3-wire SPI™ and I^2C™ (Master and Slave) modes
- Addressable Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (AUSART)
- Three Capture, Compare, PWM modules:
  - Capture is 16-bit, max. resolution is 12.5 ns
  - Compare is 16-bit, max. resolution is 200 ns
  - PWM max. resolution is 10 bits
- Parallel Slave Port (PSP) – 40/44-pin devices only

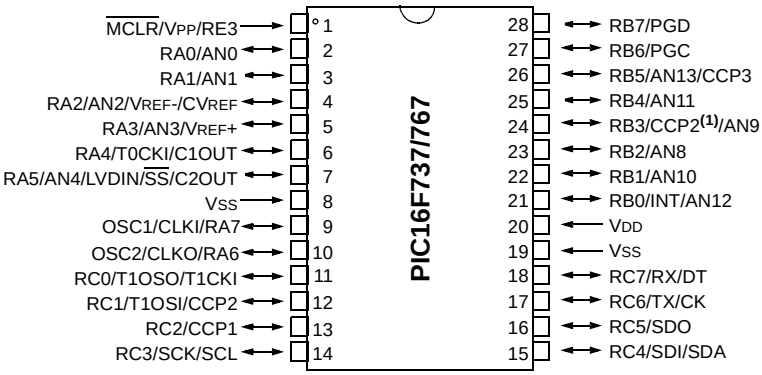
Special Microcontroller Features:

- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor for protecting critical applications against crystal failure
- Two-Speed Start-up mode for immediate code execution
- Power-on Reset (POR), Power-up Timer (PWRT) and Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- Programmable Code Protection
- Processor Read Access to Program Memory
- Power Saving Sleep mode
- In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) via two pins
- MPLAB® In-Circuit Debug (ICD) via two pins
- $\overline{MCLR}$ pin function replaceable with input only pin

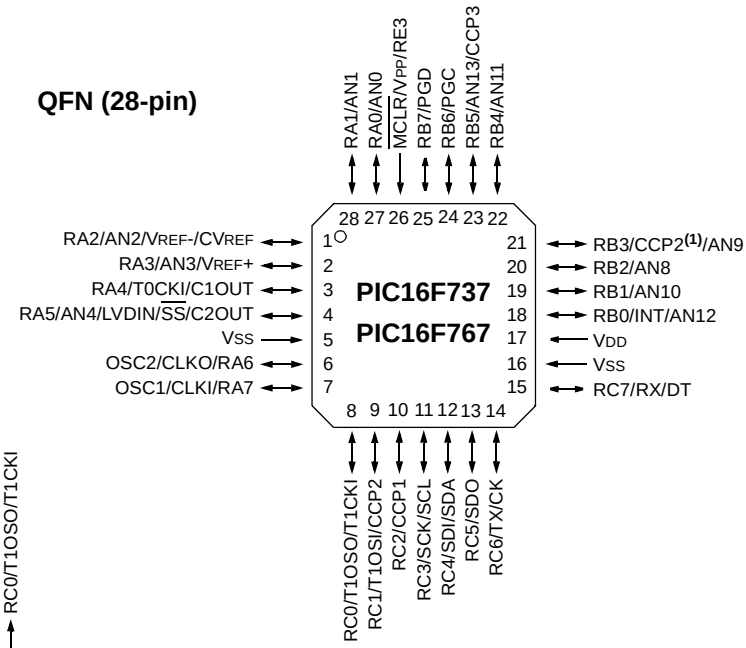
Device	Program Memory (# Single-Word Instructions)	Data SRAM (Bytes)	I/O	Interrupts	10-bit A/D (ch)	Comparators	CCP (PWM)	MSSP		AUSART	Timers 8/16-bit
								SPI	I^2C (Master)		
PIC16F737	4096	368	25	16	11	2	3	Yes	Yes	Yes	2/1
PIC16F747	4096	368	36	17	14	2	3	Yes	Yes	Yes	2/1
PIC16F767	8192	368	25	16	11	2	3	Yes	Yes	Yes	2/1
PIC16F777	8192	368	36	17	14	2	3	Yes	Yes	Yes	2/1

Pin Diagrams

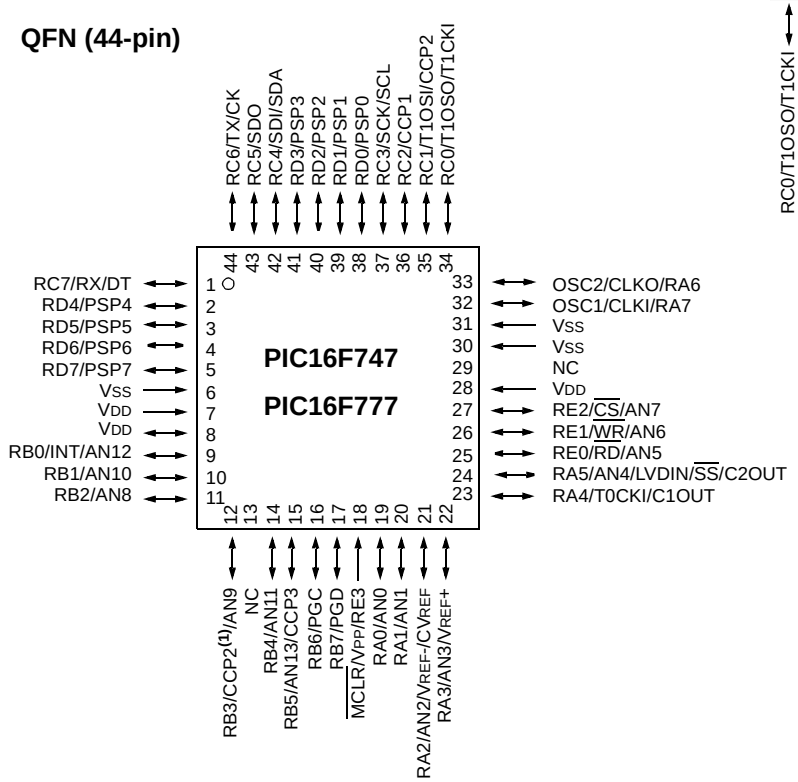
PDIP, SOIC, SSOP (28-pin)



QFN (28-pin)



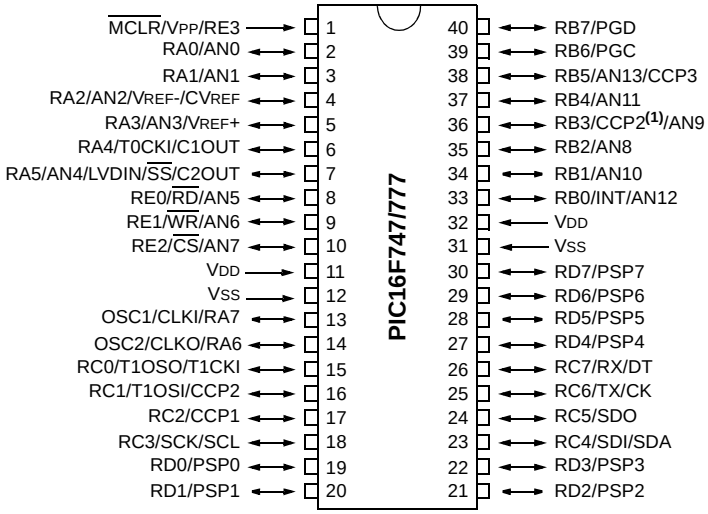
QFN (44-pin)



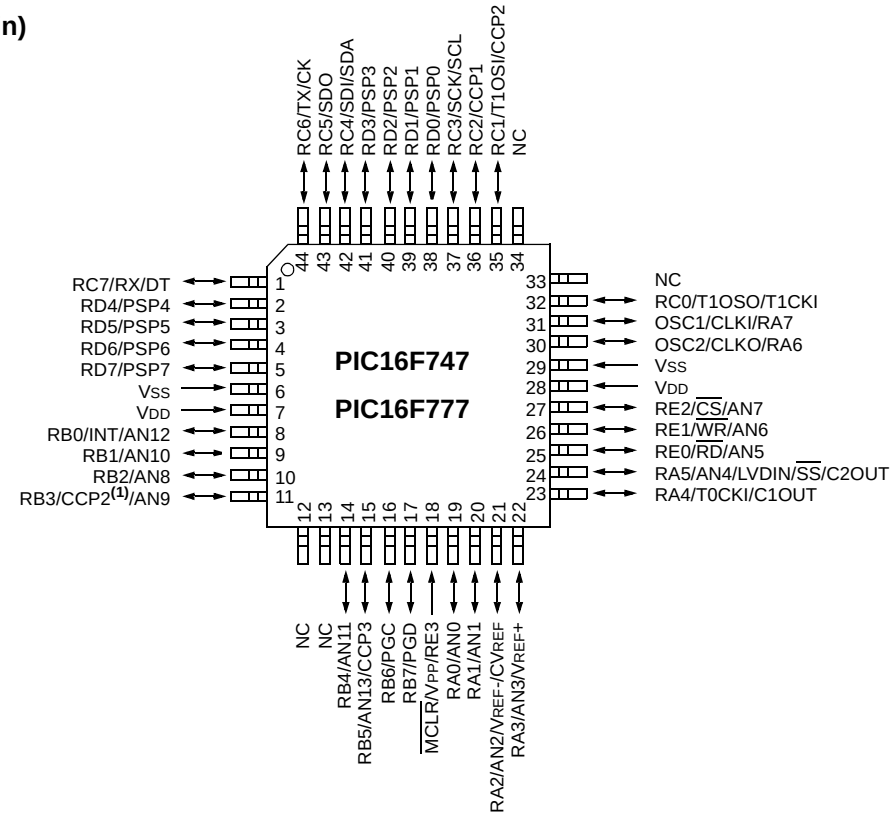
Note 1: RB3 is the alternate pin for the CCP2 pin multiplexing.

Pin Diagrams (Continued)

PDIP (40-pin)



TQFP (44-pin)



Note 1: RB3 is the alternate pin for the CCP2 pin multiplexing.

Table of Contents

TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at **docerrors@mail.microchip.com** or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

http://www.microchip.com

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; http://www.microchip.com
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)
- The Microchip Corporate Literature Center; U.S. FAX: (480) 792-7277

When contacting a sales office or the literature center, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at **www.microchip.com/cn** to receive the most current information on all of our products.

1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

This document contains device specific information about the following devices:

- PIC16F737
- PIC16F747
- PIC16F767
- PIC16F777

PIC16F737/767 devices are available only in 28-pin packages, while PIC16F747/777 devices are available in 40-pin and 44-pin packages. All devices in the PIC16F7X7 family share common architecture with the following differences:

- The PIC16F737 and PIC16F767 have one-half of the total on-chip memory of the PIC16F747 and PIC16F777.
- The 28-pin devices have 3 I/O ports, while the 40/44-pin devices have 5.
- The 28-pin devices have 16 interrupts, while the 40/44-pin devices have 17.
- The 28-pin devices have 11 A/D input channels, while the 40/44-pin devices have 14.
- The Parallel Slave Port is implemented only on the 40/44-pin devices.
- Low-Power modes: RC_RUN allows the core and peripherals to be clocked from the INTRC, while SEC_RUN allows the core and peripherals to be clocked from the low-power Timer1. Refer to **Section 4.7 "Power Managed Modes"** for further details.
- Internal RC oscillator with eight selectable frequencies, including 31.25 kHz, 125 kHz, 250 kHz, 500 kHz, 1 MHz, 2 MHz, 4 MHz and 8 MHz. The INTRC can be configured as a primary or secondary clock source. Refer to **Section 4.5 "Internal Oscillator Block"** for further details.
- The Timer1 module current consumption has been greatly reduced from 20 μA (previous PIC16 devices) to 1.8 μA typical (32 kHz at 2V), which is ideal for real-time clock applications. Refer to **Section 7.0 "Timer1 Module"** for further details.
- Extended Watchdog Timer (WDT) that can have a programmable period from 1 ms to 268s. The WDT has its own 16-bit prescaler. Refer to **Section 15.17 "Watchdog Timer (WDT)"** for further details.
- Two-Speed Start-up: When the oscillator is configured for LP, XT or HS, this feature will clock the device from the INTRC while the oscillator is warming up. This, in turn, will enable almost immediate code execution. Refer to **Section 15.17.3 "Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode"** for further details.
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor: This feature will allow the device to continue operation if the primary or secondary clock source fails, by switching over to the INTRC.

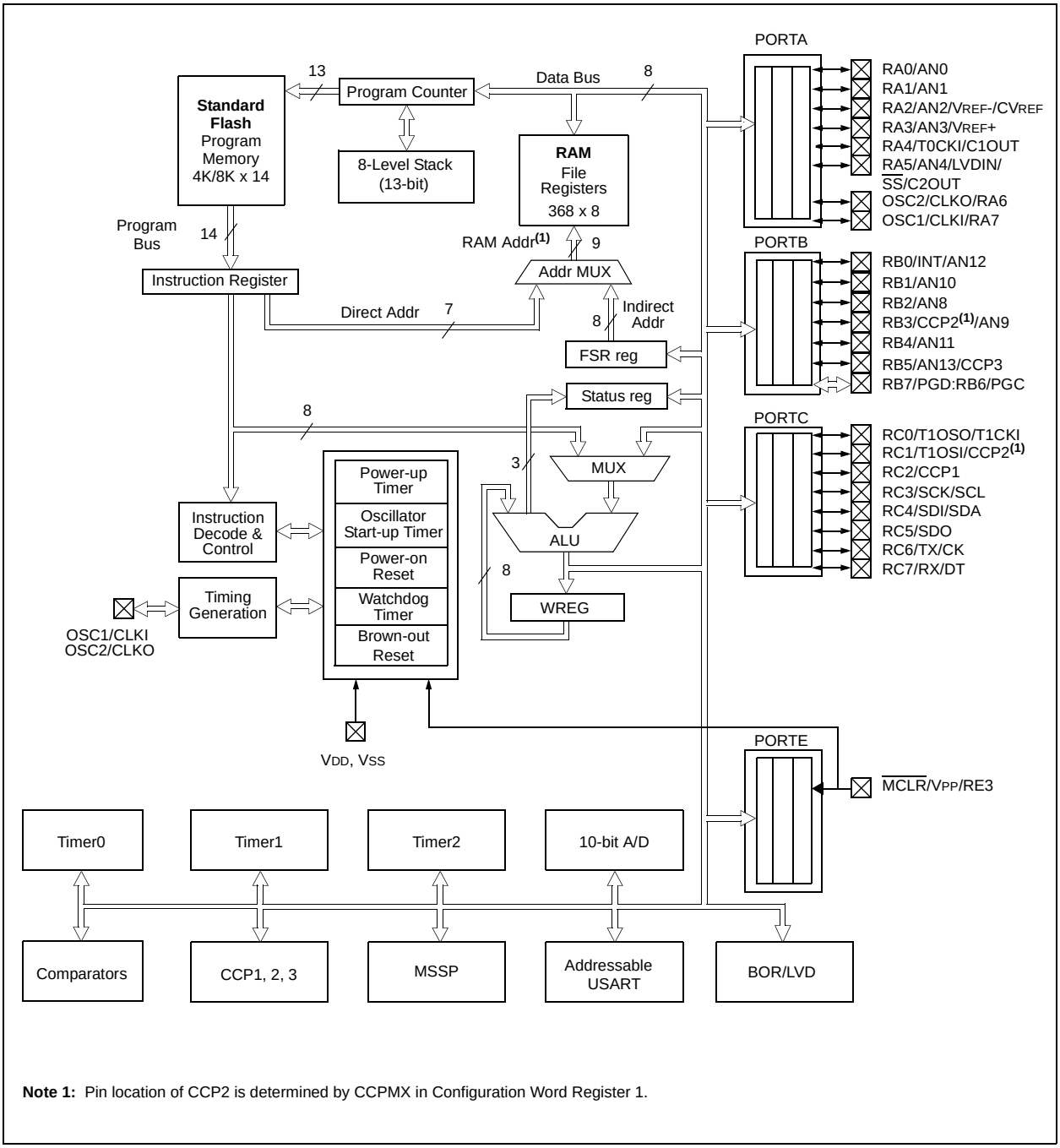
The available features are summarized in Table 1-1. Block diagrams of the PIC16F737/767 and PIC16F747/777 devices are provided in Figure 1-1 and Figure 1-2, respectively. The pinouts for these device families are listed in Table 1-2 and Table 1-3.

Additional information may be found in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023), which may be obtained from your local Microchip Sales Representative or downloaded from the Microchip web site. The Reference Manual should be considered a complementary document to this data sheet and is highly recommended reading for a better understanding of the device architecture and operation of the peripheral modules.

TABLE 1-1: PIC16F7X7 DEVICE FEATURES

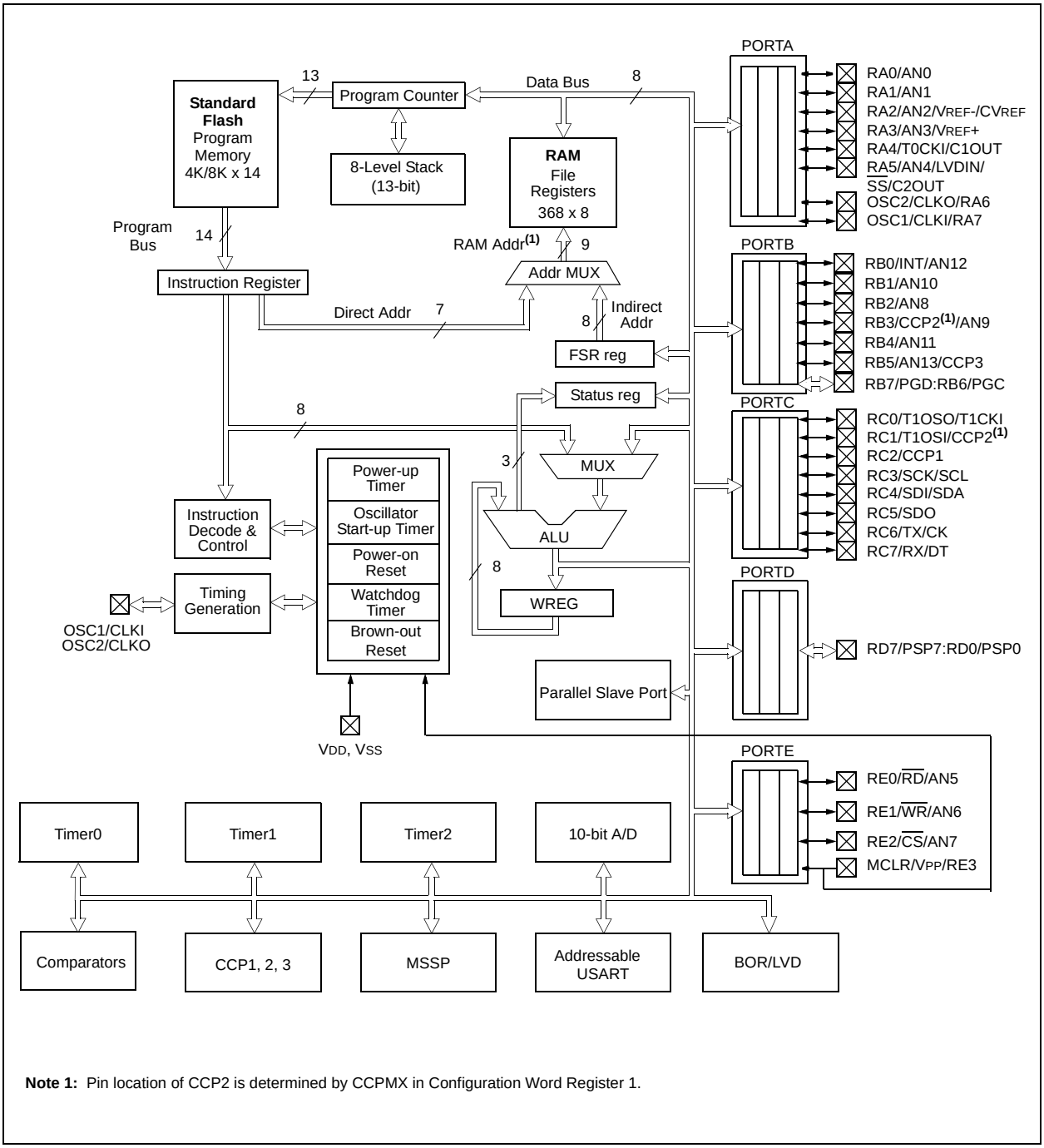
Key Features	PIC16F737	PIC16F747	PIC16F767	PIC16F777
Operating Frequency	DC – 20 MHz	DC – 20 MHz	DC – 20 MHz	DC – 20 MHz
Resets (and Delays)	POR, BOR (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR (PWRT, OST)
Flash Program Memory (14-bit words)	4K	4K	8K	8K
Data Memory (bytes)	368	368	368	368
Interrupts	16	17	16	17
I/O Ports	Ports A, B, C	Ports A, B, C, D, E	Ports A, B, C	Ports A, B, C, D, E
Timers	3	3	3	3
Capture/Compare/PWM Modules	3	3	3	3
Master Serial Communications	MSSP, USART	MSSP, USART	MSSP, USART	MSSP, USART
Parallel Communications	—	PSP	—	PSP
10-bit Analog-to-Digital Module	11 Input Channels	14 Input Channels	11 Input Channels	14 Input Channels
Instruction Set	35 Instructions	35 Instructions	35 Instructions	35 Instructions
Packaging	28-pin PDIP 28-pin SOIC 28-pin SSOP 28-pin QFN	40-pin PDIP 44-pin QFN 44-pin TQFP	28-pin PDIP 28-pin SOIC 28-pin SSOP 28-pin QFN	40-pin PDIP 44-pin QFN 44-pin TQFP

FIGURE 1-1: PIC16F737 AND PIC16F767 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: Pin location of CCP2 is determined by CCPMX in Configuration Word Register 1.

FIGURE 1-2: PIC16F747 AND PIC16F777 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: Pin location of CCP2 is determined by CCPMX in Configuration Word Register 1.

TABLE 1-2: PIC16F737 AND PIC16F767 PINOUT DESCRIPTION

Pin Name	PDIP SSOP SOIC Pin #	QFN Pin #	I/O/P Type	Buffer Type	Description
OSC1/CLKI/RA7	9	7		ST/CMOS(3)	Oscillator crystal or external clock input.
OSC1			I		Oscillator crystal input or external clock source input. ST buffer when configured in RC mode; otherwise CMOS.
CLKI			I		External clock source input. Always associated with pin function OSC1 (see OSC1/CLKI, OSC2/CLKO pins).
RA7			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	10	6		—	Oscillator crystal or clock output.
OSC2			O		Oscillator crystal output. Connects to crystal or resonator in Crystal Oscillator mode.
CLKO			O		In RC mode, OSC2 pin outputs CLKO, which has 1/4 the frequency of OSC1 and denotes the instruction cycle rate.
RA6			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{MCLR}$/VPP/RE3	1	26		ST	Master Clear (input) or programming voltage (output).
$\overline{MCLR}$			I		Master Clear (Reset) input. This pin is an active-low Reset to the device.
VPP			P		Programming voltage input.
RE3			I		Digital input only pin.
					PORTA is a bidirectional I/O port.
RA0/AN0	2	27		TTL	
RA0			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN0			I		Analog input 0.
RA1/AN1	3	28		TTL	
RA1			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN1			I		Analog input 1.
RA2/AN2/VREF-/CVREF	4	1		TTL	
RA2			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN2			I		Analog input 2.
VREF-			I		A/D reference voltage input (low).
CVREF			0		Comparator voltage reference output.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	5	2		TTL	
RA3			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN3			I		Analog input 3.
VREF+			I		A/D reference voltage input (high).
RA4/T0CKI/C1OUT	6	3		ST	
RA4			I/O		Digital I/O – Open-drain when configured as output.
T0CKI			I		Timer0 external clock input.
C1OUT			O		Comparator 1 output bit.
RA5/AN4/LVDIN/$\overline{SS}$/C2OUT	7	4		TTL	
RA5			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN4			I		Analog input 4.
LVDIN			I/O		Low-voltage detect input.
$\overline{SS}$			I		SPI slave select input.
C2OUT			O		Comparator 2 output bit.

Legend: I = input O = output I/O = input/output P = power
— = Not used TTL = TTL input ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the external interrupt.
2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.
3: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured in RC Oscillator mode and a CMOS input otherwise.

TABLE 1-2: PIC16F737 AND PIC16F767 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	PDIP SSOP SOIC Pin #	QFN Pin #	I/O/P Type	Buffer Type	Description
					PORTB is a bidirectional I/O port. PORTB can be software programmed for internal weak pull-up on all inputs.
RB0/INT/AN12	21	18		TTL/ST(1)	
RB0			I/O		Digital I/O.
INT			I		External interrupt.
AN12			I		Analog input channel 12.
RB1/AN10	22	19		TTL	
RB1			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN10			I		Analog input channel 10.
RB2/AN8	23	20		TTL	
RB2			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN8			I		Analog input channel 8.
RB3/CCP2/AN9	24	21		TTL	
RB3			I/O		Digital I/O.
CCP2			I/O		CCP2 capture input, compare output, PWM output.
AN9			I		Analog input channel 9.
RB4/AN11	25	22		TTL	
RB4			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN11			I		Analog input channel 11.
RB5/AN13/CCP3	26	23		TTL	
RB5			I/O		Digital I/O.
AN13			I		Analog input channel 13.
CCP3			I/O		CCP3 capture input, compare output, PWM output.
RB6/PGC	27	24		TTL/ST(2)	
RB6			I/O		Digital I/O.
PGC			I/O		In-circuit debugger and ICSP programming clock.
RB7/PGD	28	25		TTL/ST(2)	
RB7			I/O		Digital I/O.
PGD			I/O		In-circuit debugger and ICSP programming data.

Legend: I = input O = output I/O = input/output P = power
— = Not used TTL = TTL input ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the external interrupt.
2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.
3: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured in RC Oscillator mode and a CMOS input otherwise.

TABLE 1-2: PIC16F737 AND PIC16F767 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	PDIP SSOP SOIC Pin #	QFN Pin #	I/O/P Type	Buffer Type	Description
					PORTC is a bidirectional I/O port.
RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI	11	8		ST	
RC0			I/O		Digital I/O.
T1OSO			O		Timer1 oscillator output.
T1CKI			I		Timer1 external clock input.
RC1/T1OSI/CCP2	12	9		ST	
RC1			I/O		Digital I/O.
T1OSI			I		Timer1 oscillator input.
CCP2			I/O		Capture2 input, Compare2 output, PWM2 output.
RC2/CCP1	13	10		ST	
RC2			I/O		Digital I/O.
CCP1			I/O		Capture1 input, Compare1 output, PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	14	11		ST	
RC3			I/O		Digital I/O.
SCK			I/O		Synchronous serial clock input/output for SPI mode.
SCL			I/O		Synchronous serial clock input/output for I^2C mode.
RC4/SDI/SDA	15	12		ST	
RC4			I/O		Digital I/O.
SDI			I		SPI data in.
SDA			I/O		I^2C data I/O.
RC5/SDO	16	13		ST	
RC5			I/O		Digital I/O.
SDO			O		SPI data out.
RC6/TX/CK	17	14		ST	
RC6			I/O		Digital I/O.
TX			O		USART asynchronous transmit.
CK			I/O		USART1 synchronous clock.
RC7/RX/DT	18	15		ST	
RC7			I/O		Digital I/O.
RX			I		USART asynchronous receive.
DT			I/O		USART synchronous data.
VSS	8, 19	5, 16	P	—	Ground reference for logic and I/O pins.
VDD	20	17	P	—	Positive supply for logic and I/O pins.

Legend: I = input O = output I/O = input/output P = power
— = Not used TTL = TTL input ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the external interrupt.
2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.
3: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured in RC Oscillator mode and a CMOS input otherwise.

TABLE 1-3: PIC16F747 AND PIC16F777 PINOUT DESCRIPTION

Pin Name	PDIP Pin #	QFN Pin #	TQFP Pin #	I/O/P Type	Buffer Type	Description
OSC1/CLKI/RA7	13	32	31		ST/CMOS(4)	Oscillator crystal or external clock input.
OSC1				I		Oscillator crystal input or external clock source input. ST buffer when configured in RC mode; otherwise CMOS.
CLKI				I		External clock source input. Always associated with pin function OSC1 (see OSC1/CLKI, OSC2/CLKO pins).
RA7				I/O	ST	Bidirectional I/O pin.
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	14	33	30		—	Oscillator crystal or clock output.
OSC2				O		Oscillator crystal output. Connects to crystal or resonator in Crystal Oscillator mode.
CLKO				O		In RC mode, OSC2 pin outputs CLKO, which has 1/4 the frequency of OSC1 and denotes the instruction cycle rate.
RA6				I/O	ST	Bidirectional I/O pin.
$\overline{MCLR}$/VPP/RE3	1	18	18		ST	Master Clear (input) or programming voltage (output).
$\overline{MCLR}$				I		Master Clear (Reset) input. This pin is an active- low Reset to the device.
VPP				P		Programming voltage input.
RE3				I		Digital input only pin.
						PORTA is a bidirectional I/O port.
RA0/AN0	2	19	19		TTL	
RA0				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN0				I		Analog input 0.
RA1/AN1	3	20	20		TTL	
RA1				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN1				I		Analog input 1.
RA2/AN2/VREF-/CVREF	4	21	21		TTL	
RA2				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN2				I		Analog input 2.
VREF-				I		A/D reference voltage input (low).
CVREF				I		Comparator voltage reference output.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	5	22	22		TTL	
RA3				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN3				I		Analog input 3.
VREF+				I		A/D reference voltage input (high).
RA4/T0CKI/C1OUT	6	23	23		ST	
RA4				I/O		Digital I/O – Open-drain when configured as output.
T0CKI				I		Timer0 external clock input.
C1OUT				O		Comparator 1 output.
RA5/AN4/LVDIN/$\overline{SS}$/C2OUT	7	24	24		TTL	
RA5				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN4				I		Analog input 4.
LVDIN				I		Low-voltage detect input.
$\overline{SS}$				I		SPI slave select input.
C2OUT				I		Comparator 2 output.

Legend: I = input O = output I/O = input/output P = power
— = Not used TTL = TTL input ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as an external interrupt.

2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.

3: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as a general purpose I/O and a TTL input when used in the Parallel Slave Port mode (for interfacing to a microprocessor bus).

4: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured in RC Oscillator mode and a CMOS input otherwise.

TABLE 1-3: PIC16F747 AND PIC16F777 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	PDIP Pin #	QFN Pin #	TQFP Pin #	I/O/P Type	Buffer Type	Description
						PORTB is a bidirectional I/O port. PORTB can be software programmed for internal weak pull-up on all inputs.
RB0/INT/AN12	33	9	8		TTL/ST(1)	
RB0				I/O		Digital I/O.
INT				I		External interrupt.
AN12				I		Analog input channel 12.
RB1/AN10	34	10	9		TTL	
RB1				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN10				I		Analog input channel 10.
RB2/AN8	35	11	10		TTL	
RB2				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN8				I		Analog input channel 8.
RB3/CCP2/AN9	36	12	11		TTL	
RB3				I/O		Digital I/O.
CCP2				I/O		CCP2 capture input, compare output, PWM output.
AN9				I		Analog input channel 9.
RB4/AN11	37	14	14		TTL	
RB4				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN11				I		Analog input channel 11
RB5/AN13/CCP3	38	15	15		TTL	
RB5				I/O		Digital I/O.
AN13				I		Analog input channel 13.
CCP3				I		CCP3 capture input, compare output, PWM output.
RB6/PGC	39	16	16		TTL/ST(2)	
RB6				I/O		Digital I/O.
PGC				I/O		In-circuit debugger and ICSP programming clock.
RB7/PGD	40	17	17		TTL/ST(2)	
RB7				I/O		Digital I/O.
PGD				I/O		In-circuit debugger and ICSP programming data.

Legend: I = input O = output I/O = input/output P = power
— = Not used TTL = TTL input ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as an external interrupt.

2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.

3: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as a general purpose I/O and a TTL input when used in the Parallel Slave Port mode (for interfacing to a microprocessor bus).

4: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured in RC Oscillator mode and a CMOS input otherwise.

TABLE 1-3: PIC16F747 AND PIC16F777 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	PDIP Pin #	QFN Pin #	TQFP Pin #	I/O/P Type	Buffer Type	Description
						PORTC is a bidirectional I/O port.
RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI	15	34	32		ST	
RC0				I/O		Digital I/O.
T1OSO				O		Timer1 oscillator output.
T1CKI				I		Timer1 external clock input.
RC1/T1OSI/CCP2	16	35	35		ST	
RC1				I/O		Digital I/O.
T1OSI				I		Timer1 oscillator input.
CCP2				I/O		Capture2 input, Compare2 output, PWM2 output.
RC2/CCP1	17	36	36		ST	
RC2				I/O		Digital I/O.
CCP1				I/O		Capture1 input, Compare1 output, PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	18	37	37		ST	
RC3				I/O		Digital I/O.
SCK				I/O		Synchronous serial clock input/output for SPI mode.
SCL				I/O		Synchronous serial clock input/output for I^2C mode.
RC4/SDI/SDA	23	42	42		ST	
RC4				I/O		Digital I/O.
SDI				I		SPI data in.
SDA				I/O		I^2C data I/O.
RC5/SDO	24	43	43		ST	
RC5				I/O		Digital I/O.
SDO				O		SPI data out.
RC6/TX/CK	25	44	44		ST	
RC6				I/O		Digital I/O.
TX				O		USART asynchronous transmit.
CK				I/O		USART1 synchronous clock.
RC7/RX/DT	26	1	1		ST	
RC7				I/O		Digital I/O.
RX				I		USART asynchronous receive.
DT				I/O		USART synchronous data.

Legend: I = input O = output I/O = input/output P = power
— = Not used TTL = TTL input ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as an external interrupt.

2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.

3: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as a general purpose I/O and a TTL input when used in the Parallel Slave Port mode (for interfacing to a microprocessor bus).

4: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured in RC Oscillator mode and a CMOS input otherwise.

TABLE 1-3: PIC16F747 AND PIC16F777 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	PDIP Pin #	QFN Pin #	TQFP Pin #	I/O/P Type	Buffer Type	Description
						PORTD is a bidirectional I/O port or Parallel Slave Port when interfacing to a microprocessor bus.
RD0/PSP0	19	38	38		ST/TTL(3)	
RD0				I/O		Digital I/O.
PSP0				I/O		Parallel Slave Port data.
RD1/PSP1	20	39	39		ST/TTL(3)	
RD1				I/O		Digital I/O.
PSP1				I/O		Parallel Slave Port data.
RD2/PSP2	21	40	40		ST/TTL(3)	
RD2				I/O		Digital I/O.
PSP2				I/O		Parallel Slave Port data.
RD3/PSP3	22	41	41		ST/TTL(3)	
RD3				I/O		Digital I/O.
PSP3				I/O		Parallel Slave Port data.
RD4/PSP4	27	2	2		ST/TTL(3)	
RD4				I/O		Digital I/O.
PSP4				I/O		Parallel Slave Port data.
RD5/PSP5	28	3	3		ST/TTL(3)	
RD5				I/O		Digital I/O.
PSP5				I/O		Parallel Slave Port data.
RD6/PSP6	29	4	4		ST/TTL(3)	
RD6				I/O		Digital I/O.
PSP6				I/O		Parallel Slave Port data.
RD7/PSP7	30	5	5		ST/TTL(3)	
RD7				I/O		Digital I/O.
PSP7				I/O		Parallel Slave Port data.
						PORTE is a bidirectional I/O port.
RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5	8	25	25		ST/TTL(3)	
RE0				I/O		Digital I/O.
$\overline{RD}$				I		Read control for Parallel Slave Port.
AN5				I		Analog input 5.
RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6	9	26	26		ST/TTL(3)	
RE1				I/O		Digital I/O.
$\overline{WR}$				I		Write control for Parallel Slave Port.
AN6				I		Analog input 6.
RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7	10	27	27		ST/TTL(3)	
RE2				I/O		Digital I/O.
$\overline{CS}$				I		Chip select control for Parallel Slave Port.
AN7				I		Analog input 7.
VSS	—	31	—	P	—	Analog ground reference.
VSS	12, 31	6, 30	6, 29	P	—	Ground reference for logic and I/O pins.
VDD	—	8	—	P	—	Analog positive supply.
VDD	11, 32	7, 28	7, 28	P	—	Positive supply for logic and I/O pins.
NC	—	13, 29	12, 13, 33, 34	—	—	These pins are not internally connected. These pins should be left unconnected.

Legend: I = input O = output I/O = input/output P = power
— = Not used TTL = TTL input ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as an external interrupt.

2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.

3: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as a general purpose I/O and a TTL input when used in the Parallel Slave Port mode (for interfacing to a microprocessor bus).

4: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured in RC Oscillator mode and a CMOS input otherwise.

2.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

There are two memory blocks in each of these PICmicro® MCUs. The program memory and data memory have separate buses so that concurrent access can occur and is detailed in this section. The program memory can be read internally by user code (see **Section 3.0 "Reading Program Memory"**).

Additional information on device memory may be found in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023).

2.1 Program Memory Organization

The PIC16F7X7 devices have a 13-bit program counter capable of addressing an 8K word x 14-bit program memory space. The PIC16F767/777 devices have 8K words of Flash program memory and the PIC16F737/747 devices have 4K words. The program memory maps for PIC16F7X7 devices are shown in Figure 2-1. Accessing a location above the physically implemented address will cause a wraparound.

The Reset vector is at 0000h and the interrupt vector is at 0004h.

2.2 Data Memory Organization

The data memory is partitioned into multiple banks which contain the General Purpose Registers and the Special Function Registers. Bits RP1 (Status<6>) and RP0 (Status<5>) are the bank select bits:

RP1:RP0	Bank
00	0
01	1
10	2
11	3

Each bank extends up to 7Fh (128 bytes). The lower locations of each bank are reserved for the Special Function Registers. Above the Special Function Registers are General Purpose Registers, implemented as static RAM. All implemented banks contain Special Function Registers. Some frequently used Special Function Registers from one bank may be mirrored in another bank for code reduction and quicker access.

2.2.1 GENERAL PURPOSE REGISTER FILE

The register file (shown in Figure 2-2 and Figure 2-3) can be accessed either directly, or indirectly, through the File Select Register (FSR).

FIGURE 2-1: PROGRAM MEMORY MAPS AND STACKS FOR PIC16F7X7 DEVICES

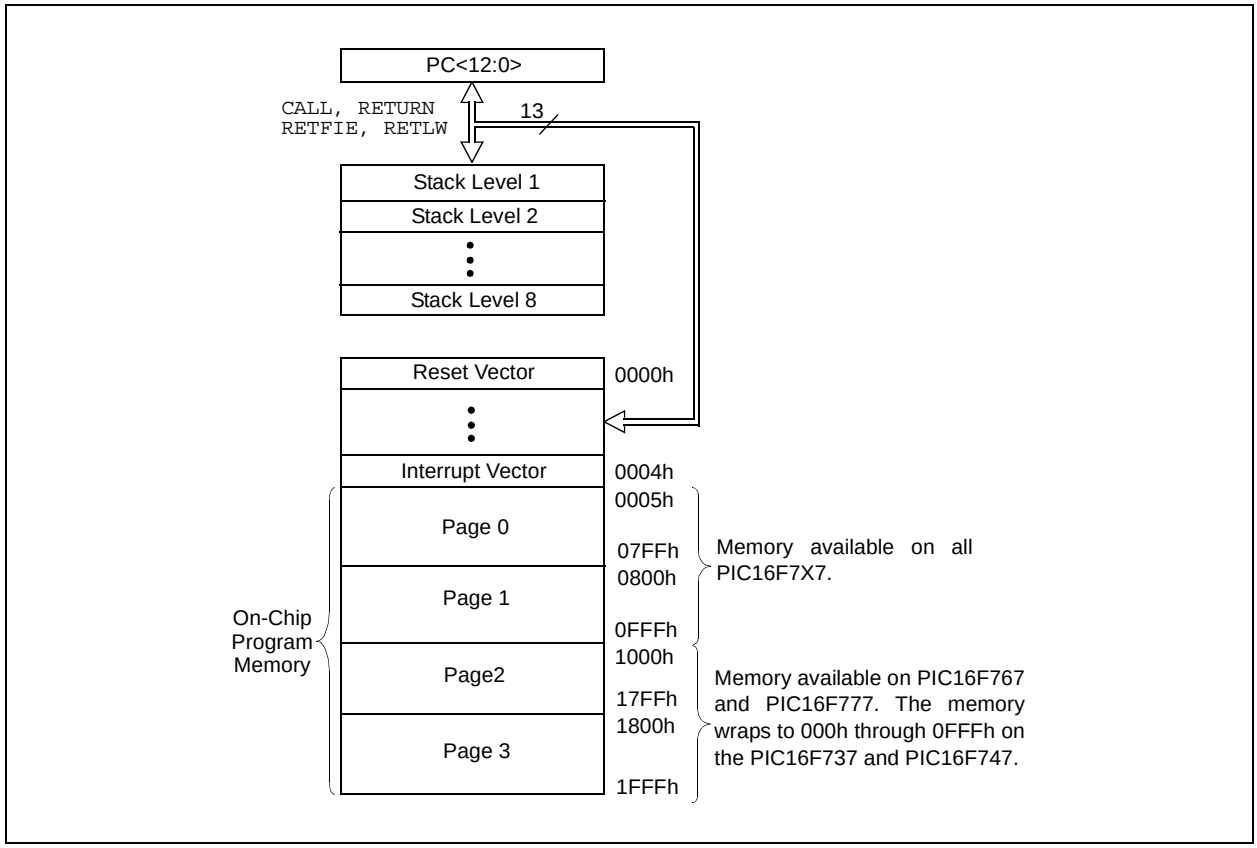
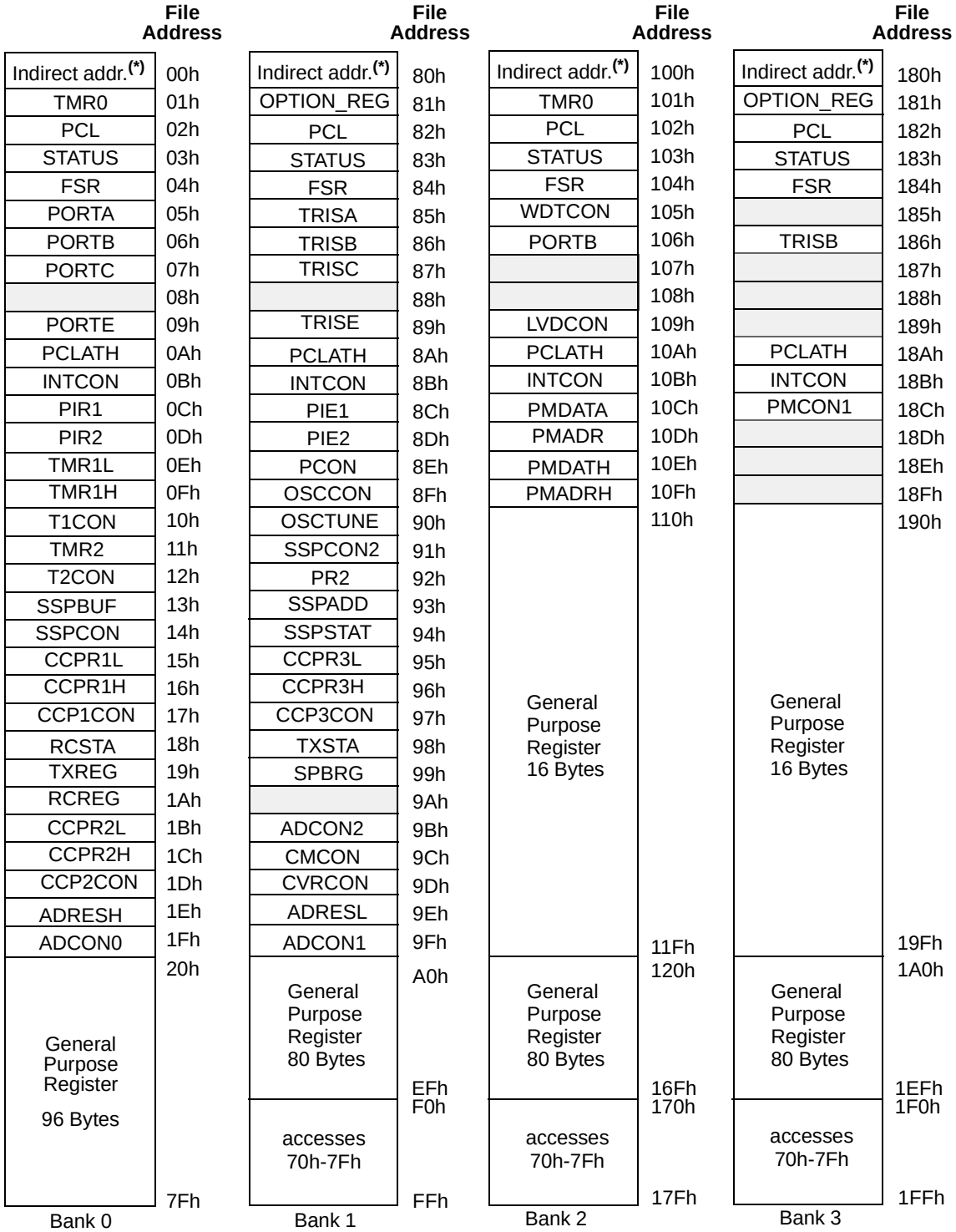


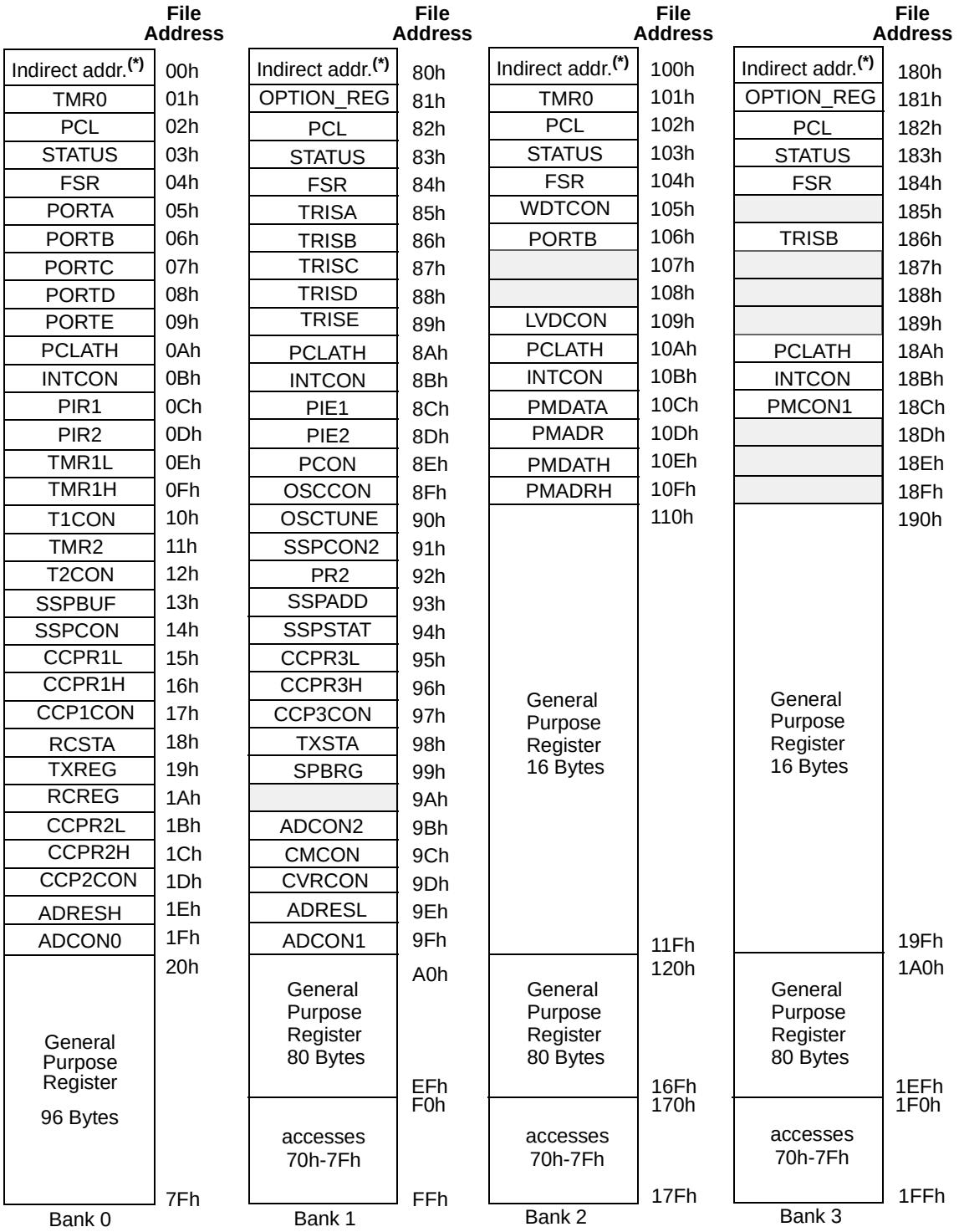
FIGURE 2-2: DATA MEMORY MAP FOR PIC16F737 AND THE PIC16F767



Unimplemented data memory locations read as '0'.

* Not a physical register.

FIGURE 2-3: DATA MEMORY MAP FOR PIC16F747 AND THE PIC16F777



Unimplemented data memory locations read as '0'.
* Not a physical register.

2.2.2 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

The Special Function Registers are registers used by the CPU and peripheral modules for controlling the desired operation of the device. These registers are implemented as static RAM. A list of these registers is given in Table 2-1.

The Special Function Registers can be classified into two sets: core (CPU) and peripheral. Those registers associated with the core functions are described in detail in this section. Those related to the operation of the peripheral features are described in detail in the peripheral feature section.

TABLE 2-1: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Details on page
Bank 0											
00h(4)	INDF	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register)								0000 0000	30, 180
01h	TMR0	Timer0 Module Register								xxxx xxxx	76, 180
02h(4)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	29, 180
03h(4)	STATUS	IRP	RP1	RP0	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	21, 180
04h(4)	FSR	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer								xxxx xxxx	30, 180
05h	PORTA	PORTA Data Latch when written: PORTA pins when read								xx0x 0000	55, 180
06h	PORTB	PORTB Data Latch when written: PORTB pins when read								xx00 0000	64, 180
07h	PORTC	PORTC Data Latch when written: PORTC pins when read								xxxx xxxx	66, 180
08h(5)	PORTD	PORTD Data Latch when written: PORTD pins when read								xxxx xxxx	67, 180
09h(5)	PORTE	—	—	—	—	RE3	RE2	RE1	RE0	---- x000	68, 180
0Ah(1,4)	PCLATH	—	—	—	Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter					---0 0000	29, 180
0Bh(4)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	23, 180
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(3)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	25, 180
0Dh	PIR2	OSFIF	CMIF	LVDIF	—	BCLIF	—	CCP3IF	CCP2IF	000- 0-00	27, 180
0Eh	TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	83, 180
0Fh	TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	83, 180
10h	T1CON	—	T1RUN	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{T1SYNC}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	-000 0000	83, 180
11h	TMR2	Timer2 Module Register								0000 0000	86, 180
12h	T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	86, 180
13h	SSPBUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	101, 180
14h	SSPCON	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	101, 180
15h	CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	90, 180
16h	CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	90, 180
17h	CCP1CON	—	—	CCP1X	CCP1Y	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	88, 180
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	134, 180
19h	TXREG	USART Transmit Data Register								0000 0000	139, 180
1Ah	RCREG	USART Receive Data Register								0000 0000	141, 180
1Bh	CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	92, 180
1Ch	CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	92, 180
1Dh	CCP2CON	—	—	CCP2X	CCP2Y	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	--00 0000	88, 180
1Eh	ADRESH	A/D Result Register Byte								xxxx xxxx	160, 180
1Fh	ADCON0	ADCS1	ADCS0	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{DONE}$	CHS3	ADON	0000 0000	152, 180

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<12:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter during branches (CALL or GOTO).

2: Other (non Power-up) Resets include external Reset through $\overline{MCLR}$ and Watchdog Timer Reset.

3: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on the 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

4: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

5: PORTD, PORTE, TRISD and TRISE are not physically implemented on the 28-pin devices (except for RE3), read as '0'.

6: This bit always reads as a '1'.

7: OSCON<OSTS> bit resets to '0' with dual-speed start-up and LP, HS or HS-PLL selected as the oscillator.

8: RE3 is an input only. The state of the TRISE3 bit has no effect and will always read '1'.

TABLE 2-1: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Details on page
Bank 1											
80h(4)	INDF	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register)								0000 0000	30, 180
81h	OPTION_REG	$\overline{RBPU}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	22, 180
82h(4)	PCL	Program Counter's (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	29, 180
83h(4)	STATUS	IRP	RP1	RP0	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	21, 180
84h(4)	FSR	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer								xxxx xxxx	30, 180
85h	TRISA	PORTA Data Direction Register								1111 1111	55, 181
86h	TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Register								1111 1111	64, 181
87h	TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	66, 181
88h(5)	TRISD	PORTD Data Direction Register								1111 1111	67, 181
89h(5)	TRISE	IBF(5)	OBF(5)	IBOV(5)	PSPMODE(5)	—(8)	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 1111	69, 181
8Ah(1,4)	PCLATH	—	—	—	Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter					---0 0000	23, 180
8Bh(4)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	25, 180
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(3)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	24, 181
8Dh	PIE2	OSFIE	CMIE	LVDIE	—	BCLIE	—	CCP3IE	CCP2IE	000- 0-00	26, 181
8Eh	PCON	—	—	—	—	—	SBOREN	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$	---- -1qq	28, 181
8Fh	OSCCON	—	IRCF2	IRCF1	IRCF0	OSTS(8)	IOFS	SCS1	SCS0	-000 1000	38, 181
90h	OSCTUNE	—	—	TUN5	TUN4	TUN3	TUN2	TUN1	TUN0	--00 0000	36, 181
91h	SSPCON2	GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN	0000 0000	105
92h	PR2	Timer2 Period Register								1111 1111	86, 181
93h	SSPADD	Synchronous Serial Port (I^2C mode) Address Register								0000 0000	101, 181
94h	SSPSTAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF	0000 0000	101, 181
95h	CCPR3L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	92
96h	CCPR3H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	92
97h	CCP3CON	—	—	CCP3X	CCP3Y	CCP3M3	CCP3M2	CCP3M1	CCP3M0	--00 0000	92
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	145, 181
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	145, 181
9Ah	—	Unimplemented								—	—
9Bh	ADCON2	—	—	ACQT2	ACQT1	ACQT0	—	—	—	--00 0---	154
9Ch	CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0111	55, 161
9Dh	CVRCON	CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	—	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	000- 0000	55, 167
9Eh	ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	180
9Fh	ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	0000 0000	153, 181

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<12:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter during branches (CALL or GOTO).

2: Other (non Power-up) Resets include external Reset through $\overline{MCLR}$ and Watchdog Timer Reset.

3: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on the 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

4: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

5: PORTD, PORTE, TRISD and TRISE are not physically implemented on the 28-pin devices (except for RE3), read as '0'.

6: This bit always reads as a '1'.

7: OSCON<OSTS> bit resets to '0' with dual-speed start-up and LP, HS or HS-PLL selected as the oscillator.

8: RE3 is an input only. The state of the TRISE3 bit has no effect and will always read '1'.

TABLE 2-1: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Details on page
Bank 2											
100h(4)	INDF	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register)								0000 0000	30, 180
101h	TMR0	Timer0 Module Register								xxxx xxxx	76, 180
102h(4)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	29, 180
103h(4)	STATUS	IRP	RP1	RP0	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	21, 180
104h(4)	FSR	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer								xxxx xxxx	30, 180
105h	WDTCON	—	—	—	WDTPS3	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	SWDTEN	---0 1000	187
106h	PORTB	PORTB Data Latch when written: PORTB pins when read								xxxx xxxx	64, 180
107h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
108h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
109h	LVDCON	—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0	--00 0101	176
10Ah(1,4)	PCLATH	—	—	—	Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter					---0 0000	23, 180
10Bh(4)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	25, 180
10Ch	PMDATA	EEPROM Data Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	32, 181
10Dh	PMADR	EEPROM Address Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	32, 181
10Eh	PMDATH	—	—	EEPROM Data Register High Byte						--xx xxxx	32, 181
10Fh	PMADRH	—	—	—	—	EEPROM Address Register High Byte				---- xxxx	32, 181
Bank 3											
180h(4)	INDF	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register)								0000 0000	30, 180
181h	OPTION_REG	$\overline{RBPU}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	22, 180
182h(4)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	29, 180
183h(4)	STATUS	IRP	RP1	RP0	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	21, 180
184h(4)	FSR	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer								xxxx xxxx	30, 180
185h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
186h	TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Register								1111 1111	64, 181
187h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
188h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
189h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
18Ah(1,4)	PCLATH	—	—	—	Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter					---0 0000	23, 180
18Bh(4)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	25, 180
18Ch	PMCON1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RD	---- ---0	32, 181
18Dh	—	Reserved, maintain clear								0000 0000	—
18Eh	—	Reserved, maintain clear								0000 0000	—
18Fh	—	Reserved, maintain clear								0000 0000	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<12:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter during branches (CALL or GOTO).

2: Other (non Power-up) Resets include external Reset through $\overline{MCLR}$ and Watchdog Timer Reset.

3: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on the 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

4: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

5: PORTD, PORTE, TRISD and TRISE are not physically implemented on the 28-pin devices (except for RE3), read as '0'.

6: This bit always reads as a '1'.

7: OSCON<OSTS> bit resets to '0' with dual-speed start-up and LP, HS or HS-PLL selected as the oscillator.

8: RE3 is an input only. The state of the TRISE3 bit has no effect and will always read '1'.

2.2.2.1 Status Register

The Status register contains the arithmetic status of the ALU, the Reset status and the bank select bits for data memory.

The Status register can be the destination for any instruction, as with any other register. If the Status register is the destination for an instruction that affects the Z, DC or C bits, then the write to these three bits is disabled. These bits are set or cleared according to the device logic. Furthermore, the $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ bits are not writable, therefore, the result of an instruction with the Status register as destination may be different than intended.

For example, `CLRF STATUS`, will clear the upper three bits and set the Z bit. This leaves the Status register as `000u u1uu` (where `u` = unchanged).

It is recommended, therefore, that only `BCF`, `BSF`, `SWAPF` and `MOVWF` instructions are used to alter the Status register because these instructions do not affect the Z, C or DC bits from the Status register. For other instructions not affecting any Status bits, see **Section 16.0 "Instruction Set Summary"**.

Note 1:	The C and DC bits operate as a $\overline{borrow}$ and digit $\overline{borrow}$ bit, respectively, in subtraction. See the `SUBLW` and `SUBWF` instructions for examples.

REGISTER 2-1: STATUS REGISTER (ADDRESS 03h, 83h, 103h, 183h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-1	R-1	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
IRP	RP1	RP0	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IRP:** Register Bank Select bit (used for indirect addressing)
`1` = Bank 2, 3 (100h-1FFh)
`0` = Bank 0, 1 (00h-FFh)

bit 6-5 **RP1:RP0**: Register Bank Select bits (used for direct addressing)
`11` = Bank 3 (180h-1FFh)
`10` = Bank 2 (100h-17Fh)
`01` = Bank 1 (80h-FFh)
`00` = Bank 0 (00h-7Fh)
Each bank is 128 bytes.

bit 4 **$\overline{TO}$**: Time-out bit
`1` = After power-up, `CLRWDT` instruction or `SLEEP` instruction
`0` = A WDT time-out occurred

bit 3 **$\overline{PD}$**: Power-down bit
`1` = After power-up or by the `CLRWDT` instruction
`0` = By execution of the `SLEEP` instruction

bit 2 **Z**: Zero bit
`1` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is zero
`0` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is not zero

bit 1 **DC**: Digit Carry/$\overline{borrow}$ bit (`ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW`, `SUBWF` instructions)
`1` = A carry-out from the 4th low order bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the 4th low order bit of the result

bit 0 **C:** Carry/$\overline{borrow}$ bit (`ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW`, `SUBWF` instructions)
`1` = A carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

Note: For $\overline{borrow}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the two's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the high or low order bit of the source register.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.2.2.2 OPTION_REG Register

The OPTION_REG register is a readable and writable register which contains various control bits to configure the TMR0 prescaler/WDT postscaler (single assignable register known also as the prescaler), the external INT interrupt, TMR0 and the weak pull-ups on PORTB.

Note:	To achieve a 1:1 prescaler assignment for the TMR0 register, assign the prescaler to the Watchdog Timer.

REGISTER 2-2: OPTION_REG REGISTER (ADDRESS 81h, 181h)

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$**: PORTB Pull-up Enable bit
1 = PORTB pull-ups are disabled
0 = PORTB pull-ups are enabled by individual port latch values

bit 6 **INTEDG**: Interrupt Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge of RB0/INT pin
0 = Interrupt on falling edge of RB0/INT pin

bit 5 **T0CS**: TMR0 Clock Source Select bit
1 = Transition on RA4/T0CKI pin
0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (CLKO)

bit 4 **T0SE**: TMR0 Source Edge Select bit
1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on RA4/T0CKI pin
0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on RA4/T0CKI pin

bit 3 **PSA**: Prescaler Assignment bit
1 = Prescaler is assigned to the WDT
0 = Prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module

bit 2-0 **PS2:PS0**: Prescaler Rate Select bits

Bit Value	TMR0 Rate	WDT Rate
000	1 : 2	1 : 1
001	1 : 4	1 : 2
010	1 : 8	1 : 4
011	1 : 16	1 : 8
100	1 : 32	1 : 16
101	1 : 64	1 : 32
110	1 : 128	1 : 64
111	1 : 256	1 : 128

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.2.2.3 INTCON Register

The INTCON register is a readable and writable register which contains various enable and flag bits for the TMR0 register overflow, RB port change and external RB0/INT pin interrupts.

Note:	Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>). User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 2-3: INTCON REGISTER (ADDRESS 0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh, 18Bh)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-x
GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **GIE:** Global Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables all unmasked interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts

bit 6 **PEIE**: Peripheral Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables all unmasked peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all peripheral interrupts

bit 5 **TMR0IE**: TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR0 interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR0 interrupt

bit 4 **INT0IE**: RB0/INT External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the RB0/INT external interrupt
0 = Disables the RB0/INT external interrupt

bit 3 **RBIE**: RB Port Change Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the RB port change interrupt
0 = Disables the RB port change interrupt

bit 2 **TMR0IF**: TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR0 register has overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR0 register did not overflow

bit 1 **INT0IF**: RB0/INT External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The RB0/INT external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The RB0/INT external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **RBIF**: RB Port Change Interrupt Flag bit
A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit RBIF. Reading PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit RBIF to be cleared.
1 = At least one of the RB7:RB4 pins changed state (must be cleared in software)
0 = None of the RB7:RB4 pins have changed state

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.2.2.4 PIE1 Register

The PIE1 register contains the individual enable bits for the peripheral interrupts.

Note:	Bit PEIE (INTCON<6>) must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

REGISTER 2-4: PIE1 REGISTER (ADDRESS 8Ch)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **PSPIE(1):** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the PSP read/write interrupt
0 = Disables the PSP read/write interrupt

Note 1: PSPIE is reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain this bit clear.

bit 6 **ADIE**: A/D Converter Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the A/D converter interrupt
0 = Disables the A/D converter interrupt

bit 5 **RCIE**: USART Receive Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART receive interrupt
0 = Disables the USART receive interrupt

bit 4 **TXIE**: USART Transmit Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART transmit interrupt
0 = Disables the USART transmit interrupt

bit 3 **SSPIE**: Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the SSP interrupt
0 = Disables the SSP interrupt

bit 2 **CCP1IE**: CCP1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP1 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP1 interrupt

bit 1 **TMR2IE**: TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR2 to PR2 match interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR2 to PR2 match interrupt

bit 0 **TMR1IE**: TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR1 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR1 overflow interrupt

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.2.2.5 PIR1 Register

The PIR1 register contains the individual flag bits for the peripheral interrupts.

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>). User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 2-5: PIR1 REGISTER (ADDRESS 0Ch)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **PSPIF(1):** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A read or a write operation has taken place (must be cleared in software)
0 = No read or write has occurred
Note: PSPIF is reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain this bit clear.

bit 6 **ADIF**: A/D Converter Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An A/D conversion is completed (must be cleared in software)
0 = The A/D conversion is not complete

bit 5 **RCIF**: USART Receive Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART receive buffer is full
0 = The USART receive buffer is empty

bit 4 **TXIF**: USART Transmit Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART transmit buffer is empty
0 = The USART transmit buffer is full

bit 3 **SSPIF**: Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The SSP interrupt condition has occurred and must be cleared in software before returning from the Interrupt Service Routine. The conditions that will set this bit are:
SPI:
A transmission/reception has taken place.
I^2C Slave:
A transmission/reception has taken place.
I^2C Master:
A transmission/reception has taken place.
The initiated Start condition was completed by the SSP module.
The initiated Stop condition was completed by the SSP module.
The initiated Restart condition was completed by the SSP module.
The initiated Acknowledge condition was completed by the SSP module.
A Start condition occurred while the SSP module was Idle (multi-master system).
A Stop condition occurred while the SSP module was Idle (multi-master system).
0 = No SSP interrupt condition has occurred

bit 2 **CCP1IF**: CCP1 Interrupt Flag bit
Capture mode:
1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred
Compare mode:
1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred
PWM mode:
Unused in this mode.

bit 1 **TMR2IF**: TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR2 to PR2 match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR2 to PR2 match occurred

bit 0 **TMR1IF**: TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR1 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR1 register did not overflow

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.2.2.6 PIE2 Register

The PIE2 register contains the individual enable bits for the CCP2 and CCP3 peripheral interrupts.

REGISTER 2-6: PIE2 REGISTER (ADDRESS 8Dh)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
OSFIE	CMIE	LVDIE	—	BCLIE	—	CCP3IE	CCP2IE
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **OSFIE:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 6 **CMIE:** Comparator Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 5 **LVDIE:** Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable bit
1 = LVD interrupt is enabled
0 = LVD interrupt is disabled

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **BCLIE:** Bus Collision Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable bus collision interrupt in the SSP when configured for I^2C Master mode
0 = Disable bus collision interrupt in the SSP when configured for I^2C Master mode

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **CCP3IE:** CCP3 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP3 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP3 interrupt

bit 0 **CCP2IE**: CCP2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP2 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP2 interrupt

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.2.2.7 PIR2 Register

The PIR2 register contains the flag bits for the CCP2 interrupt.

Note:	Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>). User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 2-7: PIR2 REGISTER (ADDRESS 0Dh)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
OSFIF	CMIF	LVDIF	—	BCLIF	—	CCP3IF	CCP2IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **OSFIF:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Flag bit
1 = System oscillator failed, clock input has changed to INTRC (must be cleared in software)
0 = System clock operating

bit 6 **CMIF:** Comparator Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Comparator input has changed (must be cleared in software)
0 = Comparator input has not changed

bit 5 **LVDIF:** Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The supply voltage has fallen below the specified LVD voltage (must be cleared in software)
0 = The supply voltage is greater then the specified LVD voltage

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **BCLIF:** Bus Collision Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A bus collision has occurred in the SSP when configured for I^2C Master mode
0 = No bus collision has occurred

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **CCP3IF:** CCP3 Interrupt Flag bit
Capture mode:
1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred
Compare mode:
1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred
PWM mode:
Unused in this mode.

bit 0 **CCP2IF**: CCP2 Interrupt Flag bit
Capture mode:
1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred
Compare mode:
1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred
PWM mode:
Unused.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.2.2.8 PCON Register

The Power Control (PCON) register contains flag bits to allow differentiation between a Power-on Reset (POR), a Brown-out Reset (BOR), a Watchdog Reset (WDT) and an external MCLR Reset.

Note:	$\overline{BOR}$ is unknown on POR. It must be set by the user and checked on subsequent Resets to see if BOR is clear, indicating a brown-out has occurred. The BOR status bit is not predictable if the brown-out circuit is disabled (by clearing the BOREN bit in the Configuration Word register).

REGISTER 2-8: PCON REGISTER (ADDRESS 8Eh)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-1
—	—	—	—	—	SBOREN	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **SBOREN**: Software Brown-out Reset Enable bit
If BORSEN in Configuration Word 2 is a '1' and BOREN in Configuration Word 1 is '0', then:
1 = BOR enabled
0 = BOR disabled

bit 1 **$\overline{POR}$**: Power-on Reset Status bit
1 = No Power-on Reset occurred
0 = A Power-on Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)

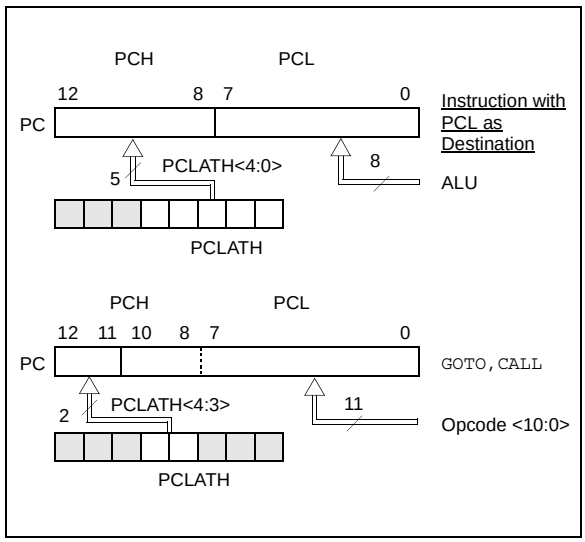
bit 0 **$\overline{BOR}$**: Brown-out Reset Status bit
1 = No Brown-out Reset occurred
0 = A Brown-out Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.3 PCL and PCLATH

The Program Counter (PC) is 13 bits wide. The low byte comes from the PCL register, which is a readable and writable register. The upper bits (PC<12:8>) are not readable but are indirectly writable through the PCLATH register. On any Reset, the upper bits of the PC will be cleared. Figure 2-4 shows the two situations for the loading of the PC. The upper example in the figure shows how the PC is loaded on a write to PCL (PCLATH<4:0> → PCH). The lower example in the figure shows how the PC is loaded during a CALL or GOTO instruction (PCLATH<4:3> → PCH).

FIGURE 2-4: LOADING OF PC IN DIFFERENT SITUATIONS



2.3.1 COMPUTED GOTO

A computed GOTO is accomplished by adding an offset to the program counter (ADDWF PCL). When doing a table read using a computed GOTO method, care should be exercised if the table location crosses a PCL memory boundary (each 256-byte block). Refer to the Application Note, AN556, *"Implementing a Table Read"* (DS00556).

2.3.2 STACK

The PIC16F7X7 family has an 8-level deep x 13-bit wide hardware stack. The stack space is not part of either program or data space and the stack pointer is not readable or writable. The PC is PUSHed onto the stack when a CALL instruction is executed or an interrupt causes a branch. The stack is POPed in the event of a RETURN, RETLW or a RETFIE instruction execution. PCLATH is not affected by a PUSH or POP operation.

The stack operates as a circular buffer. This means that after the stack has been PUSHed eight times, the ninth push overwrites the value that was stored from the first push. The tenth push overwrites the second push (and so on).

Note 1: There are no Status bits to indicate stack overflow or stack underflow conditions.

2: There are no instructions/mnemonics called PUSH or POP. These are actions that occur from the execution of the CALL, RETURN, RETLW and RETFIE instructions or the vectoring to an interrupt address.

2.4 Program Memory Paging

PIC16F7X7 devices are capable of addressing a continuous 8K word block of program memory. The CALL and GOTO instructions provide only 11 bits of address to allow branching within any 2K program memory page. When doing a CALL or GOTO instruction, the upper 2 bits of the address are provided by PCLATH<4:3>. When doing a CALL or GOTO instruction, the user must ensure that the page select bits are programmed so that the desired program memory page is addressed. If a return from a CALL instruction (or interrupt) is executed, the entire 13-bit PC is POPed off the stack. Therefore, manipulation of the PCLATH<4:3> bits is not required for the RETURN instructions (which POPs the address from the stack).

Note: The contents of the PCLATH are unchanged after a RETURN or RETFIE instruction is executed. The user must set up the PCLATH for any subsequent CALLs or GOTOs.

Example 2-1 shows the calling of a subroutine in page 1 of the program memory. This example assumes that PCLATH is saved and restored by the Interrupt Service Routine (if interrupts are used).

EXAMPLE 2-1: CALL OF A SUBROUTINE IN PAGE 1 FROM PAGE 0

```
        ORG   0x500
        BCF   PCLATH, 4
        BSF   PCLATH, 3 ;Select page 1
                        ;(800h-FFFh)
         CALL SUB1_P1   ;Call subroutine in
        :               ;page 1 (800h-FFFh)
        :
        ORG   0x900     ;page 1 (800h-FFFh)
SUB1_P1
        :               ;called subroutine
        :               ;page 1 (800h-FFFh)
        :
RETURN                  ;return to Call
                        ;subroutine in page 0
                        ;(000h-7FFh)
```

2.5 Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers

The INDF register is not a physical register. Addressing the INDF register will cause indirect addressing.

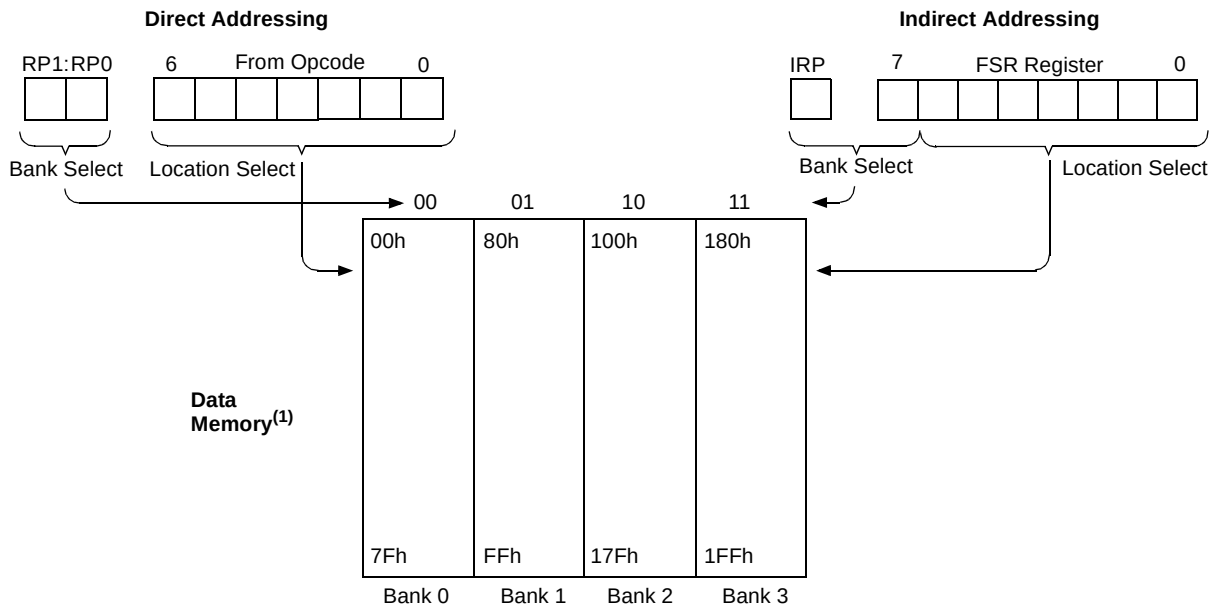
Indirect addressing is possible by using the INDF register. Any instruction using the INDF register actually accesses the register pointed to by the File Select Register, FSR. Reading the INDF register itself indirectly (FSR = 0) will read 00h. Writing to the INDF register indirectly results in a no operation (although Status bits may be affected). An effective 9-bit address is obtained by concatenating the 8-bit FSR register and the IRP bit (Status<7>) as shown in Figure 2-5.

A simple program to clear RAM locations 20h-2Fh using indirect addressing is shown in Example 2-2.

EXAMPLE 2-2: INDIRECT ADDRESSING

```
        MOVLW   0x20    ;initialize pointer
        MOVWF   FSR     ;to RAM
NEXT    CLRF    INDF    ;clear INDF register
        INCF    FSR, F  ;inc pointer
        BTFSS   FSR, 4  ;all done?
        GOTO    NEXT    ;no clear next
CONTINUE
    :                   ;yes continue
```

FIGURE 2-5: DIRECT/INDIRECT ADDRESSING



Note 1: For register file map detail, see Figure 2-2.

3.0 READING PROGRAM MEMORY

The Flash program memory is readable during normal operation over the entire VDD range. It is indirectly addressed through Special Function Registers (SFR). Up to 14-bit numbers can be stored in memory for use as calibration parameters, serial numbers, packed 7-bit ASCII, etc. Executing a program memory location containing data that forms an invalid instruction results in a NOP.

There are five SFRs used to read the program and memory. These registers are:

- PMCON1
- PMDATA
- PMDATH
- PMADR
- PMADRH

The program memory allows word reads. Program memory access allows for checksum calculation and reading calibration tables.

When interfacing to the program memory block, the PMDATH:PMDATA registers form a two-byte word which holds the 14-bit data for reads. The PMADRH:PMADR registers form a two-byte word which holds the 13-bit address of the Flash location being accessed. These devices can have up to 8K words of program Flash, with an address range from 0h to 3FFFh. The unused upper bits in both the PMDATH and PMADRH registers are not implemented and read as '0's.

3.1 PMADR

The address registers can address up to a maximum of 8K words of program Flash.

When selecting a program address value, the MSByte of the address is written to the PMADRH register and the LSByte is written to the PMADR register. The upper MSbits of PMADRH must always be clear.

3.2 PMCON1 Register

PMCON1 is the control register for memory accesses.

The control bit, RD, initiates read operations. This bit cannot be cleared, only set, in software. It is cleared in hardware at the completion of the read operation.

REGISTER 3-1: PMCON1 REGISTER (ADDRESS 18Ch)

R-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-x	U-0	U-0	R/S-0
reserved	—	—	—	—	—	—	RD
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Reserved:** Read as '1'

bit 6-1 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 0 **RD**: Read Control bit

1 = Initiates a Flash read, RD is cleared in hardware. The RD bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.

0 = Flash read completed

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

3.3 Reading the Flash Program Memory

A program memory location may be read by writing two bytes of the address to the PMADR and PMADRH registers and then setting control bit, RD (PMCON1<0>). Once the read control bit is set, the microcontroller will use the next two instruction cycles to read the data. The data is available in the PMDATA and PMDATH registers after the second NOP instruction. Therefore, it can be read as two bytes in the following instructions. The PMDATA and PMDATH registers will hold this value until the next read operation.

3.4 Operation During Code-Protect

Flash program memory has its own code-protect mechanism. External read and write operations by programmers are disabled if this mechanism is enabled.

The microcontroller can read and execute instructions out of the internal Flash program memory, regardless of the state of the code-protect configuration bits.

EXAMPLE 3-1: FLASH PROGRAM READ

```
            BSF     STATUS, RP1     ;
            BCF     STATUS, RP0     ; Bank 2
            MOVF    ADDRH, W        ;
            MOVWF   PMADRH          ; MSByte of Program Address to read
            MOVF    ADDRL, W        ;
            MOVWF   PMADR           ; LSByte of Program Address to read
            BSF     STATUS, RP0     ; Bank 3 Required

Required    BSF     PMCON1, RD      ; EEPROM Read Sequence
Sequence    NOP                     ; memory is read in the next two cycles after BSF PMCON1,RD
            NOP                     ;

            BCF     STATUS, RP0     ; Bank 2
            MOVF    PMDATA, W       ; W = LSByte of Program PMDATA
            MOVF    PMDATH, W       ; W = MSByte of Program PMDATH
```

TABLE 3-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PROGRAM FLASH

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
10Dh	PMADR	Address Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
10Fh	PMADRH	—	—	—	Address Register High Byte					---x xxxx	---u uuuu
10Ch	PMDATA	Data Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
10Eh	PMDATH	—	—	Data Register High Byte						--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
18Ch	PMCON1	—(1)	—	—	—	—	—	—	RD	1--- ---0	1--- ---0

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, r = reserved, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used during Flash access.

Note 1: This bit always reads as a '1'.

4.0 OSCILLATOR CONFIGURATIONS

4.1 Oscillator Types

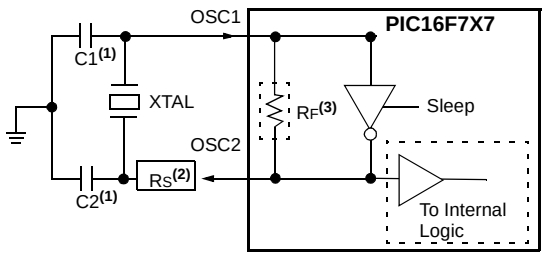
The PIC16F7X7 can be operated in eight different oscillator modes. The user can program three configuration bits (FOSC2:FOSC0) to select one of these eight modes (modes 5-8 are new PIC16 oscillator configurations):

1. LP Low-Power Crystal
2. XT Crystal/Resonator
3. HS High-Speed Crystal/Resonator
4. RC External Resistor/Capacitor with FOSC/4 output on RA6
5. RCIO External Resistor/Capacitor with I/O on RA6
6. INTIO1 Internal Oscillator with FOSC/4 output on RA6 and I/O on RA7
7. INTIO2 Internal Oscillator with I/O on RA6 and RA7
8. ECIO External Clock with I/O on RA6

4.2 Crystal Oscillator/Ceramic Resonators

In XT, LP or HS modes, a crystal or ceramic resonator is connected to the OSC1/CLKI and OSC2/CLKO pins to establish oscillation (see Figure 4-1 and Figure 4-2). The PIC16F7X7 oscillator design requires the use of a parallel cut crystal. Use of a series cut crystal may give a frequency out of the crystal manufacturer's specifications.

FIGURE 4-1: CRYSTAL OPERATION (HS, XT OR LP OSC CONFIGURATION)



Note 1: See Table 4-1 for typical values of C1 and C2.

2: A series resistor (RS) may be required for AT strip cut crystals.

3: RF varies with the crystal chosen (typically between 2 MΩ to 10 MΩ).

TABLE 4-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR (FOR DESIGN GUIDANCE ONLY)

Osc Type	Crystal Freq	Typical Capacitor Values Tested:	
		C1	C2
LP	32 kHz	33 pF	33 pF
	200 kHz	15 pF	15 pF
XT	200 kHz	56 pF	56 pF
	1 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
	4 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
HS	4 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
	8 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
	20 MHz	15 pF	15 pF

Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

These capacitors were tested with the crystals listed below for basic start-up and operation. These values were not optimized.

Different capacitor values may be required to produce acceptable oscillator operation. The user should test the performance of the oscillator over the expected VDD and temperature range for the application.

See the notes following this table for additional information.

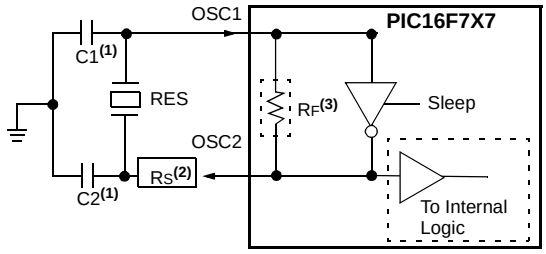
Note 1: Higher capacitance increases the stability of oscillator but also increases the start-up time.

2: Since each crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components.

3: RS may be required in HS mode, as well as XT mode, to avoid overdriving crystals with low drive level specification.

4: Always verify oscillator performance over the VDD and temperature range that is expected for the application.

FIGURE 4-2: CERAMIC RESONATOR OPERATION (HS OR XT OSC CONFIGURATION)



Note 1: See Table 4-2 for typical values of C1 and C2.

2: A series resistor (R_S) may be required.

3: R_F varies with the resonator chosen (typically between 2 MΩ to 10 MΩ).

TABLE 4-2: CERAMIC RESONATORS (FOR DESIGN GUIDANCE ONLY)

Typical Capacitor Values Used:			
Mode	**Freq**	**OSC1**	**OSC2**
XT	455 kHz	56 pF	56 pF
	2.0 MHz	47 pF	47 pF
	4.0 MHz	33 pF	33 pF
HS	8.0 MHz	27 pF	27 pF
	16.0 MHz	22 pF	22 pF

Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

These capacitors were tested with the resonators listed below for basic start-up and operation. These values were not optimized.

Different capacitor values may be required to produce acceptable oscillator operation. The user should test the performance of the oscillator over the expected V_{DD} and temperature range for the application.

See the notes following this table for additional information.

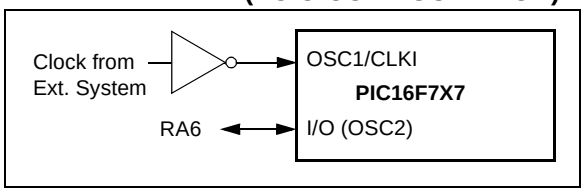
Note: When using resonators with frequencies above 3.5 MHz, the use of HS mode rather than XT mode is recommended. HS mode may be used at any V_{DD} for which the controller is rated. If HS is selected, it is possible that the gain of the oscillator will overdrive the resonator. Therefore, a series resistor should be placed between the OSC2 pin and the resonator. As a good starting point, the recommended value of R_S is 330Ω.

4.3 External Clock Input

The ECIO Oscillator mode requires an external clock source to be connected to the OSC1 pin. There is no oscillator start-up time required after a Power-on Reset or after an exit from Sleep mode.

In the ECIO Oscillator mode, the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6). Figure 4-3 shows the pin connections for the ECIO Oscillator mode.

FIGURE 4-3: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (ECIO CONFIGURATION)

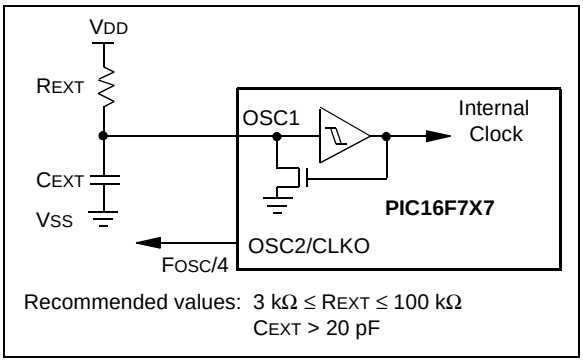


4.4 RC Oscillator

For timing insensitive applications, the “RC” and “RCIO” device options offer additional cost savings. The RC oscillator frequency is a function of the supply voltage, the resistor (REXT) and capacitor (CEXT) values and the operating temperature. In addition to this, the oscillator frequency will vary from unit to unit due to normal manufacturing variation. Furthermore, the difference in lead frame capacitance between package types will also affect the oscillation frequency, especially for low CEXT values. The user also needs to take into account variation due to tolerance of external R and C components used. Figure 4-4 shows how the R/C combination is connected.

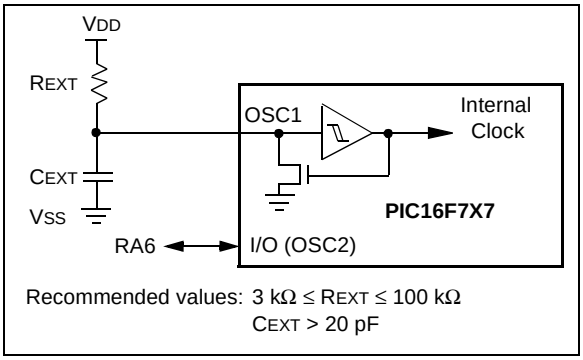
In the RC Oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic.

FIGURE 4-4: RC OSCILLATOR MODE



The RCIO Oscillator mode (Figure 4-5) functions like the RC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6).

FIGURE 4-5: RCIO OSCILLATOR MODE



4.5 Internal Oscillator Block

The PIC16F7X7 devices include an internal oscillator block which generates two different clock signals; either can be used as the system’s clock source. This can eliminate the need for external oscillator circuits on the OSC1 and/or OSC2 pins.

The main output (INTOSC) is an 8 MHz clock source which can be used to directly drive the system clock. It also drives the INTOSC postscaler which can provide a range of six clock frequencies, from 125 kHz to 4 MHz.

The other clock source is the internal RC oscillator (INTRC), which provides a 31.25 kHz (32 µs nominal period) output. The INTRC oscillator is enabled by selecting the INTRC as the system clock source or when any of the following are enabled:

- Power-up Timer
- Watchdog Timer
- Two-Speed Start-up
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor

These features are discussed in greater detail in **Section 15.0 “Special Features of the CPU”**.

The clock source frequency (INTOSC direct, INTRC direct or INTOSC postscaler) is selected by configuring the IRCF bits of the OSCCON register (page 38).

Note:	Throughout this data sheet, when referring *specifically* to a generic clock source, the term “INTRC” may also be used to refer to the clock modes using the internal oscillator block. This is regardless of whether the actual frequency used is INTOSC (8 MHz), the INTOSC postscaler or INTRC (31.25 kHz).

4.5.1 INTRC MODES

Using the internal oscillator as the clock source can eliminate the need for up to two external oscillator pins, after which it can be used for digital I/O. Two distinct configurations are available:

- In INTIO1 mode, the OSC2 pin outputs FOSC/4, while OSC1 functions as RA7 for digital input and output.
- In INTIO2 mode, OSC1 functions as RA7 and OSC2 functions as RA6, both for digital input and output.

4.5.2 OSCTUNE REGISTER

The internal oscillator's output has been calibrated at the factory but can be adjusted in the application. This is done by writing to the OSCTUNE register (Register 4-1). The tuning sensitivity is constant throughout the tuning range. The OSCTUNE register has a tuning range of ±12.5%.

When the OSCTUNE register is modified, the INTOSC and INTRC frequencies will begin shifting to the new frequency. The INTRC clock will reach the new frequency within 8 clock cycles (approximately 8 * 32 µs = 256 µs); the INTOSC clock will stabilize within 1 ms. Code execution continues during this shift. There is no indication that the shift has occurred. Operation of features that depend on the 31.25 kHz INTRC clock source frequency, such as the WDT, Fail-Safe Clock Monitor and peripherals, will also be affected by the change in frequency.

REGISTER 4-1: OSCTUNE: OSCILLATOR TUNING REGISTER (ADDRESS 90h)

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	TUN5	TUN4	TUN3	TUN2	TUN1	TUN0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **TUN<5:0>:** Frequency Tuning bits

011111 = Maximum frequency
011110 =
•
•
•
000001 =
000000 = Center frequency. Oscillator module is running at the calibrated frequency.
111111 =
•
•
•
100000 = Minimum frequency

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

4.6 Clock Sources and Oscillator Switching

The PIC16F7X7 devices include a feature that allows the system clock source to be switched from the main oscillator to an alternate low-frequency clock source. PIC16F7X7 devices offer three alternate clock sources. When enabled, these give additional options for switching to the various power managed operating modes.

Essentially, there are three clock sources for these devices:

- Primary oscillators
- Secondary oscillators
- Internal oscillator block (INTRC)

The **primary oscillators** include the External Crystal and Resonator modes, the External RC modes, the External Clock mode and the internal oscillator block. The particular mode is defined on POR by the contents of Configuration Word 1. The details of these modes are covered earlier in this chapter.

The **secondary oscillators** are those external sources not connected to the OSC1 or OSC2 pins. These sources may continue to operate even after the controller is placed in a power managed mode.

PIC16F7X7 devices offer the Timer1 oscillator as a secondary oscillator. This oscillator continues to run when a SLEEP instruction is executed and is often the time base for functions, such as a real-time clock.

Most often, a 32.768 kHz watch crystal is connected between the RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI and RC1/T1OSI/CCP2 pins. Like the LP mode oscillator circuit, loading capacitors are also connected from each pin to ground. The Timer1 oscillator is discussed in greater detail in **Section 7.6 "Timer1 Oscillator"**.

In addition to being a primary clock source, the **internal oscillator block** is available as a power managed mode clock source. The 31.25 kHz INTRC source is also used as the clock source for several special features, such as the WDT, Fail-Safe Clock Monitor, Power-up Timer and Two-Speed Start-up.

The clock sources for the PIC16F7X7 devices are shown in Figure 4-6. See **Section 7.0 "Timer1 Module"** for further details of the Timer1 oscillator. See **Section 15.1 "Configuration Bits"** for Configuration register details.

4.6.1 OSCCON REGISTER

The OSCCON register (Register 4-2) controls several aspects of the system clock's operation, both in full power operation and in power managed modes.

The system clock select bits, SCS1:SCS0, select the clock source that is used when the device is operating in power managed modes. When the bits are cleared (SCS<1:0> = 00), the system clock source comes from the main oscillator that is selected by the FOSC2:FOSC0 configuration bits in Configuration Register 1. When the bits are set in any other manner, the system clock source is provided by the Timer1 oscillator (SCS1:SCS0 = 01) or from the internal oscillator block (SCS1:SCS0 = 10). After a Reset, SCS<1:0> are always set to '00'.

The internal oscillator select bits, IRCF2:IRCF0, select the frequency output of the internal oscillator block that is used to drive the system clock. The choices are the INTRC source (31.25 kHz), the INTOSC source (8 MHz) or one of the six frequencies derived from the INTOSC postscaler (125 kHz to 4 MHz). Changing the configuration of these bits has an immediate change on the internal oscillator's output.

The OSTS and IOFS bits indicate the status of the primary oscillator and INTOSC source; these bits are set when their respective oscillators are stable. In particular, OSTS indicates that the Oscillator Start-up Timer has timed out.

4.6.2 CLOCK SWITCHING

Clock switching will occur for the following reasons:

- The FCMEN (CONFIG2<0>) bit is set, the device is running from the primary oscillator and the primary oscillator fails. The clock source will be 31.25 kHz INTRC.
- The FCMEN bit is set, the device is running from the T1OSC and T1OSC fails. The clock source will be 31.25 kHz INTRC.
- Following a wake-up due to a Reset or a POR, when the device is configured for Two-Speed mode, switching will occur between the INTRC and the system clock defined by the FOSC<2:0> bits.
- A wake-up from Sleep occurs due to interrupt or WDT wake-up and Two-Speed Start-up is enabled. If the primary clock is XT, HS or LP, the clock will switch between the INTRC and the primary system clock after 1024 clocks (OST) and 8 clocks of the primary oscillator. This is conditional upon the SCS bits being set equal to '00'.
- SCS bits are modified from their original value.
- IRCF bits are modified from their original value.

Note:	Because the SCS bits are cleared on any Reset, no clock switching will occur on a Reset unless the Two-Speed Start-up is enabled and the primary clock is XT, HS or LP. The device will wait for the primary clock to become stable before execution begins (Two-Speed Start-up disabled).

4.6.3 CLOCK TRANSITION AND WDT

When clock switching is performed, the Watchdog Timer is disabled because the Watchdog Ripple Counter is used as the Oscillator Start-up Timer.

Note:	The OST is only used when switching to XT, HS and LP Oscillator modes.

Once the clock transition is complete (i.e., new oscillator selection switch has occurred), the Watchdog Counter is re-enabled with the Counter Reset. This allows the user to synchronize the Watchdog Timer to the start of execution at the new clock frequency.

REGISTER 4-2: OSCCON: OSCILLATOR CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	IRCF2	IRCF1	IRCF0	OSTS(1)	IOFS	SCS1	SCS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **IRCF<2:0>:** Internal RC Oscillator Frequency Select bits

000 = 31.25 kHz
001 = 125 kHz
010 = 250 kHz
011 = 500 kHz
100 = 1 MHz
101 = 2 MHz
110 = 4 MHz
111 = 8 MHz

bit 3 **OSTS:** Oscillator Start-up Time-out Status bit(1)

1 = Device is running from the primary system clock
0 = Device is running from T1OSC or INTRC as a secondary system clock

Note 1: Bit resets to '0' with Two-Speed Start-up and LP, XT or HS selected as the oscillator mode.

bit 2 **IOFS:** INTOSC Frequency Stable bit

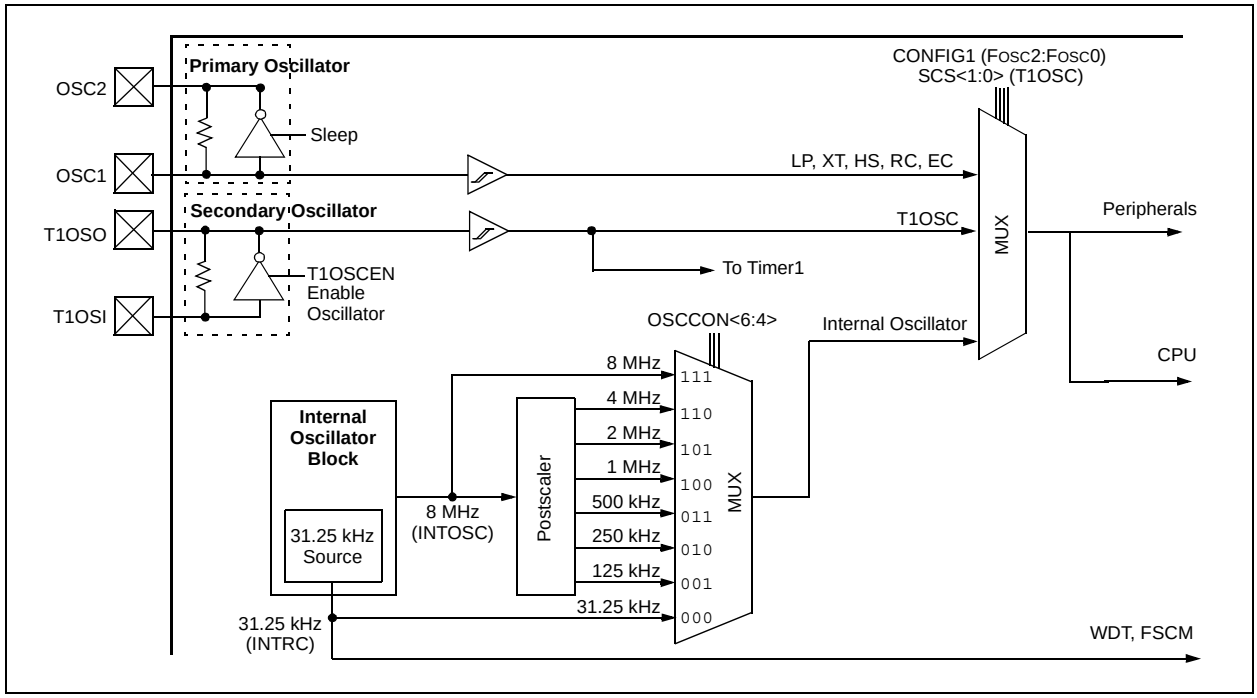
1 = Frequency is stable
0 = Frequency is not stable

bit 1-0 **SCS<1:0>:** Oscillator Mode Select bits

00 = Oscillator mode defined by FOSC<2:0>
01 = T1OSC is used for system clock
10 = Internal RC is used for system clock
11 = Reserved

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 4-6: PIC16F7X7 CLOCK DIAGRAM



4.6.4 MODIFYING THE IRCF BITS

The IRCF bits can be modified at any time, regardless of which clock source is currently being used as the system clock. The internal oscillator allows users to change the frequency during run-time. This is achieved by modifying the IRCF bits in the OSCCON register. The sequence of events that occur after the IRCF bits are modified is dependent upon the initial value of the IRCF bits before they are modified. If the INTRC (31.25 kHz, IRCF<2:0> = 000) is running and the IRCF bits are modified to any other value than '000', a 4 ms clock switch delay is turned on. Code execution continues at a higher than expected frequency while the new frequency stabilizes. Time sensitive code should wait for the IOFS bit in the OSCCON register to become set before continuing. This bit can be monitored to ensure that the frequency is stable before using the system clock in time critical applications.

If the IRCF bits are modified while the internal oscillator is running at any other frequency than INTRC (31.25 kHz, IRCF<2:0> ≠ 000), there is no need for a 4 ms clock switch delay. The new INTOSC frequency will be stable immediately after the **eight** falling edges. The IOFS bit will remain set after clock switching occurs.

Note:	Caution must be taken when modifying the IRCF bits using BCF or BSF instructions. It is possible to modify the IRCF bits to a frequency that may be out of the VDD specification range; for example, VDD = 2.0V and IRCF = 111 (8 MHz).

4.6.5 CLOCK TRANSITION SEQUENCE

The following are three different sequences for switching the internal RC oscillator frequency:

- Clock before switch: 31.25 kHz (IRCF<2:0> = 000)
  1. IRCF bits are modified to an INTOSC/INTOSC postscaler frequency.
  2. The clock switching circuitry waits for a falling edge of the current clock, at which point CLKO is held low.
  3. The clock switching circuitry then waits for **eight** falling edges of requested clock, after which it switches CLKO to this new clock source.
  4. The IOFS bit is clear to indicate that the clock is unstable and a 4 ms delay is started. Time dependent code should wait for IOFS to become set.
  5. Switchover is complete.
- Clock before switch: One of INTOSC/INTOSC postscaler (IRCF<2:0> ≠ 000)
  1. IRCF bits are modified to INTRC (IRCF<2:0> = 000).
  2. The clock switching circuitry waits for a falling edge of the current clock, at which point CLKO is held low.
  3. The clock switching circuitry then waits for **eight** falling edges of requested clock, after which it switches CLKO to this new clock source.
  4. Oscillator switchover is complete.
- Clock before switch: One of INTOSC/INTOSC postscaler (IRCF<2:0> ≠ 000)
  1. IRCF bits are modified to a different INTOSC/ INTOSC postscaler frequency.
  2. The clock switching circuitry waits for a falling edge of the current clock, at which point CLKO is held low.
  3. The clock switching circuitry then waits for **eight** falling edges of requested clock, after which it switches CLKO to this new clock source.
  4. The IOFS bit is set.
  5. Oscillator switchover is complete.

4.6.6 OSCILLATOR DELAY UPON POWER-UP, WAKE-UP AND CLOCK SWITCHING

Table 4-3 shows the different delays invoked for various clock switching sequences. It also shows the delays invoked for POR and wake-up.

TABLE 4-3: OSCILLATOR DELAY EXAMPLES

Switch From	Switch To	Frequency	Oscillator Delay	Comments
Sleep/POR	INTRC T1OSC INTOSC/INTOSC Postscaler	31.25 kHz 32.768 kHz 125 kHz-8 MHz	5 µs-10 µs (approx.) CPU Start-up(1)	Following a wake-up from Sleep mode or POR, CPU start-up is invoked to allow the CPU to become ready for code execution.
INTRC/Sleep	EC, RC	DC – 20 MHz		
INTRC (31.25 kHz)	EC, RC	DC – 20 MHz		
Sleep	LP, XT, HS	32.768 kHz-20 MHz	1024 Clock Cycles (OST)	Following a change from INTRC, an OST of 1024 cycles must occur.
INTRC (31.25 kHz)	INTOSC/INTOSC Postscaler	125 kHz-8 MHz	4 ms	Refer to **Section 4.6.4 "Modifying the IRCF bits"** for further details.

Note 1: The 5 µs-10 µs start-up delay is based on a 1 MHz system clock.

4.7 Power Managed Modes

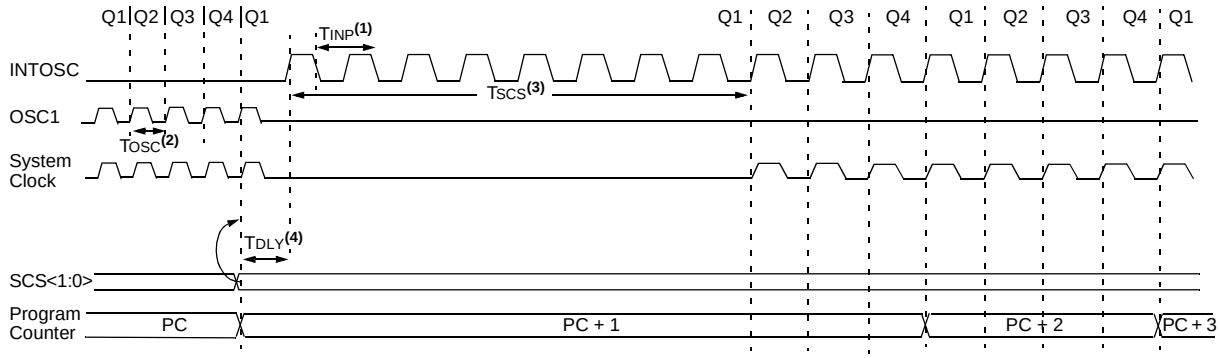
4.7.1 RC_RUN MODE

When SCS bits are configured to run from the INTRC, a clock transition is generated if the system clock is not already using the INTRC. The event will clear the OSTS bit and switch the system clock from the primary system clock (if SCS<1:0> = 00) determined by the value contained in the configuration bits, or from the T1OSC (if SCS<1:0> = 01) to the INTRC clock option, and shut down the primary system clock to conserve power. Clock switching will not occur if the primary system clock is already configured as INTRC.

If the system clock does not come from the INTRC (31.25 kHz) when the SCS bits are changed and the IRCF bits in the OSCCON register are configured for a frequency other than INTRC, the frequency may not be stable immediately. The IOFS bit (OSCCON<2> will be set when the INTOSC or postscaler frequency is stable, after approximately 4 ms.

After a clock switch has been executed, the OSTS bit is cleared, indicating a low-power mode and the device does not run from the primary system clock. The internal Q clocks are held in the Q1 state until eight falling edge clocks are counted on the INTRC oscillator. After the eight clock periods have transpired, the clock input to the Q clocks is released and operation resumes (see Figure 4-7).

FIGURE 4-7: TIMING DIAGRAM FOR XT, HS, LP, EC, EXTRC TO RC_RUN MODE



Note 1: TINP = 32 µs typical.
2: TOSC = 50 ns minimum.
3: TSCS = 8 TINP.
4: TDLY = 1 TINP.

4.7.2 SEC_RUN MODE

The core and peripherals can be configured to be clocked by T1OSC using a 32.768 kHz crystal. The crystal must be connected to the T1OSO and T1OSI pins. This is the same configuration as the low-power timer circuit (see **Section 7.6 "Timer1 Oscillator"**). When SCS bits are configured to run from T1OSC, a clock transition is generated. It will clear the OSTS bit, switch the system clock from either the primary system clock or INTRC, depending on the value of SCS<1:0> and FOSC<2:0>, to the external low-power Timer1 oscillator input (T1OSC) and shut down the primary system clock to conserve power.

After a clock switch has been executed, the internal Q clocks are held in the Q1 state until eight falling edge clocks are counted on the T1OSC. After the eight clock periods have transpired, the clock input to the Q clocks is released and operation resumes (see Figure 4-8). In addition, T1RUN (in T1CON) is set to indicate that T1OSC is being used as the system clock.

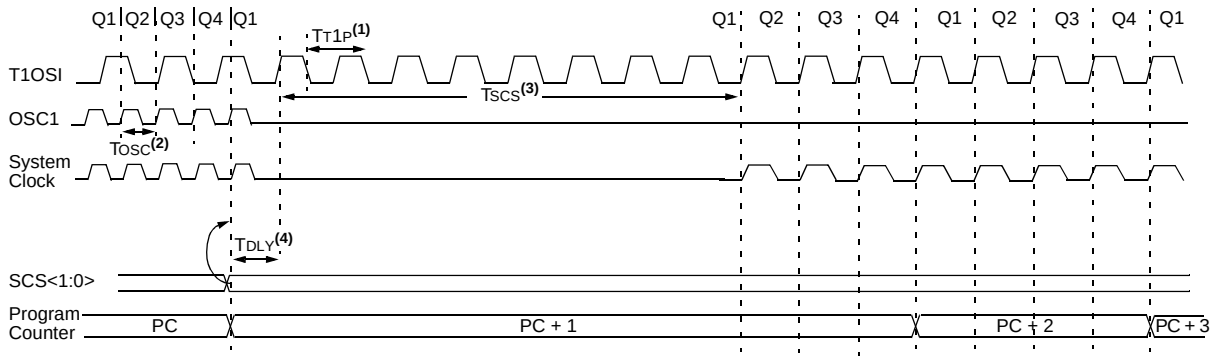
Note 1: The T1OSCEN bit must be enabled and it is the user's responsibility to ensure T1OSC is stable before clock switching to the T1OSC input clock can occur.

2: When T1OSCEN = 0, the following possible effects result.

Original SCS<1:0>	Modified SCS<1:0>	Final SCS<1:0>
00	01	00 – no change
00	11	10 – INTRC
10	11	10 – no change
10	01	00 – OSC defined by FOSC<2:0>

A clock switching event will occur if the final state of the SCS bits is different from the original.

FIGURE 4-8: TIMING DIAGRAM FOR SWITCHING TO SEC_RUN MODE



Note 1: TT1P = 30.52 µs.
2: TOSC = 50 ns minimum.
3: TSCS = 8 TT1P
4: TDLY = 1 TT1P.

4.7.3 SEC_RUN/RC_RUN TO PRIMARY CLOCK SOURCE

When switching from a SEC_RUN or RC_RUN mode back to the primary system clock, following a change of SCS<1:0> to '00', the sequence of events that take place will depend upon the value of the FOSC bits in the Configuration register. If the primary clock source is configured as a crystal (HS, XT or LP), then the transition will take place after 1024 clock cycles. This is necessary because the crystal oscillator has been powered down until the time of the transition. In order to provide the system with a reliable clock when the changeover has occurred, the clock will not be released to the changeover circuit until the 1024 counts have expired.

During the oscillator start-up time, the system clock comes from the current system clock. Instruction execution and/or peripheral operation continues using the currently selected oscillator as the CPU clock source until the necessary clock count has expired to ensure that the primary system clock is stable.

To know when the OST has expired, the OSTS bit should be monitored. OSTS = 1 indicates that the Oscillator Start-up Timer has timed out and the system clock comes from the primary clock source.

Following the oscillator start-up time, the internal Q clocks are held in the Q1 state until eight falling edge clocks are counted from the primary system clock. The clock input to the Q clocks is then released and operation resumes with the primary system clock determined by the FOSC bits (see Figure 4-10).

When in SEC_RUN mode, the act of clearing the T1OSCEN bit in the T1CON register will cause SCS<0> to be cleared, which causes the SCS<1:0> bits to revert to '00' or '10' depending on what SCS<1> is. Although the T1OSCEN bit was cleared, T1OSC will be enabled and instruction execution will continue until the OST time-out for the main system clock is complete. At that time, the system clock will switch from the T1OSC to the primary clock or the INTRC. Following this, the T1 oscillator will be shut down.

Note:	If the primary system clock is either RC or EC, an internal delay timer (5-10 μs) will suspend operation after exiting Secondary Clock mode to allow the CPU to become ready for code execution.

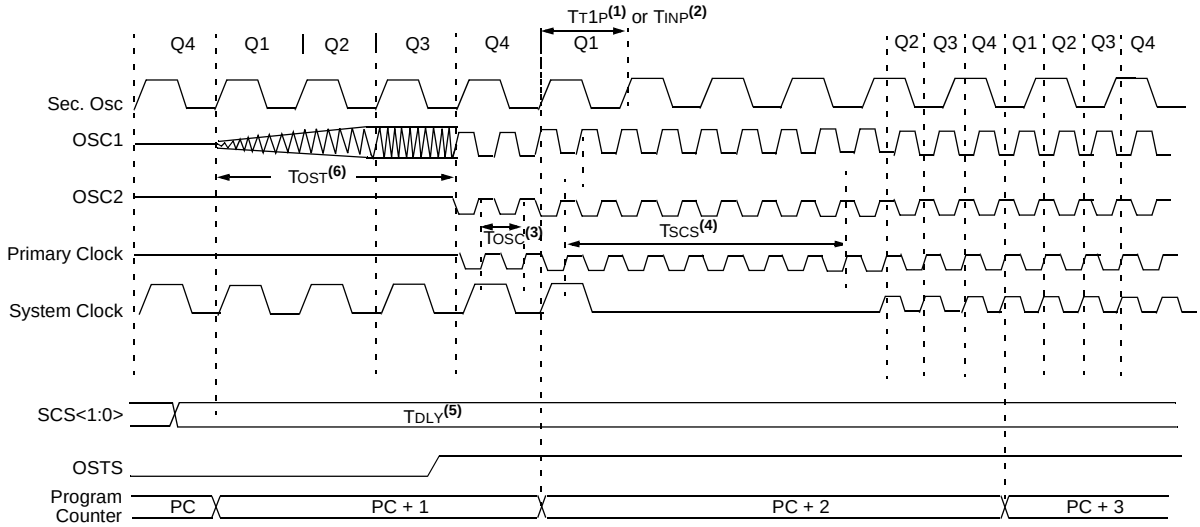
4.7.3.1 Returning to Primary Clock Source Sequence

Changing back to the primary oscillator from SEC_RUN or RC_RUN can be accomplished by either changing SCS<1:0> to '00' or clearing the T1OSCEN bit in the T1CON register (if T1OSC was the secondary clock).

The sequence of events that follows is the same for both modes:

1. If the primary system clock is configured as EC, RC or INTRC, then the OST time-out is skipped. Skip to step 3.
2. If the primary system clock is configured as an external oscillator (HS, XT, LP), then the OST will be active, waiting for 1024 clocks of the primary system clock.
3. On the following Q1, the device holds the system clock in Q1.
4. The device stays in Q1 while eight falling edges of the primary system clock are counted.
5. Once the eight counts transpire, the device begins to run from the primary oscillator.
6. If the secondary clock was INTRC and the primary is not INTRC, the INTRC will be shut down to save current, providing that the INTRC is not being used for any other function, such as WDT or Fail-Safe Clock Monitoring.
7. If the secondary clock was T1OSC, the T1OSC will continue to run if T1OSCEN is still set; otherwise, the T1 oscillator will be shut down.

FIGURE 4-9: TIMING FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN SEC_RUN/RC_RUN AND PRIMARY CLOCK



Note 1: TT1P = 30.52 µs.
2: TINP = 32 µs typical.
3: TOSC = 50 ns minimum.
4: TSCS = 8 TINP OR 8 TT1P.
5: TDLY = 1 TINP OR 1 TT1P.
6: Refer to parameter “D032” in **Section 18.0 “Electrical Characteristics”**.

4.7.3.2 Returning to Primary Oscillator with a Reset

A Reset will clear SCS<1:0> back to '00'. The sequence for starting the primary oscillator following a Reset is the same for all forms of Reset, including POR. There is no transition sequence from the alternate system clock to the primary system clock on a Reset condition. Instead, the device will reset the state of the OSCCON register and default to the primary system clock. The sequence of events that take place after this will depend upon the value of the FOSC bits in the Configuration register. If the external oscillator is configured as a crystal (HS, XT or LP), the CPU will be held in the Q1 state until 1024 clock cycles have transpired on the primary clock. This is necessary because the crystal oscillator had been powered down until the time of the transition.

During the oscillator start-up time, instruction execution and/or peripheral operation is suspended.

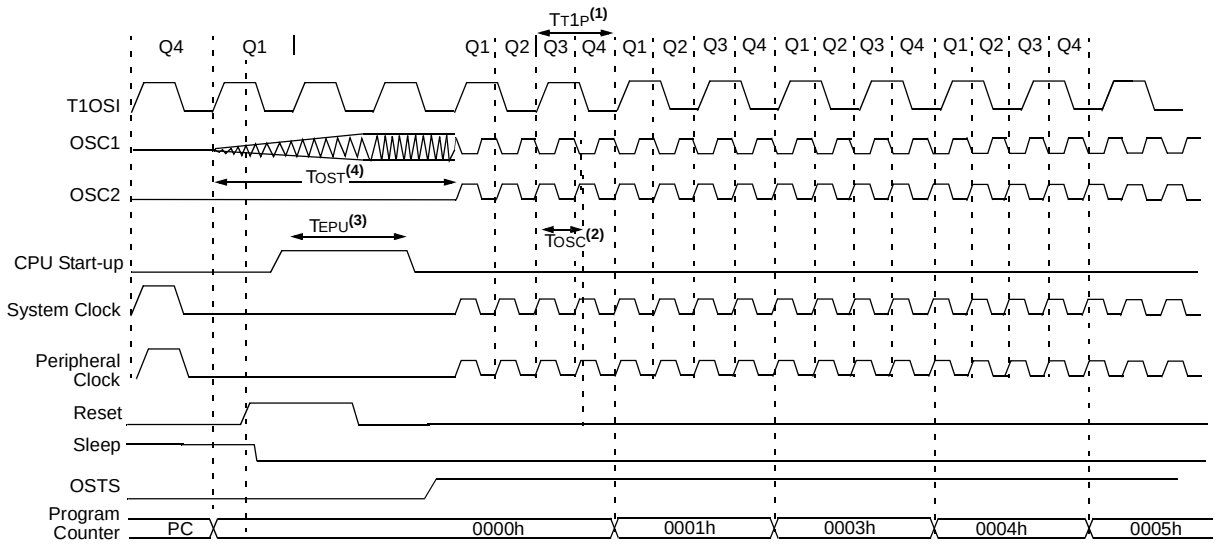
Note:	If Two-Speed Clock Start-up mode is enabled, the INTRC will act as the system clock until the OST timer has timed out.

If the primary system clock is either RC, EC or INTRC, the CPU will begin operating on the first Q1 cycle following the wake-up event. This means that there is no oscillator start-up time required because the primary clock is already stable; however, there is a delay between the wake-up event and the following Q2. An internal delay timer of 5-10 µs will suspend operation after the Reset to allow the CPU to become ready for code execution. The CPU and peripheral clock will be held in the first Q1.

The sequence of events is as follows:

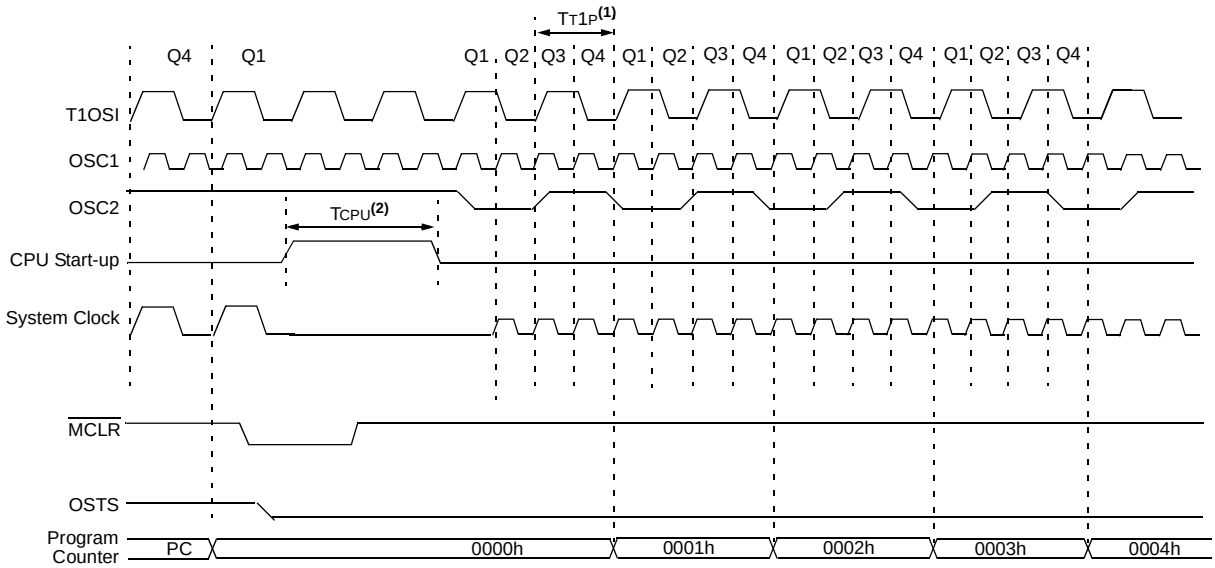
1. A device Reset is asserted from one of many sources (WDT, BOR, MCLR, etc.).
2. The device resets and the CPU start-up timer is enabled if in Sleep mode. The device is held in Reset until the CPU start-up time-out is complete.
3. If the primary system clock is configured as an external oscillator (HS, XT, LP), then the OST will be active waiting for 1024 clocks of the primary system clock. While waiting for the OST, the device will be held in Reset. The OST and CPU start-up timers run in parallel.
4. After both the CPU start-up and OST timers have timed out, the device will wait for one additional clock cycle and instruction execution will begin.

FIGURE 4-10: TIMING LP CLOCK TO PRIMARY SYSTEM CLOCK AFTER RESET (HS, XT, LP)



Note 1: TT1P = 30.52 µs.
2: TOSC = 50 ns minimum.
3: TEPU = 5-10 µs.
4: Refer to parameter "D032" in **Section 18.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**.

FIGURE 4-11: TIMING LP CLOCK TO PRIMARY SYSTEM CLOCK AFTER RESET (EC, RC, INTRC)



Note 1: TT1P = 30.52 µs.
2: TCPU = 5-10 µs.

TABLE 4-4: CLOCK SWITCHING MODES

Current System Clock	SCS bits <1:0> Modified to:	Delay	OSTS bit	IOFS bit	T1RUN bit	New System Clock	Comments
LP, XT, HS, T1OSC, EC, RC	10 (INTRC) FOSC<2:0> = LP, XT or HS	8 Clocks of INTRC	0	1(1)	0	INTRC or INTOSC or INTOSC Postscaler	The internal RC oscillator frequency is dependant upon the IRCF bits.
LP, XT, HS, INTRC, EC, RC	01 (T1OSC) FOSC<2:0> = LP, XT or HS	8 Clocks of T1OSC	0	N/A	1	T1OSC	T1OSCEN bit must be enabled.
INTRC T1OSC	00 FOSC<2:0> = EC or FOSC<2:0> = RC	8 Clocks of EC or RC	1	N/A	0	EC or RC	
INTRC T1OSC	00 FOSC<2:0> = LP, XT, HS	1024 Clocks (OST) + 8 Clocks of LP, XT, HS	1	N/A	0	LP, XT, HS	During the 1024 clocks, program execution is clocked from the secondary oscillator until the primary oscillator becomes stable.
LP, XT, HS	00 (Due to Reset) LP, XT, HS	1024 Clocks (OST)	1	N/A	0	LP, XT, HS	When a Reset occurs, there is no clock transition sequence. Instruction execution and/or peripheral operation is suspended unless Two-Speed Start-up mode is enabled, after which the INTRC will act as the system clock until the OST timer has expired.

Note 1: If the new clock source is INTOSC or INTOSC postscaler, then the IOFS bit will be set 4 ms after the clock change.

4.7.4 EXITING SLEEP WITH AN INTERRUPT

Any interrupt, such as WDT or INT0, will cause the part to leave the Sleep mode.

The SCS bits are unaffected by a SLEEP command and are the same before and after entering and leaving Sleep. The clock source used after an exit from Sleep is determined by the SCS bits.

4.7.4.1 Sequence of Events

If SCS<1:0> = 00:

1. The device is held in Sleep until the CPU start-up time-out is complete.
2. If the primary system clock is configured as an external oscillator (HS, XT, LP), then the OST will be active waiting for 1024 clocks of the primary system clock. While waiting for the OST, the device will be held in Sleep unless Two-Speed Start-up is enabled. The OST and CPU start-up timers run in parallel. Refer to **Section 15.17.3 "Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode"** for details on Two-Speed Start-up.
3. After both the CPU start-up and OST timers have timed out, the device will exit Sleep and begin instruction execution with the primary clock defined by the FOSC bits.

If SCS<1:0> = 01 or 10:

1. The device is held in Sleep until the CPU start-up time-out is complete.
2. After the CPU start-up timer has timed out, the device will exit Sleep and begin instruction execution with the selected oscillator mode.

Note: If a user changes SCS<1:0> just before entering Sleep mode, the system clock used when exiting Sleep mode could be different than the system clock used when entering Sleep mode.

As an example, if SCS<1:0> = 01, T1OSC is the system clock and the following instructions are executed:

```
BCF     OSCCON,SCS0
SLEEP
```

then a clock change event is executed. If the primary oscillator is XT, LP or HS, the core will continue to run off T1OSC and execute the SLEEP command.

When Sleep is exited, the part will resume operation with the primary oscillator after the OST has expired.

5.0 I/O PORTS

Some pins for these I/O ports are multiplexed with an alternate function for the peripheral features on the device. In general, when a peripheral is enabled, that pin may not be used as a general purpose I/O pin.

Additional information on I/O ports may be found in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual, (DS33023).

5.1 PORTA and the TRISA Register

PORTA is a 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISA. Setting a TRISA bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISA bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Reading the PORTA register reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it, will write to the port latch.

The RA4 pin is multiplexed with the Timer0 module clock input and one of the comparator outputs to become the RA4/T0CKI/C1OUT pin. Pins RA6 and RA7 are multiplexed with the main oscillator pins; they are enabled as oscillator or I/O pins by the selection of the main oscillator in Configuration Register 1H (see **Section 15.1 "Configuration Bits"** for details). When they are not used as port pins, RA6 and RA7 and their associated TRIS and LAT bits are read as '0'.

The other PORTA pins are multiplexed with analog inputs, the analog VREF+ and VREF- inputs and the comparator voltage reference output. The operation of pins RA3:RA0 and RA5 as A/D converter inputs is selected by clearing/setting the control bits in the ADCON1 register (A/D Control Register 1). Pins RA0 through RA5 may also be used as comparator inputs or outputs by setting the appropriate bits in the CMCON register.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, RA5 and RA3:RA0 are configured as analog inputs and read as '0'. RA4 is configured as a digital input.

The RA4/T0CKI/C1OUT pin is a Schmitt Trigger input and an open-drain output. All other PORTA pins have TTL input levels and full CMOS output drivers.

The TRISA register controls the direction of the RA pins even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user must ensure the bits in the TRISA register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs.

EXAMPLE 5-1: INITIALIZING PORTA

```
BCF     STATUS, RP0   ;
BCF     STATUS, RP1   ; Bank0
CLRF    PORTA         ; Initialize PORTA by
                      ; clearing output
                      ; data latches
BSF     STATUS, RP0   ; Select Bank 1
MOVLW   0x0F          ; Configure all pins
MOVWF   ADCON1        ; as digital inputs
MOVLW   0xCF          ; Value used to
                      ; initialize data
                      ; direction
MOVWF   TRISA         ; Set RA<3:0> as inputs
                      ; RA<5:4> as outputs
                      ; TRISA<7:6>are always
                      ; read as '0'.
```

FIGURE 5-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA0/AN0:RA1/AN1 PINS

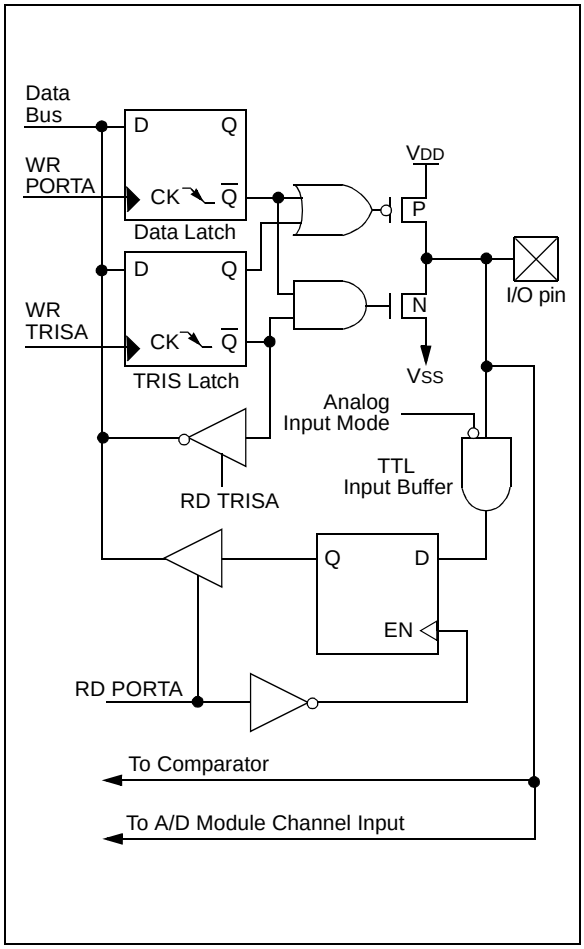


FIGURE 5-2: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA3/AN3/VREF+ PIN

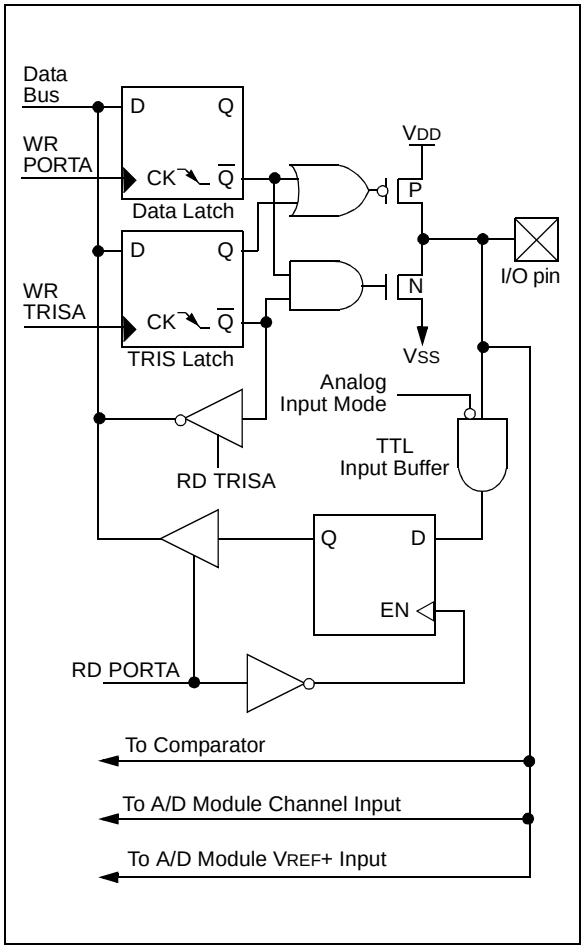


FIGURE 5-3: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA2/AN2/VREF-/CVREF PIN

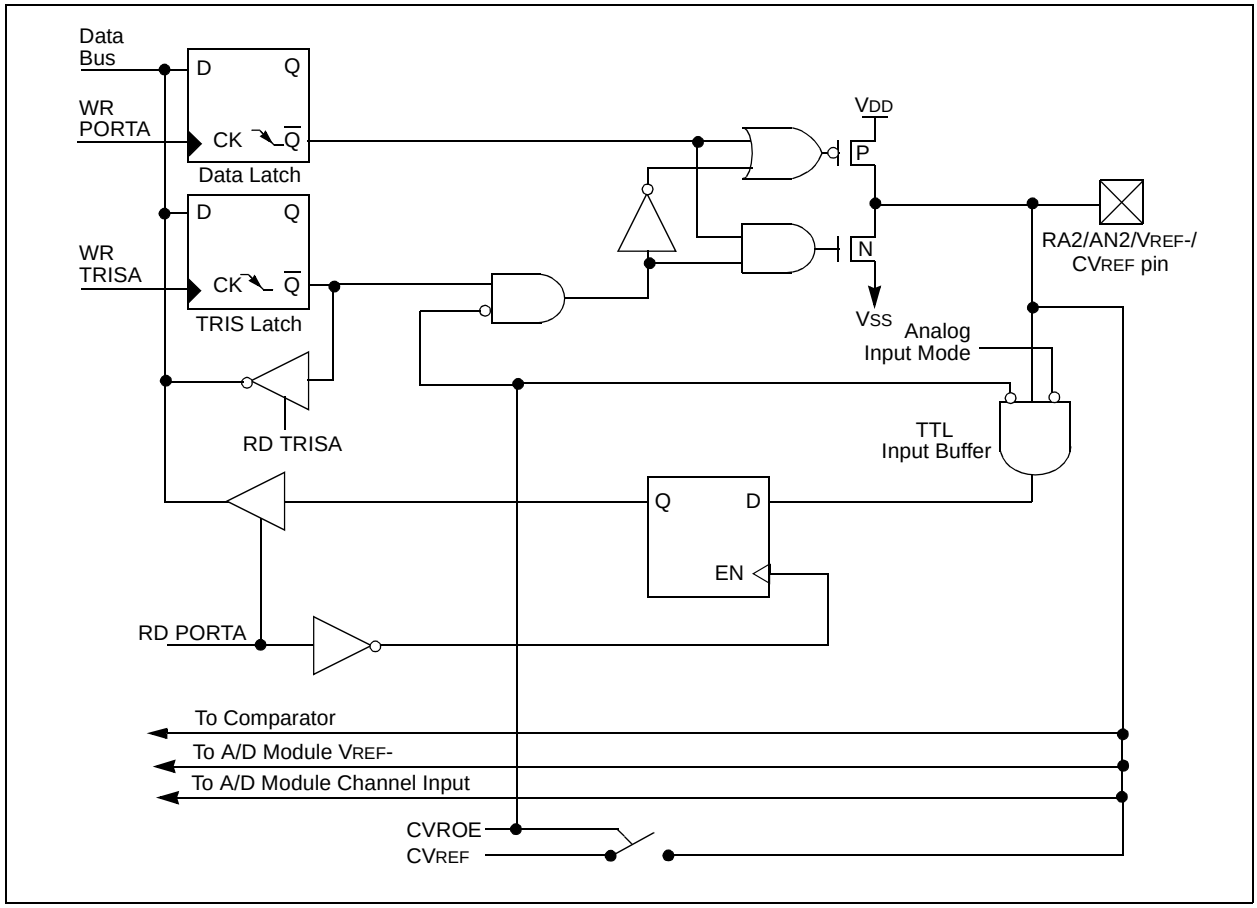


FIGURE 5-4: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA4/T0CKI/C1OUT PIN

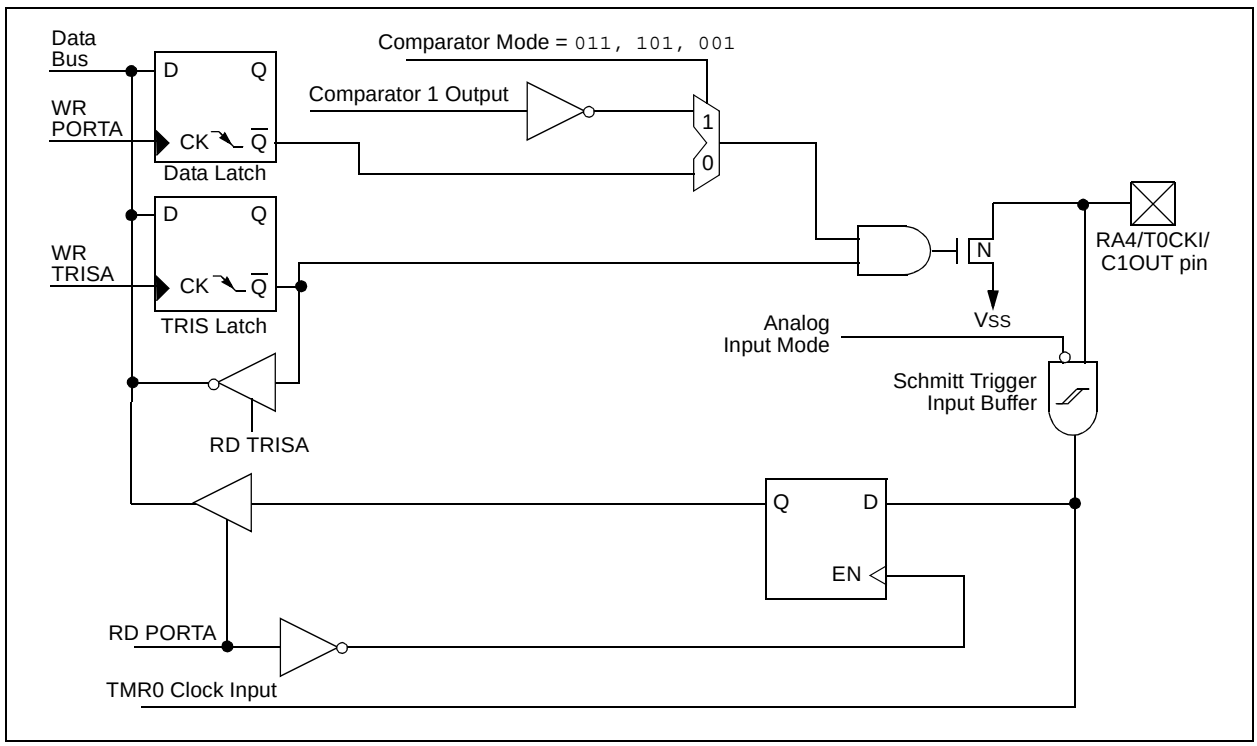


FIGURE 5-5: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA5/AN4/LVDIN/$\overline{SS}$/C2OUT PIN

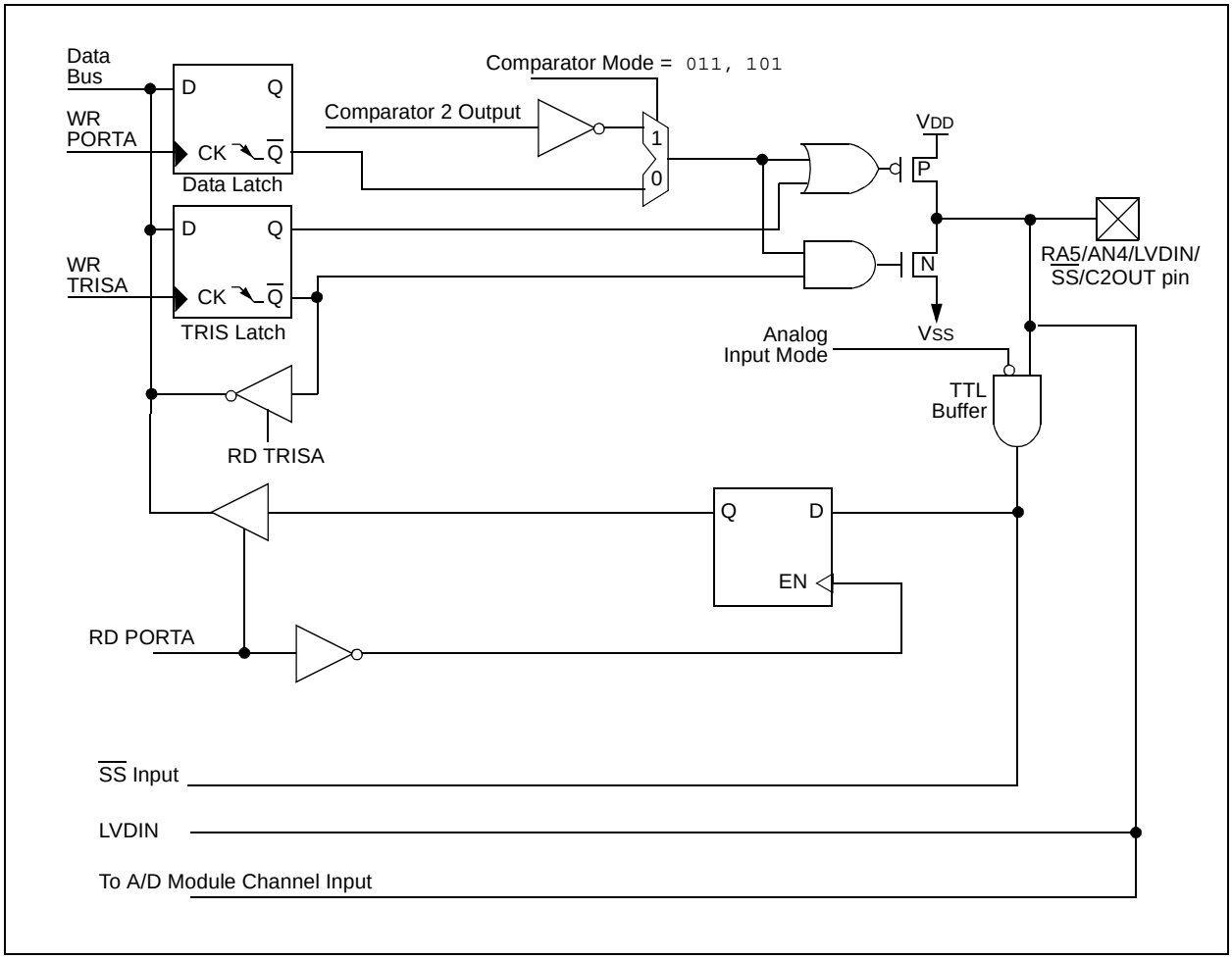
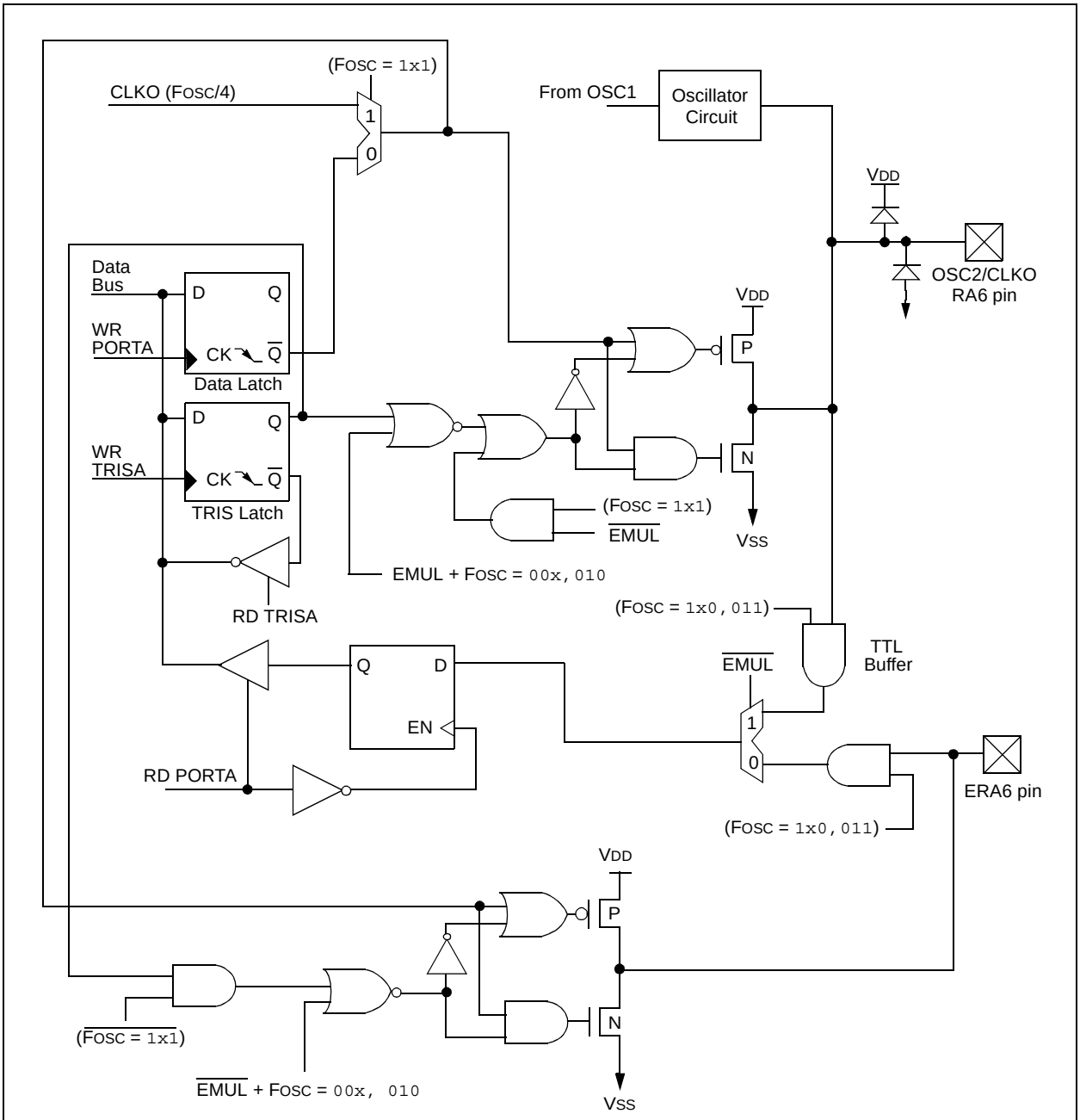


FIGURE 5-6: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF OSC2/CLKO/RA6 PIN



Note 1: CLKO signal is 1/4 of the FOSC frequency.

FIGURE 5-7: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF OSC1/CLKI/RA7 PIN

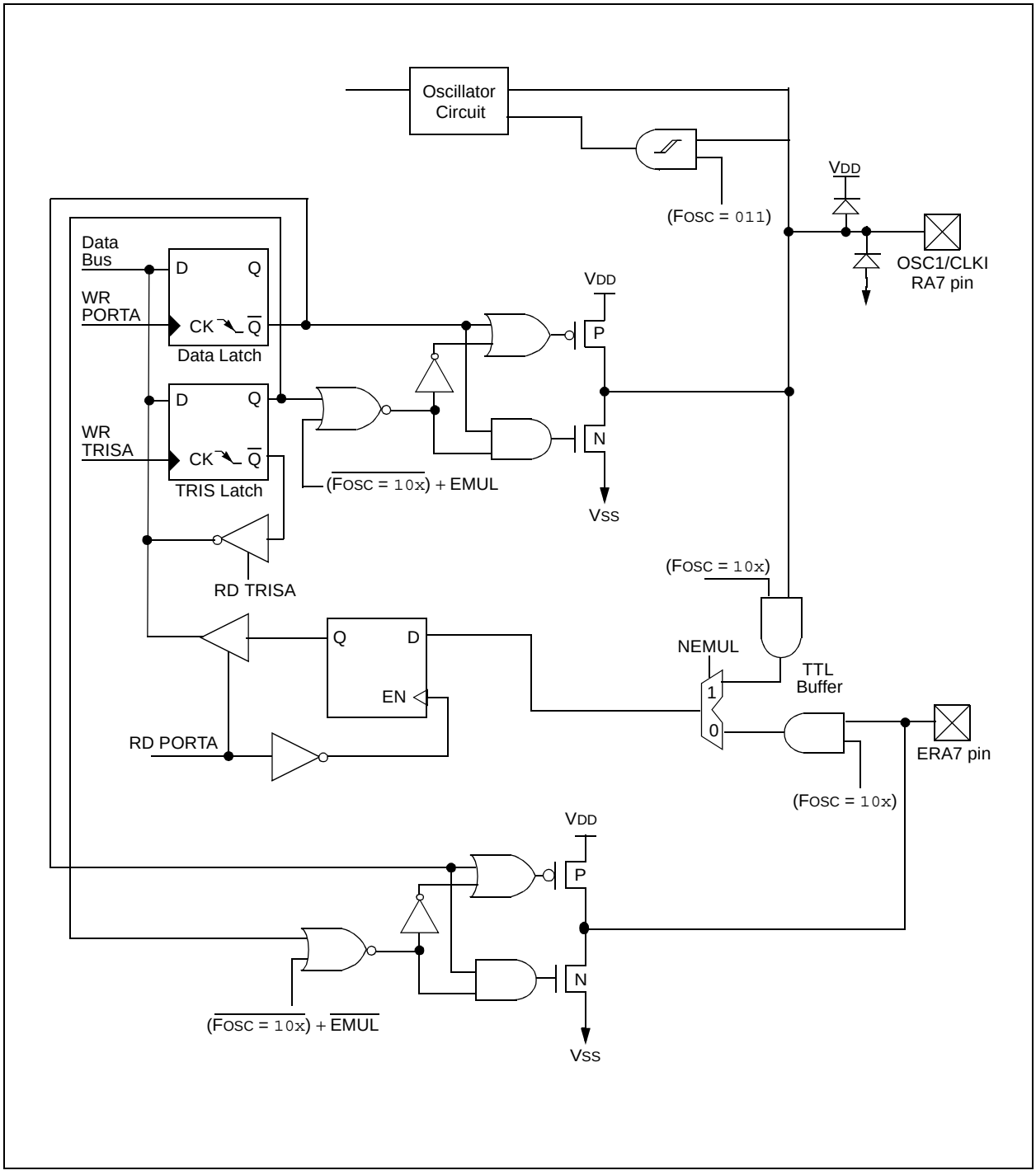


TABLE 5-1: PORTA FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer	Function
RA0/AN0	bit 0	TTL	Input/output or analog input.
RA1/AN1	bit 1	TTL	Input/output or analog input.
RA2/AN2/VREF-/CVREF	bit 2	TTL	Input/output or analog input or VREF-.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	bit 3	TTL	Input/output or analog input or VREF+.
RA4/T0CKI/C1OUT	bit 4	ST	Input/output or external clock input for Timer0. Output is open-drain type.
RA5/AN4/LVDIN/$\overline{SS}$/C2OUT	bit 5	TTL	Input/output or slave select input for synchronous serial port or analog input.
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	bit 6	ST	Input/output, connects to crystal or resonator, oscillator output or 1/4 the frequency of OSC1 and denotes the instruction cycle in RC mode.
OSC1/CLKI/RA7	bit 7	ST/CMOS(1)	Input/output, connects to crystal or resonator or oscillator input.

Legend: TTL = TTL input, ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured in RC Oscillator mode and a CMOS input otherwise.

TABLE 5-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTA

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
05h	PORTA	RA7	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	xx0x 0000	uu0u 0000
85h	TRISA	PORTA Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
9Fh	ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	--00 0000	--00 0000
9Ch	CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0111	0000 0111
9Dh	CVRCON	CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	—	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	000- 0000	000- 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

Note: When using the SSP module in SPI Slave mode and $\overline{SS}$ enabled, the A/D converter must be set to one of the following modes, where PCFG2:PCFG0 = 100, 101, 11x.

5.2 PORTB and the TRISB Register

PORTB is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISB. Setting a TRISB bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISB bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Each of the PORTB pins has a weak internal pull-up. A single control bit can turn on all the pull-ups. This is performed by clearing bit $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ (OPTION_REG<7>). The weak pull-up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. The pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset.

PORTB pins are multiplexed with analog inputs. The operation of each pin is selected by clearing/setting the appropriate control bits in the ADCON1 register.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as analog inputs and read as '0'.

Four of the PORTB pins (RB7:RB4) have an interrupt-on-change feature. Only pins configured as inputs can cause this interrupt to occur (i.e., any RB7:RB4 pin configured as an output is excluded from the interrupt-on-change comparison). The input pins (of RB7:RB4) are compared with the old value latched on the last read of PORTB. The "mismatch" outputs of RB7:RB4 are ORed together to generate the RB port change interrupt with flag bit, RBIF (INTCON<0>).

This interrupt can wake the device from Sleep. The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of PORTB. This will end the mismatch condition.

b) Clear flag bit RBIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit RBIF. Reading PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit RBIF to be cleared.

The interrupt-on-change feature is recommended for wake-up on key depression operation and operations where PORTB is only used for the interrupt-on-change feature. Polling of PORTB is not recommended while using the interrupt-on-change feature.

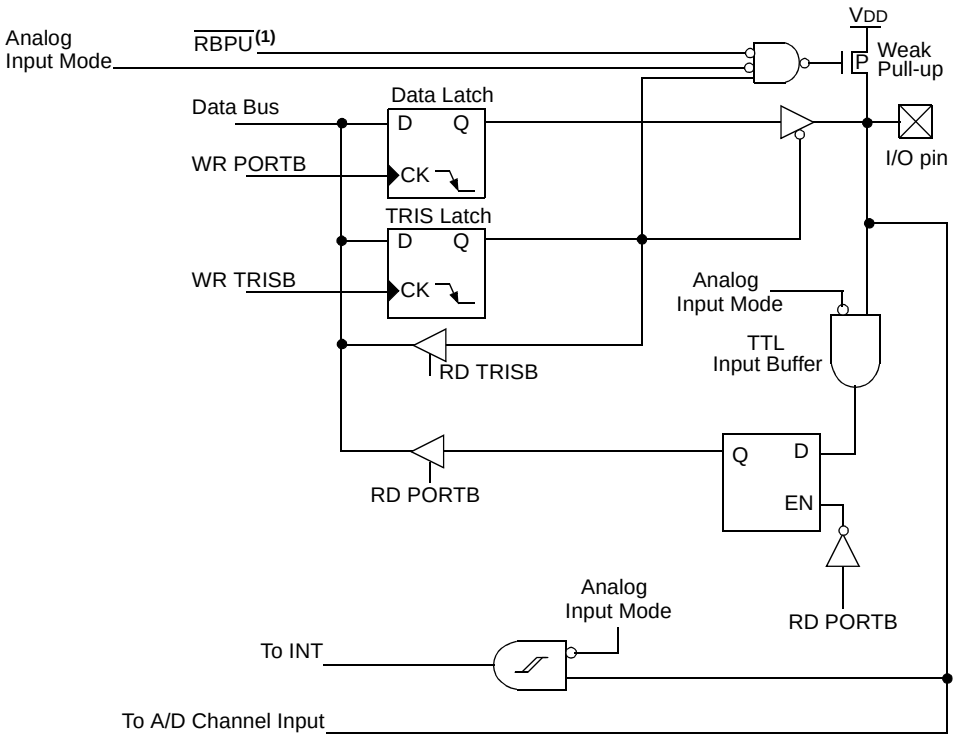
This interrupt on mismatch feature, together with software configureable pull-ups on these four pins, allow easy interface to a keypad and make it possible for wake-up on key depression. Refer to the Application Note *AN552,* "*Implementing Wake-up on Key Stroke*" (DS00552).

RB0/INT is an external interrupt input pin and is configured using the INTEDG bit (OPTION_REG<6>). RB0/INT is discussed in detail in **Section 15.15.1 "INT Interrupt"**.

PORTB is multiplexed with several peripheral functions (see Table 5-3). PORTB pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers.

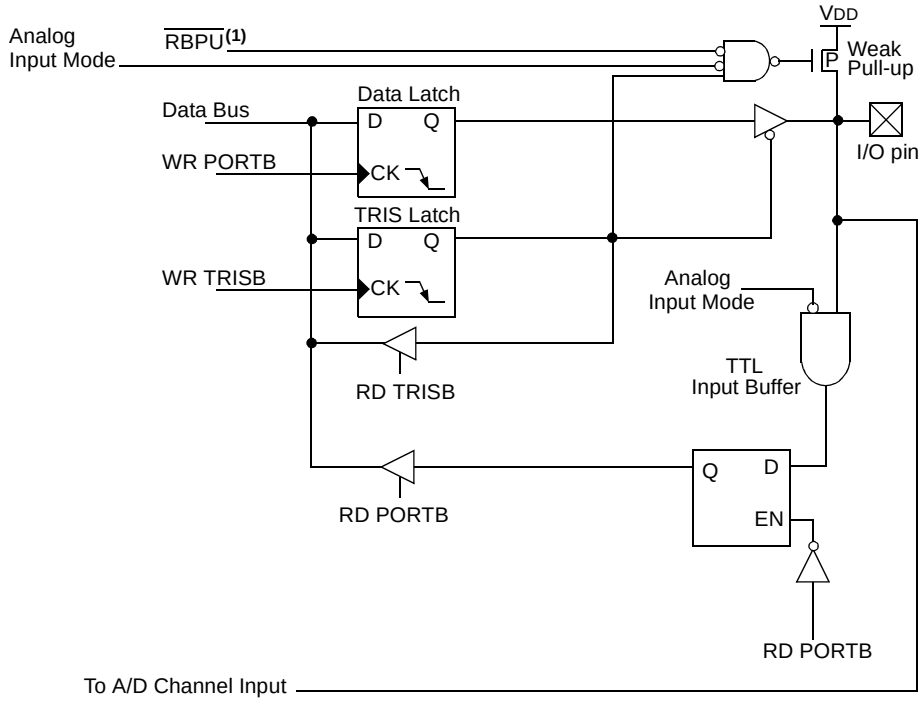
When enabling peripheral functions, care should be taken in defining TRIS bits for each PORTB pin. Some peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an output, while other peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an input. Since the TRIS bit override is in effect while the peripheral is enabled, read-modify-write instructions (BSF, BCF, XORWF) with TRISB as destination should be avoided. The user should refer to the corresponding peripheral section for the correct TRIS bit settings.

FIGURE 5-8: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB0/INT/AN12 PIN



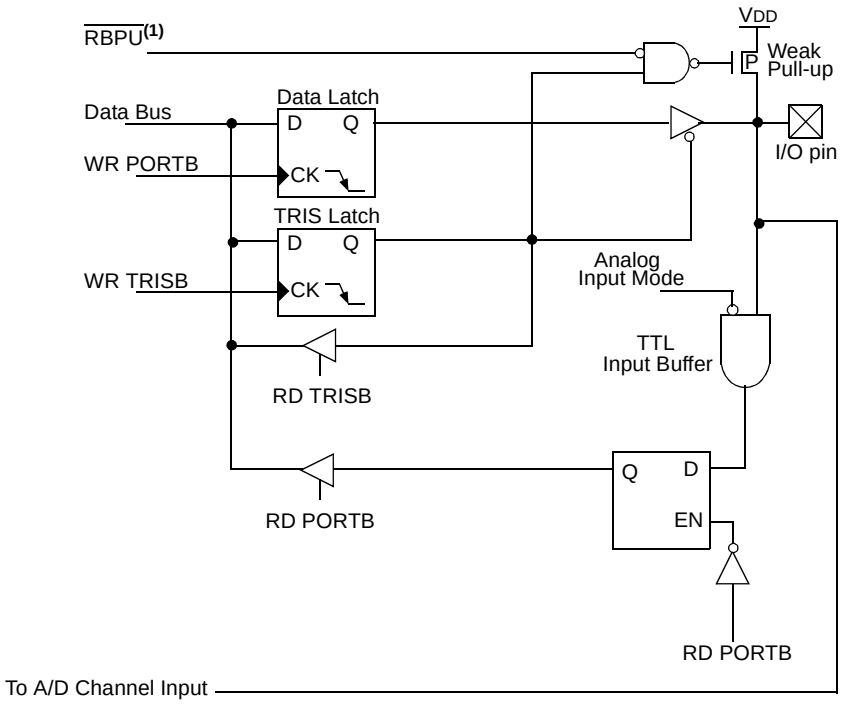
Note 1: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit.

FIGURE 5-9: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB1/AN10 PIN



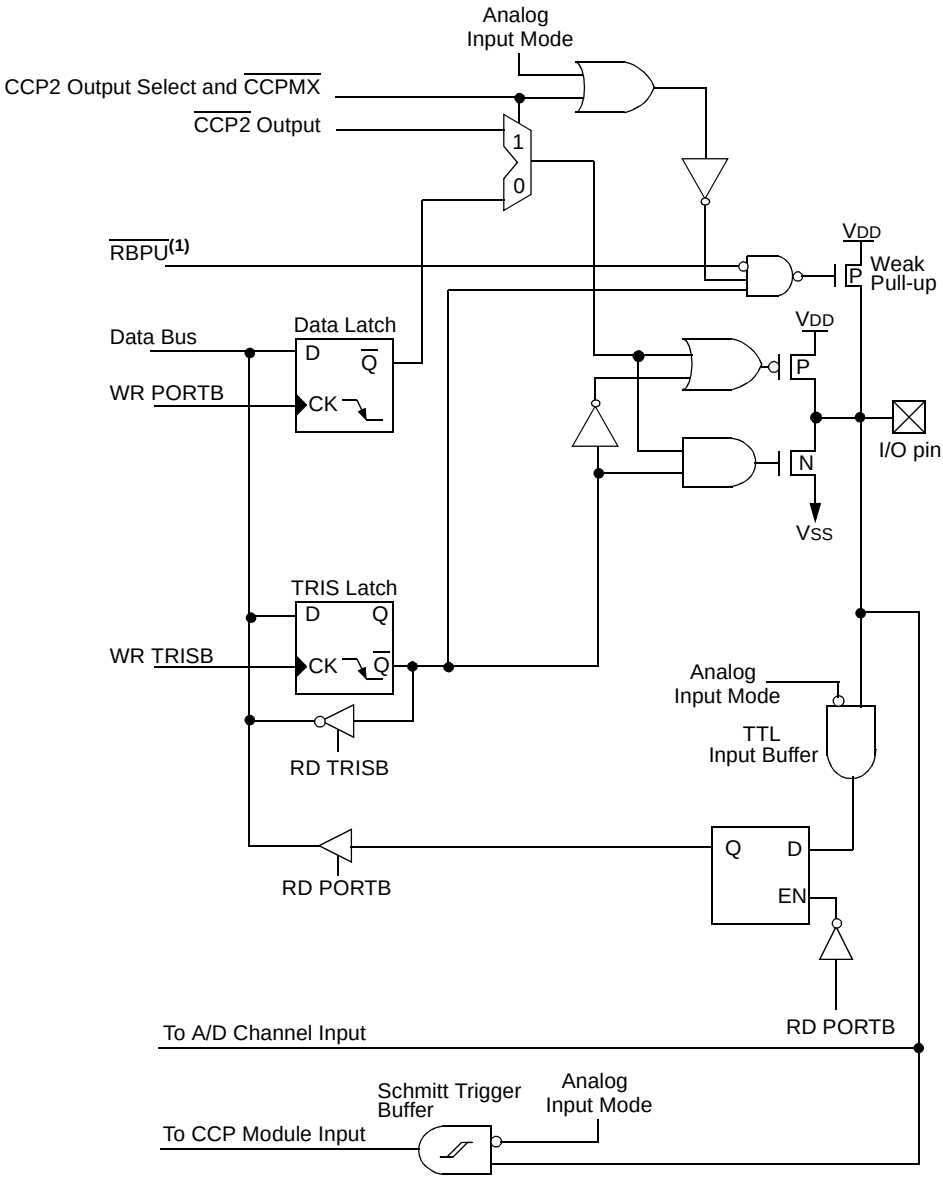
Note 1: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit.

FIGURE 5-10: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB2/AN8 PIN



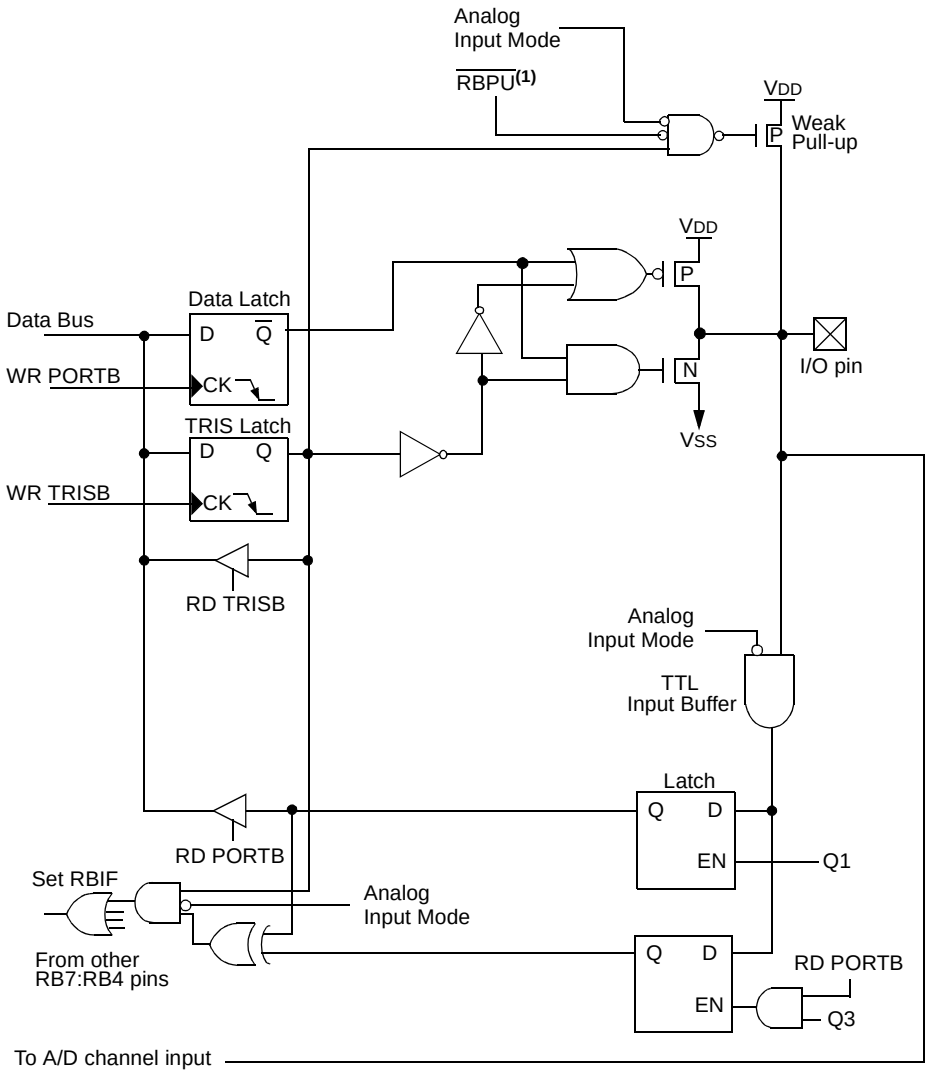
Note 1: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit.

FIGURE 5-11: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB3/CCP2/AN9 PIN



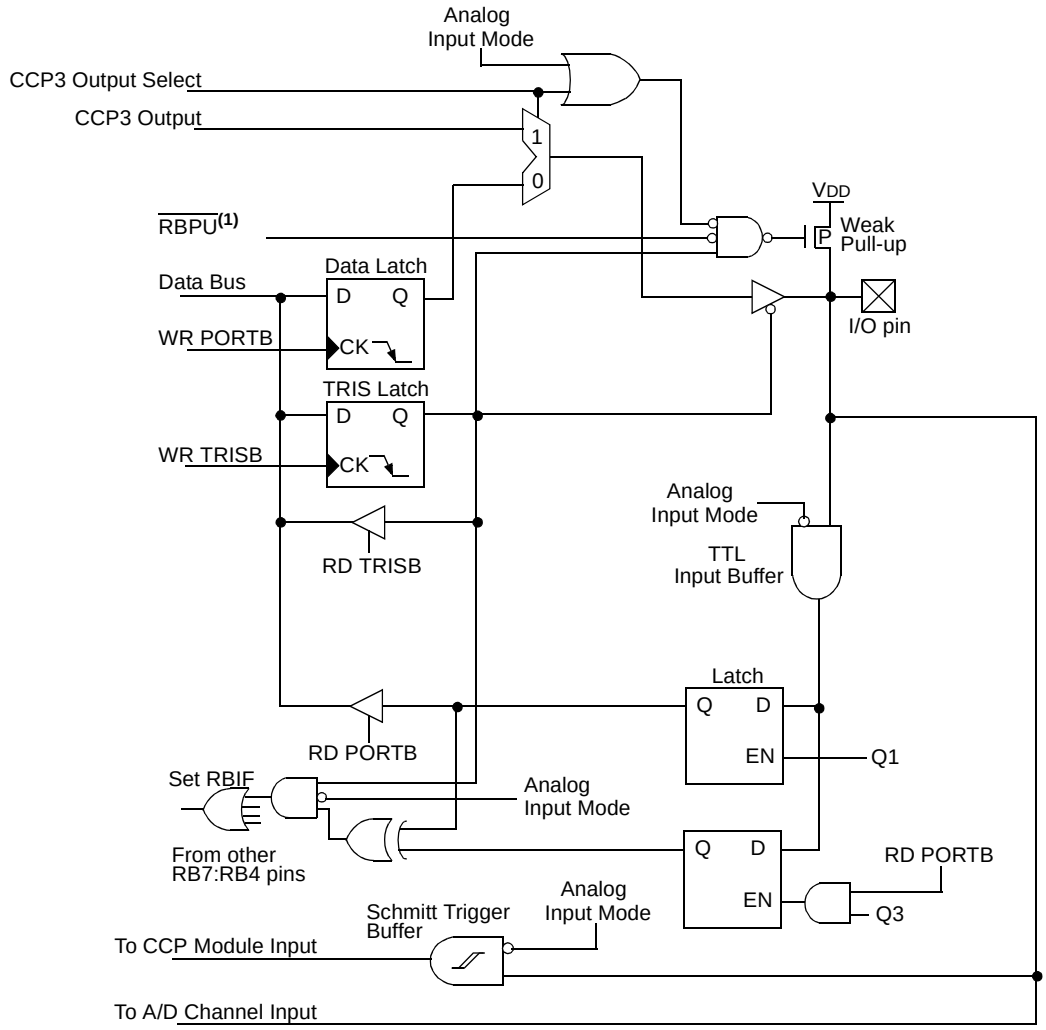
Note 1: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{RBPU}$ bit.
2: The SDA Schmitt conforms to the I^2C specification.

FIGURE 5-12: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB4/AN11 PIN



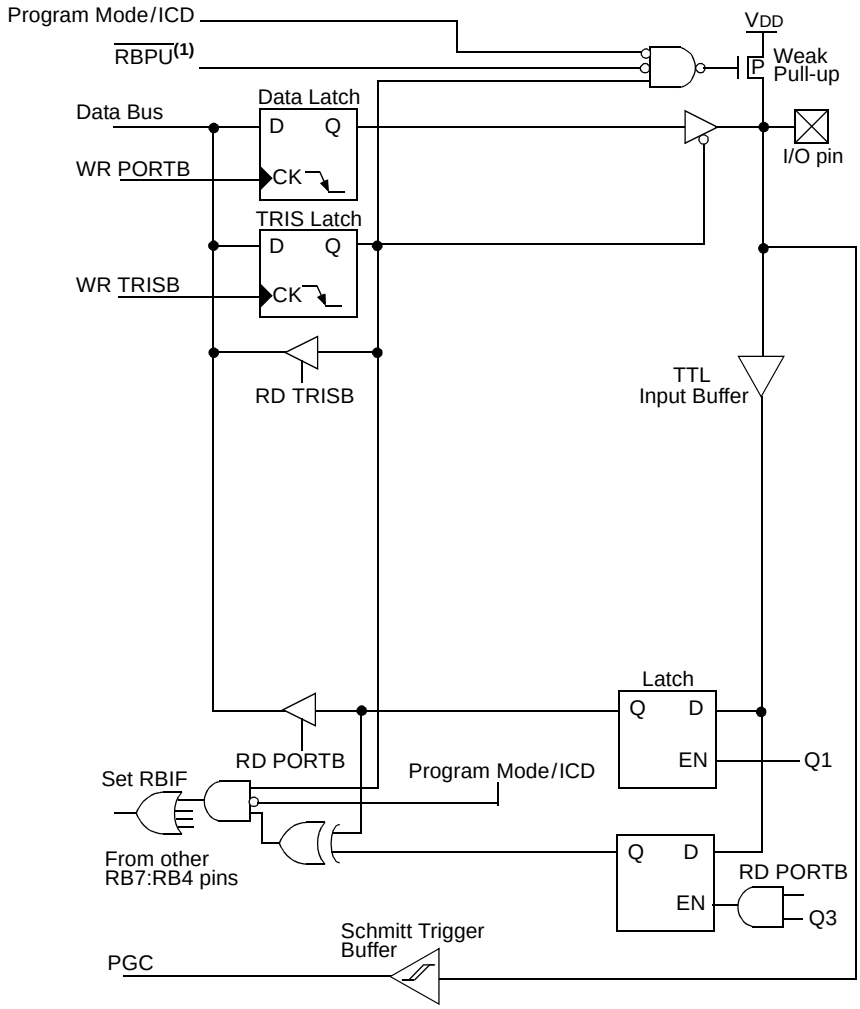
Note 1: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the RBPU bit.
2: The SCL Schmitt conforms to the I^2C specification.

FIGURE 5-13: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB5/AN13/CCP3 PIN



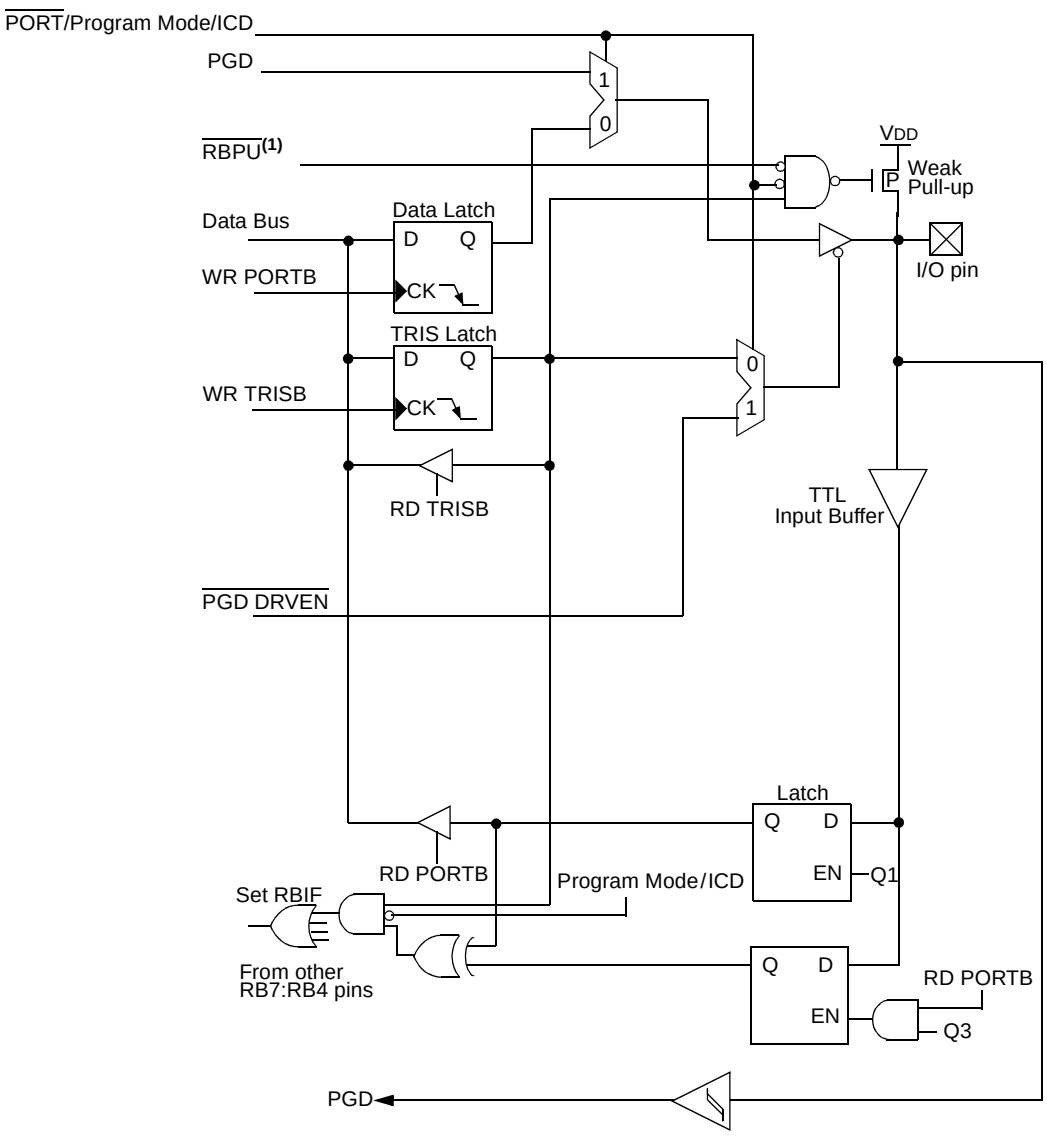
Note 1: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit.

FIGURE 5-14: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB6/PGC PIN



Note 1: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit.

FIGURE 5-15: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB7/PGD PIN



Note 1: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the RBPU bit.

TABLE 5-3: PORTB FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer	Function
RB0/INT/AN12	bit 0	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt input. Internal software programmable weak pull-up or analog input.
RB1/AN10	bit 1	TTL	Input/output pin. Internal software programmable weak pull-up or analog input.
RB2/AN8	bit 2	TTL	Input/output pin. Internal software programmable weak pull-up or analog input.
RB3/CCP2/AN9	bit 3	TTL	Input/output pin or Capture 2 input/Compare 2 output/PWM 2 output. Internal software programmable weak pull-up or analog input.
RB4/AN11	bit 4	TTL	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up or analog input.
RB5/AN13/CCP3	bit 5	TTL	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up or analog input or Capture 2 input/ Compare 2 output/PWM 2 output.
RB6/PGC	bit 6	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Serial programming clock.
RB7/PGD	bit 7	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Serial programming data.

Legend: TTL = TTL input, ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the external interrupt.

2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.

TABLE 5-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTB

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
06h, 106h	PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0	xx00 0000	uu00 0000
86h, 186h	TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
81h, 181h	OPTION_REG	$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
9Fh	ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged. Shaded cells are not used by PORTB.

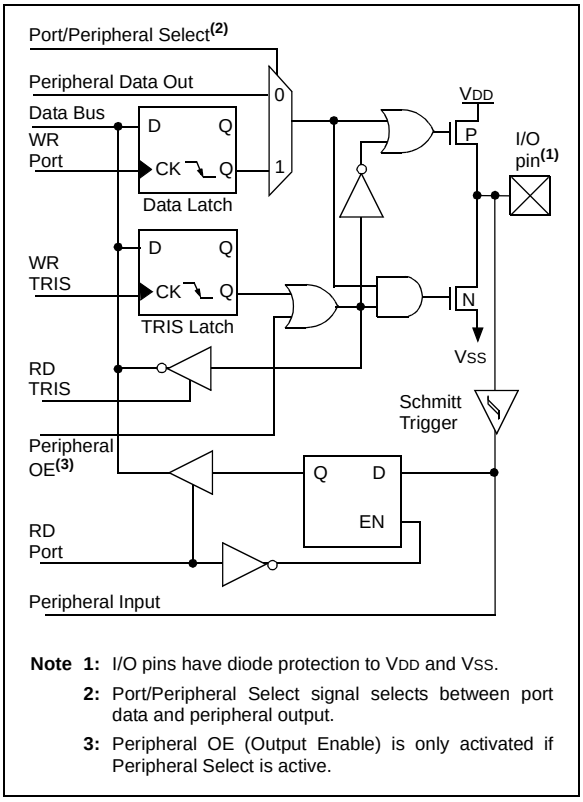
5.3 PORTC and the TRISC Register

PORTC is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISC. Setting a TRISC bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISC bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

PORTC is multiplexed with several peripheral functions (Table 5-5). PORTC pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers.

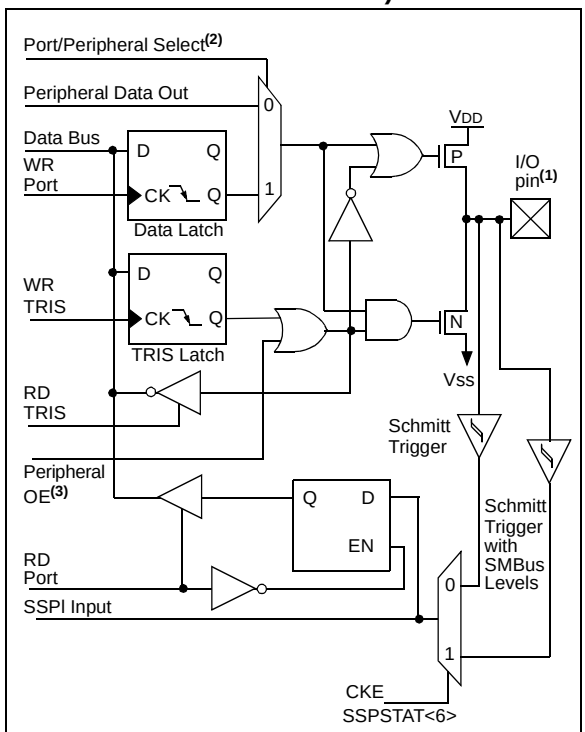
When enabling peripheral functions, care should be taken in defining TRIS bits for each PORTC pin. Some peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an output, while other peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an input. Since the TRIS bit override is in effect while the peripheral is enabled, read-modify-write instructions (BSF, BCF, XORWF) with TRISC as destination should be avoided. The user should refer to the corresponding peripheral section for the correct TRIS bit settings and to **Section 16.1 "Read-Modify-Write Operations"** for additional information on read-modify-write operations.

FIGURE 5-16: PORTC BLOCK DIAGRAM (PERIPHERAL OUTPUT OVERRIDE) RC<2:0>, RC<7:5> PINS



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.
2: Port/Peripheral Select signal selects between port data and peripheral output.
3: Peripheral OE (Output Enable) is only activated if Peripheral Select is active.

FIGURE 5-17: PORTC BLOCK DIAGRAM (PERIPHERAL OUTPUT OVERRIDE) RC<4:3> PINS



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.
2: Port/Peripheral Select signal selects between port data and peripheral output.
3: Peripheral OE (Output Enable) is only activated if Peripheral Select is active.

TABLE 5-5: PORTC FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI	bit 0	ST	Input/output port pin or Timer1 oscillator output/Timer1 clock input.
RC1/T1OSI/CCP2	bit 1	ST	Input/output port pin or Timer1 oscillator input or Capture2 input/ Compare2 output/PWM2 output.
RC2/CCP1	bit 2	ST	Input/output port pin or Capture1 input/Compare1 output/PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	bit 3	ST	RC3 can also be the synchronous serial clock for both SPI and I^2C modes.
RC4/SDI/SDA	bit 4	ST	RC4 can also be the SPI data in (SPI mode) or data I/O (I^2C mode).
RC5/SDO	bit 5	ST	Input/output port pin or Synchronous Serial Port data output.
RC6/TX/CK	bit 6	ST	Input/output port pin or USART asynchronous transmit or synchronous clock.
RC7/RX/DT	bit 7	ST	Input/output port pin or USART asynchronous receive or synchronous data.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 5-6: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTC

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
07h	PORTC	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
87h	TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

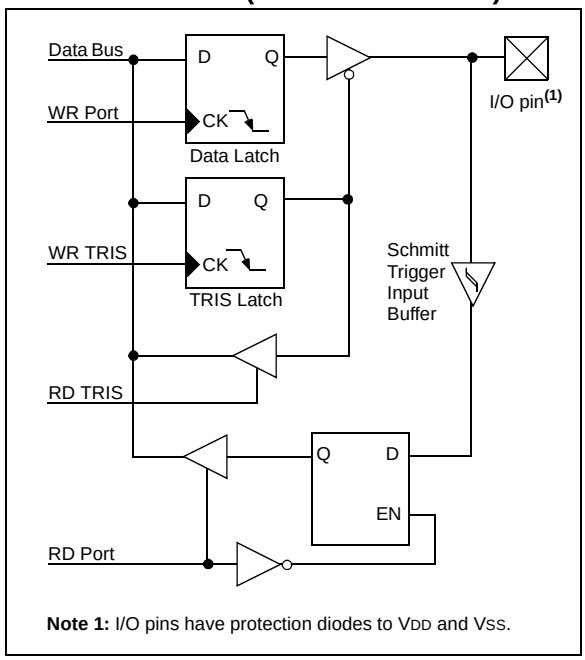
5.4 PORTD and TRISD Registers

This section is not applicable to the PIC16F737 or PIC16F767.

PORTD is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configureable as an input or output.

PORTD can be configured as an 8-bit wide microprocessor port (Parallel Slave Port) by setting control bit, PSPMODE (TRISE<4>). In this mode, the input buffers are TTL.

FIGURE 5-18: PORTD BLOCK DIAGRAM (IN I/O PORT MODE)



Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 5-7: PORTD FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RD0/PSP0	bit 0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Parallel Slave Port bit 0.
RD1/PSP1	bit 1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Parallel Slave Port bit 1.
RD2/PSP2	bit 2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Parallel Slave Port bit 2.
RD3/PSP3	bit 3	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Parallel Slave Port bit 3.
RD4/PSP4	bit 4	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Parallel Slave Port bit 4.
RD5/PSP5	bit 5	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Parallel Slave Port bit 5.
RD6/PSP6	bit 6	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Parallel Slave Port bit 6.
RD7/PSP7	bit 7	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Parallel Slave Port bit 7.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O mode and TTL buffers when in Parallel Slave Port mode.

TABLE 5-8: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTD

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
08h	PORTD	RD7	RD6	RD5	RD4	RD3	RD2	RD1	RD0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
88h	TRISD	PORTD Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
89h	TRISE	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—(1)	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 1111	0000 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTD.

Note 1: RE3 is an input only. The state of the TRISE3 bit has no effect and will always read '1'.

5.5 PORTE and TRISE Register

This section is not applicable to the PIC16F737 or PIC16F767.

PORTE has four pins, RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5, RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6, RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7 and $\overline{MCLR}$/VPP/RE3, which are individually configureable as inputs or outputs. These pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers. RE3 is only available as an input if MCLRE is '0' in Configuration Word 1.

I/O PORTE becomes control inputs for the microprocessor port when bit, PSPMODE (TRISE<4>), is set. In this mode, the user must make sure that the TRISE<2:0> bits are set (pins are configured as digital inputs). Ensure ADCON1 is configured for digital I/O. In this mode, the input buffers are TTL.

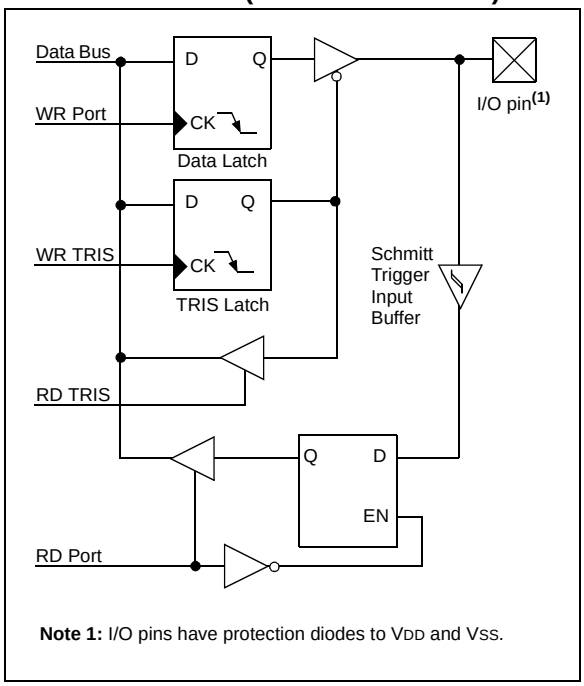
Register 5-1 shows the TRISE register, which also controls the Parallel Slave Port operation.

PORTE pins are multiplexed with analog inputs. When selected as an analog input, these pins will read as '0's.

TRISE controls the direction of the RE pins, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user must make sure to keep the pins configured as inputs when using them as analog inputs.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as analog inputs and read as '0'.

FIGURE 5-19: PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM (IN I/O PORT MODE)



Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 5-9: PORTE FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5	bit 0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or read control input in Parallel Slave Port mode or analog input. For $\overline{RD}$ (PSP mode): 1 = Idle 0 = Read operation. Contents of PORTD register output to PORTD I/O pins (if chip selected).
RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6	bit 1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or write control input in Parallel Slave Port mode or analog input. For $\overline{WR}$ (PSP mode): 1 = Idle 0 = Write operation. Value of PORTD I/O pins latched into PORTD register (if chip selected).
RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7	bit 2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or chip select control input in Parallel Slave Port mode or analog input. For $\overline{CS}$ (PSP mode): 1 = Device is not selected 0 = Device is selected
$\overline{MCLR}$/VPP/RE3	bit 3	ST	Input, Master Clear (Reset) or programming input voltage.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input
Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O mode and TTL buffers when in Parallel Slave Port mode.

TABLE 5-10: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTE

Addr	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
09h	PORTE	—	—	—	—	RE3	RE2	RE1	RE0	---- x000	---- -uuu
89h	TRISE	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—(1)	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 1111	0000 1111
9Fh	ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTE.
Note 1: RE3 is an input only. The state of the TRISE3 bit has no effect and will always read '1'.

REGISTER 5-1: TRISE REGISTER (ADDRESS 89h)

R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—(1)	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Parallel Slave Port Status/Control bits:**

IBF: Input Buffer Full Status bit

1 = A word has been received and is waiting to be read by the CPU
0 = No word has been received

bit 6 **OBF**: Output Buffer Full Status bit

1 = The output buffer still holds a previously written word
0 = The output buffer has been read

bit 5 **IBOV**: Input Buffer Overflow Detect bit (in Microprocessor mode)

1 = A write occurred when a previously input word has not been read (must be cleared in software)
0 = No overflow occurred

bit 4 **PSPMODE**: Parallel Slave Port Mode Select bit

1 = Parallel Slave Port mode
0 = General Purpose I/O mode

bit 3 **Unimplemented**: Read as '1'(1)

Note 1: RE3 is an input only. The state of the TRISE3 bit has no effect and will always read '1'.

bit 2 **PORTE Data Direction bits:**

TRISE2: Direction Control bit for pin RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7

1 = Input
0 = Output

bit 1 **TRISE1**: Direction Control bit for pin RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6

1 = Input
0 = Output

bit 0 **TRISE0**: Direction Control bit for pin RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5

1 = Input
0 = Output

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

5.6 Parallel Slave Port

The Parallel Slave Port (PSP) is not implemented on the PIC16F737 or PIC16F767.

PORTD operates as an 8-bit wide Parallel Slave Port or microprocessor port when control bit, PSPMODE (TRISE<4>), is set. In Slave mode, it is asynchronously readable and writable by an external system using the read control input pin RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5, the write control input pin RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6 and the chip select control input pin RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7.

The PSP can directly interface to an 8-bit microprocessor data bus. The external microprocessor can read or write the PORTD latch as an 8-bit latch. Setting bit PSPMODE enables port pin RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5 to be the $\overline{RD}$ input, RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6 to be the $\overline{WR}$ input and RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7 to be the $\overline{CS}$ (Chip Select) input. For this functionality, the corresponding data direction bits of the TRISE register (TRISE<2:0>) must be configured as inputs (i.e., set). The A/D port configuration bits, PCFG3:PCFG0 (ADCON1<3:0>), must be set to configure pins RE2:RE0 as digital I/O.

There are actually two 8-bit latches, one for data output (external reads) and one for data input (external writes). The firmware writes 8-bit data to the PORTD output data latch and reads data from the PORTD input data latch (note that they have the same address). In this mode, the TRISD register is ignored since the external device is controlling the direction of data flow.

An external write to the PSP occurs when the $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{WR}$ lines are both detected low. Firmware can read the actual data on the PORTD pins during this time. When either the $\overline{CS}$ or $\overline{WR}$ lines become high (level triggered), the data on the PORTD pins is latched and the Input Buffer Full (IBF) status flag bit (TRISE<7>) and interrupt flag bit, PSPIF (PIR1<7>), are set on the Q4 clock cycle following the next Q2 cycle to signal the write is complete (Figure 5-21). Firmware clears the IBF flag by reading the latched PORTD data and clears the PSPIF bit.

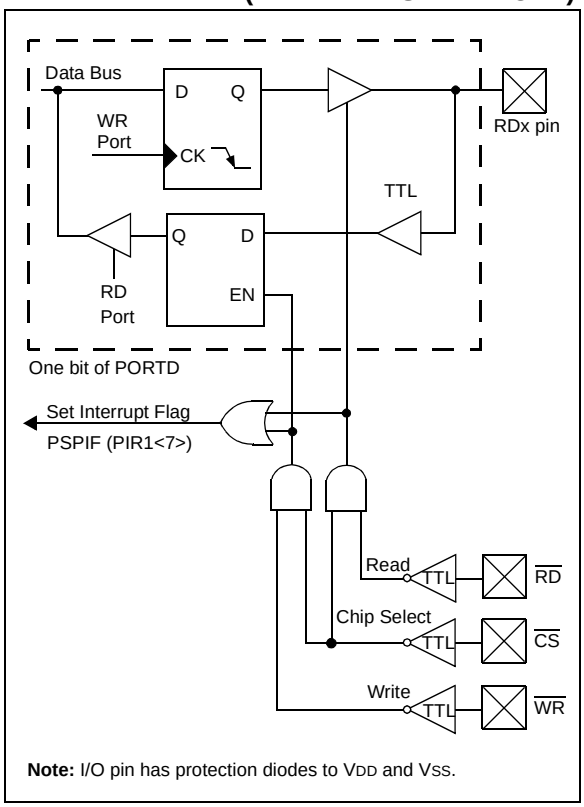
The Input Buffer Overflow (IBOV) status flag bit (TRISE<5>) is set if an external write to the PSP occurs while the IBF flag is set from a previous external write. The previous PORTD data is overwritten with the new data. IBOV is cleared by reading PORTD and clearing IBOV.

A read from the PSP occurs when both the $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{RD}$ lines are detected low. The data in the PORTD output latch is output to the PORTD pins. The Output Buffer Full (OBF) status flag bit (TRISE<6>) is cleared immediately (Figure 5-22), indicating that the PORTD latch is being read or has been read by the external bus. If firmware writes new data to the output latch during this time, it is immediately output to the PORTD pins but OBF will remain cleared.

When either the $\overline{CS}$ or $\overline{RD}$ pins are detected high, the PORTD outputs are disabled and the interrupt flag bit PSPIF is set on the Q4 clock cycle following the next Q2 cycle, indicating that the read is complete. OBF remains low until firmware writes new data to PORTD.

When not in PSP mode, the IBF and OBF bits are held clear. Flag bit IBOV remains unchanged. The PSPIF bit must be cleared by the user in firmware; the interrupt can be disabled by clearing the interrupt enable bit, PSPIE (PIE1<7>).

FIGURE 5-20: PORTD AND PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM (PARALLEL SLAVE PORT)



Note: I/O pin has protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 5-21: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT WRITE WAVEFORMS

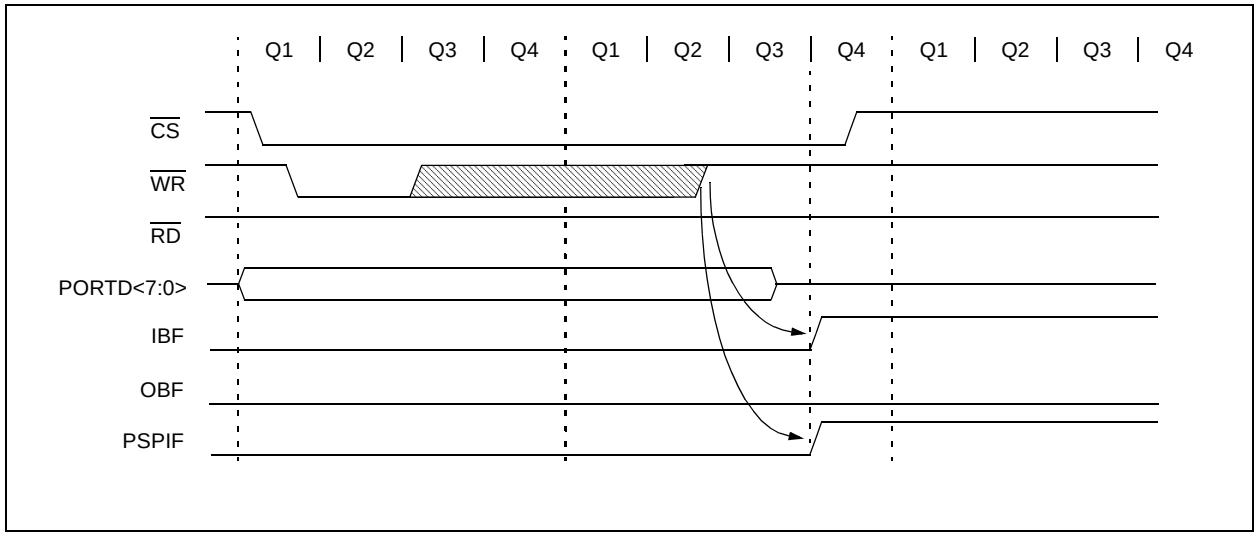


FIGURE 5-22: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT READ WAVEFORMS

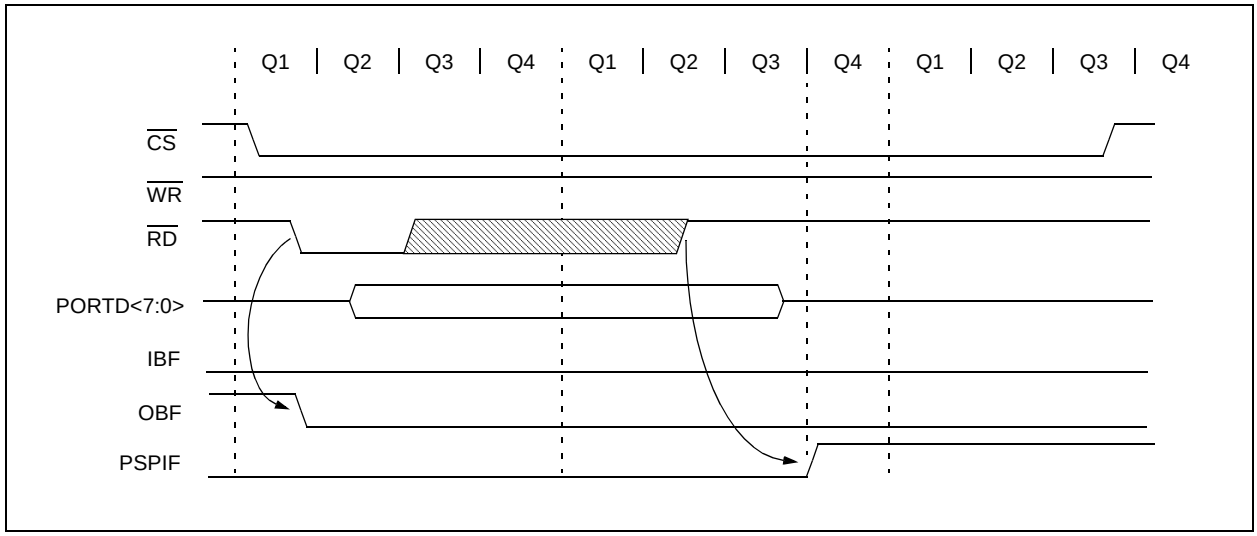


TABLE 5-11: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PARALLEL SLAVE PORT

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
08h	PORTD	Port Data Latch when written: Port pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
09h	PORTE	—	—	—	—	RE3	RE2	RE1	RE0	---- x000	---- x000
89h	TRISE	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	__(2)	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 1111	0000 1111
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
9Fh	ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Parallel Slave Port.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on the PIC16F737/767; always maintain these bits clear.

2: RE3 is an input only. The state of the TRISE3 bit has no effect and will always read '1'.

NOTES:

6.0 TIMER0 MODULE

The Timer0 module timer/counter has the following features:

- 8-bit timer/counter
- Readable and writable
- 8-bit software programmable prescaler
- Internal or external clock select
- Interrupt on overflow from FFh to 00h
- Edge select for external clock

Additional information on the Timer0 module is available in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023).

Figure 6-1 is a block diagram of the Timer0 module and the prescaler shared with the WDT.

6.1 Timer0 Operation

Timer0 operation is controlled through the OPTION_REG register (see Register 2-2). Timer mode is selected by clearing bit T0CS (OPTION_REG<5>). In Timer mode, the Timer0 module will increment every instruction cycle (without prescaler). If the TMR0 register is written, the increment is inhibited for the following two instruction cycles. The user can work around this by writing an adjusted value to the TMR0 register.

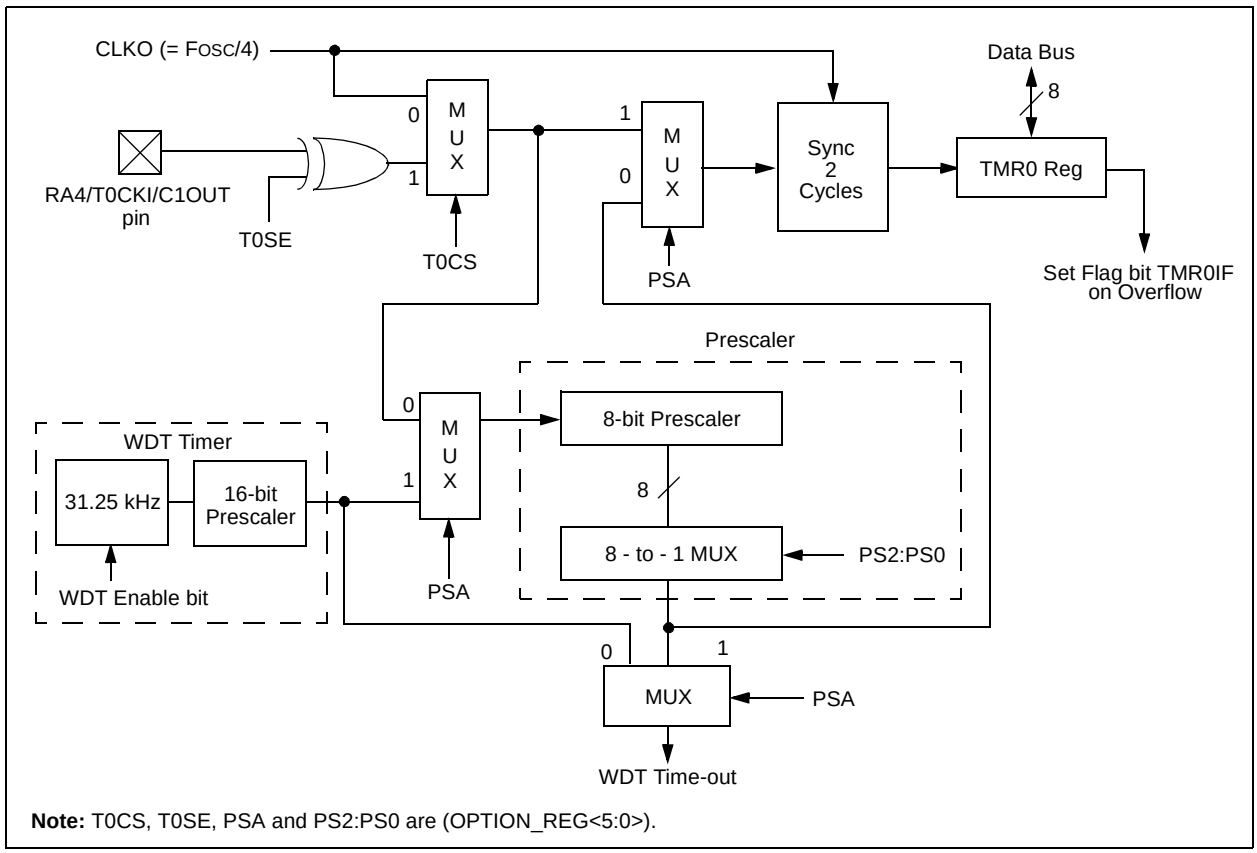
Counter mode is selected by setting bit, T0CS (OPTION_REG<5>). In Counter mode, Timer0 will increment, either on every rising or falling edge of pin RA4/T0CKI/C1OUT. The incrementing edge is determined by the Timer0 Source Edge Select bit, T0SE (OPTION_REG<4>). Clearing bit T0SE selects the rising edge. Restrictions on the external clock input are discussed in detail in **Section 6.3 "Using Timer0 With an External Clock"**.

The prescaler is mutually, exclusively shared between the Timer0 module and the Watchdog Timer. The prescaler is not readable or writable. **Section 6.4 "Prescaler"** details the operation of the prescaler.

6.2 Timer0 Interrupt

The TMR0 interrupt is generated when the TMR0 register overflows from FFh to 00h. This overflow sets bit TMR0IF (INTCON<2>). The interrupt can be masked by clearing bit TMR0IE (INTCON<5>). Bit TMR0IF must be cleared in software by the Timer0 module Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling this interrupt. The TMR0 interrupt cannot awaken the processor from Sleep since the timer is shut-off during Sleep.

FIGURE 6-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE TIMER0/WDT PRESCALER



Note: T0CS, T0SE, PSA and PS2:PS0 are (OPTION_REG<5:0>).

6.3 Using Timer0 With an External Clock

When no prescaler is used, the external clock input is the same as the prescaler output. The synchronization of T0CKI with the internal phase clocks is accomplished by sampling the prescaler output on the Q2 and Q4 cycles of the internal phase clocks. Therefore, it is necessary for T0CKI to be high for at least 2 TOSC (and a small RC delay of 20 ns) and low for at least 2 TOSC (and a small RC delay of 20 ns). Refer to the electrical specification of the desired device.

6.4 Prescaler

There is only one prescaler available, which is mutually exclusively shared between the Timer0 module and the Watchdog Timer. A prescaler assignment for the Timer0 module means that the prescaler cannot be used by the Watchdog Timer and vice versa. This prescaler is not readable or writable (see Figure 6-1).

Note:	Although the prescaler can be assigned to either the WDT or Timer0, but not both, a new divide counter is implemented in the WDT circuit to give multiple WDT time-out selections. This allows TMR0 and WDT to each have their own scaler. Refer to **Section 15.17 "Watchdog Timer (WDT)"** for further details.

The PSA and PS2:PS0 bits (OPTION_REG<3:0>) determine the prescaler assignment and prescale ratio.

When assigned to the Timer0 module, all instructions writing to the TMR0 register (e.g., `CLRF 1, MOVWF 1, BSF 1,x`....etc.) will clear the prescaler. When assigned to WDT, a `CLRWDT` instruction will clear the prescaler along with the Watchdog Timer. The prescaler is not readable or writable.

Note:	Writing to TMR0 when the prescaler is assigned to Timer0 will clear the prescaler count but will not change the prescaler assignment.

REGISTER 6-1: OPTION_REG REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA(1)	PS2	PS1	PS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$:** PORTB Pull-up Enable bit
1 = PORTB pull-ups are disabled
0 = PORTB pull-ups are enabled

bit 6 **INTEDG:** Interrupt Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge of RB0/INT pin
0 = Interrupt on falling edge of RB0/INT pin

bit 5 **T0CS**: TMR0 Clock Source Select bit
1 = Transition on T0CKI pin
0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (CLKO)

bit 4 **T0SE**: TMR0 Source Edge Select bit
1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on T0CKI pin
0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on T0CKI pin

bit 3 **PSA**: Prescaler Assignment bit(1)
1 = Prescaler is assigned to the WDT
0 = Prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module

Note 1: To avoid an unintended device Reset, the instruction sequence shown in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023) must be executed when changing the prescaler assignment from Timer0 to the WDT. This sequence must be followed even if the WDT is disabled.

bit 2-0 **PS<2:0>:** Prescaler Rate Select bits

Bit Value	TMR0 Rate	WDT Rate
000	1 : 2	1 : 1
001	1 : 4	1 : 2
010	1 : 8	1 : 4
011	1 : 16	1 : 8
100	1 : 32	1 : 16
101	1 : 64	1 : 32
110	1 : 128	1 : 64
111	1 : 256	1 : 128

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

EXAMPLE 6-1: CHANGING THE PRESCALER ASSIGNMENT FROM WDT TO TIMER0

```
CLRWDT                          ; Clear WDT and prescaler
BANKSEL   OPTION                ; Select Bank of OPTION
MOVLW     b'xxxx0xxx'           ; Select TMR0, new prescale
MOVWF     OPTION                ; value and clock source
```

TABLE 6-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER0

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
01h,101h	TMR0	Timer0 Module Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
0Bh,8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
81h,181h	OPTION	$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Timer0.

7.0 TIMER1 MODULE

The Timer1 module is a 16-bit timer/counter consisting of two 8-bit registers (TMR1H and TMR1L), which are readable and writable. The TMR1 register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L) increments from 0000h to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. The TMR1 interrupt, if enabled, is generated on overflow which is latched in interrupt flag bit, TMR1IF (PIR1<0>). This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing TMR1 interrupt enable bit, TMR1IE (PIE1<0>).

The Timer1 oscillator can be used as a secondary clock source in low-power modes. When the T1RUN bit is set along with SCS<1:0> = 01, the Timer1 oscillator is providing the system clock. If the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled and the Timer1 oscillator fails while providing the system clock, polling the T1RUN bit will indicate whether the clock is being provided by the Timer1 oscillator or another source.

Timer1 can also be used to provide Real-Time Clock (RTC) functionality to applications with only a minimal addition of external components and code overhead.

7.1 Timer1 Operation

Timer1 can operate in one of three modes:

- as a Timer
- as a Synchronous Counter
- as an Asynchronous Counter

The operating mode is determined by the clock select bit, TMR1CS (T1CON<1>).

In Timer mode, Timer1 increments every instruction cycle. In Counter mode, it increments on every rising edge of the external clock input.

Timer1 can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing control bit, TMR1ON (T1CON<0>).

Timer1 also has an internal “Reset input”. This Reset can be generated by the CCP1 module as the special event trigger (see **Section 9.4 “Capture Mode”**). Register 7-1 shows the Timer1 Control register.

When the Timer1 oscillator is enabled (T1OSCEN is set), the RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI and RC1/T1OSI/CCP2 pins become inputs. That is, the TRISB<7:6> value is ignored and these pins read as ‘0’.

Additional information on timer modules is available in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023).

REGISTER 7-1: T1CON: TIMER1 CONTROL REGISTER (ADDRESS 10h)

U-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	T1RUN	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **T1RUN**: Timer1 System Clock Status bit
1 = System clock is derived from Timer1 oscillator
0 = System clock is derived from another source

bit 5-4 **T1CKPS<1:0>:** Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits
11 = 1:8 prescale value
10 = 1:4 prescale value
01 = 1:2 prescale value
00 = 1:1 prescale value

bit 3 **T1OSCEN:** Timer1 Oscillator Enable Control bit
1 = Oscillator is enabled
0 = Oscillator is shut-off (the oscillator inverter is turned off to eliminate power drain)

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$:** Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Control bit
TMR1CS = 1:
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input
0 = Synchronize external clock input
TMR1CS = 0:
This bit is ignored. Timer1 uses the internal clock when TMR1CS = 0.

bit 1 **TMR1CS:** Timer1 Clock Source Select bit
1 = External clock from pin RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI (on the rising edge)
0 = Internal clock (FOSC/4)

bit 0 **TMR1ON:** Timer1 On bit
1 = Enables Timer1
0 = Stops Timer1

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

7.2 Timer1 Operation in Timer Mode

Timer mode is selected by clearing the TMR1CS (T1CON<1>) bit. In this mode, the input clock to the timer is FOSC/4. The synchronize control bit, $\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$ (T1CON<2>), has no effect since the internal clock is always in sync.

7.3 Timer1 Counter Operation

Timer1 may operate in Asynchronous or Synchronous mode depending on the setting of the TMR1CS bit.

When Timer1 is being incremented via an external source, increments occur on a rising edge. After Timer1 is enabled in Counter mode, the module must first have a falling edge before the counter begins to increment.

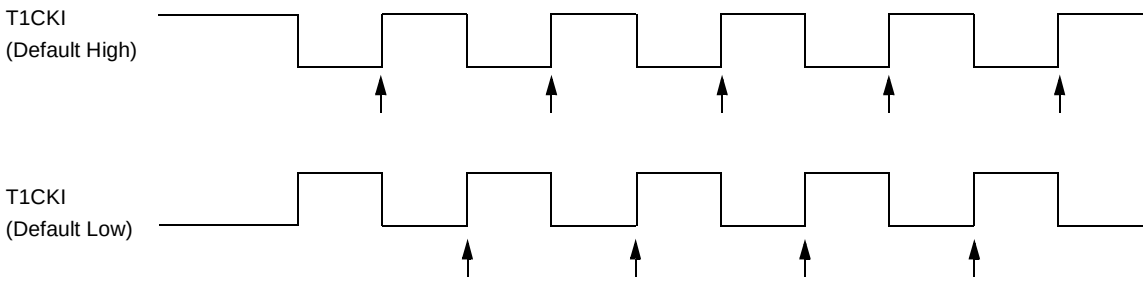
7.4 Timer1 Operation in Synchronized Counter Mode

Counter mode is selected by setting bit TMR1CS. In this mode, the timer increments on every rising edge of clock input on pin RC1/T1OSI/CCP2, when bit T1OSCEN is set, or on pin RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI, when bit T1OSCEN is cleared.

If $\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$ is cleared, then the external clock input is synchronized with internal phase clocks. The synchronization is done after the prescaler stage. The prescaler stage is an asynchronous ripple counter.

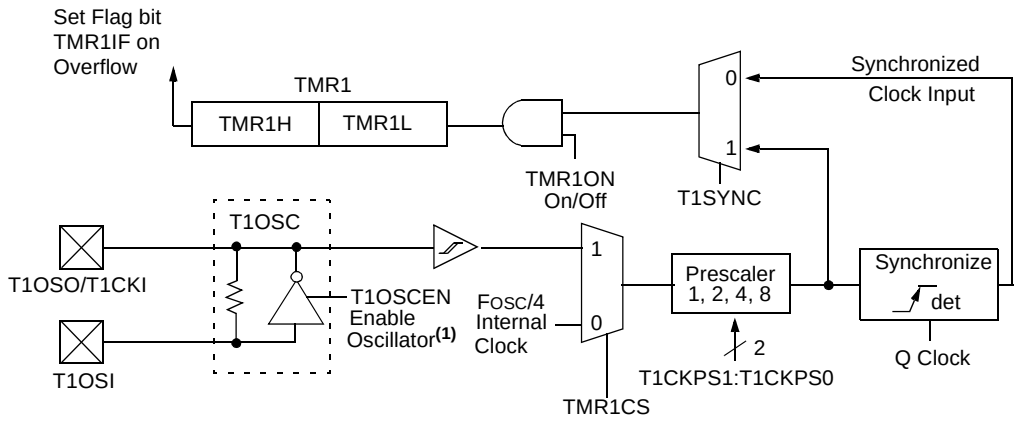
In this configuration during Sleep mode, Timer1 will not increment, even if the external clock is present since the synchronization circuit is shut-off. The prescaler, however, will continue to increment.

FIGURE 7-1: TIMER1 INCREMENTING EDGE



Note: Arrows indicate counter increments.

FIGURE 7-2: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: When the T1OSCEN bit is cleared, the inverter is turned off. This eliminates power drain.

7.5 Timer1 Operation in Asynchronous Counter Mode

If control bit, $\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$ (T1CON<2>), is set, the external clock input is not synchronized. The timer continues to increment asynchronous to the internal phase clocks. The timer will continue to run during Sleep and can generate an interrupt on overflow that will wake-up the processor. However, special precautions in software are needed to read/write the timer (**Section 7.5.1 "Reading and Writing Timer1 in Asynchronous Counter Mode"**).

In Asynchronous Counter mode, Timer1 cannot be used as a time base for capture or compare operations.

7.5.1 READING AND WRITING TIMER1 IN ASYNCHRONOUS COUNTER MODE

Reading TMR1H or TMR1L while the timer is running from an external asynchronous clock will ensure a valid read (taken care of in hardware). However, the user should keep in mind that reading the 16-bit timer in two 8-bit values itself, poses certain problems, since the timer may overflow between the reads.

For writes, it is recommended that the user simply stop the timer and write the desired values. A write contention may occur by writing to the Timer registers while the register is incrementing. This may produce an unpredictable value in the Timer register.

Reading the 16-bit value requires some care. The example codes provided in Example 7-1 and Example 7-2 demonstrate how to write to and read Timer1 while it is running in Asynchronous mode.

EXAMPLE 7-1: WRITING A 16-BIT FREE RUNNING TIMER

```
; All interrupts are disabled
CLRF      TMR1L           ; Clear Low byte, Ensures no rollover into TMR1H
MOVLW     HI_BYTE         ; Value to load into TMR1H
MOVWF     TMR1H, F        ; Write High byte
MOVLW     LO_BYTE         ; Value to load into TMR1L
MOVWF     TMR1H, F        ; Write Low byte
; Re-enable the Interrupt (if required)
CONTINUE                  ; Continue with your code
```

EXAMPLE 7-2: READING A 16-BIT FREE RUNNING TIMER

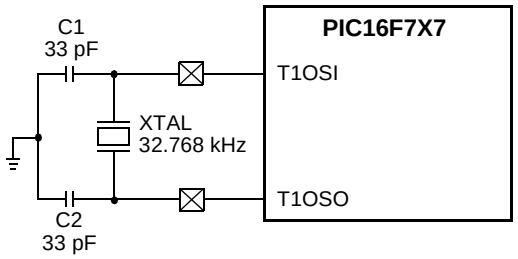
```
; All interrupts are disabled
MOVF      TMR1H, W        ; Read high byte
MOVWF     TMPH
MOVF      TMR1L, W        ; Read low byte
MOVWF     TMPL
MOVF      TMR1H, W        ; Read high byte
SUBWF     TMPH,  W        ; Sub 1st read with 2nd read
BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ; Is result = 0
GOTO      CONTINUE        ; Good 16-bit read
; TMR1L may have rolled over between the read of the high and low bytes.
; Reading the high and low bytes now will read a good value.
MOVF      TMR1H, W        ; Read high byte
MOVWF     TMPH
MOVF      TMR1L, W        ; Read low byte
MOVWF     TMPL            ; Re-enable the Interrupt (if required)
CONTINUE                  ; Continue with your code
```


7.6 Timer1 Oscillator

A crystal oscillator circuit is built between pins T1OSI (input) and T1OSO (amplifier output). It is enabled by setting control bit, T1OSCEN (T1CON<3>). The oscillator is a low-power oscillator, rated up to 32.768 kHz. It will continue to run during all power managed modes. It is primarily intended for a 32 kHz crystal. The circuit for a typical LP oscillator is shown in Figure 7-3. Table 7-1 shows the capacitor selection for the Timer1 oscillator.

The user must provide a software time delay to ensure proper oscillator start-up.

FIGURE 7-3: EXTERNAL COMPONENTS FOR THE TIMER1 LP OSCILLATOR



Note: See the Notes with Table 7-1 for additional information about capacitor selection.

TABLE 7-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR THE TIMER1 OSCILLATOR

Osc Type	Freq	C1	C2
LP	32 kHz	33 pF	33 pF

Note 1: Microchip suggests this value as a starting point in validating the oscillator circuit.

2: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator but also increases the start-up time.

3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components.

4: Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

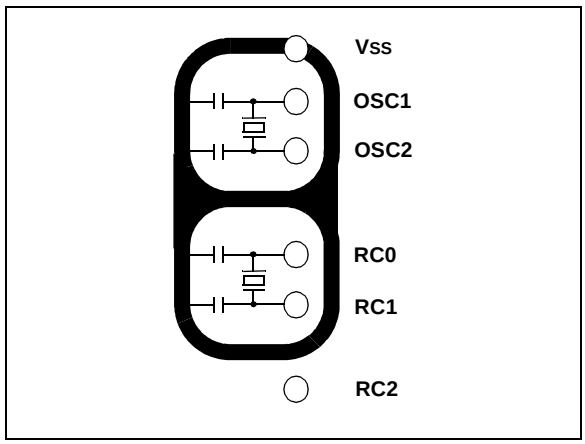
7.7 Timer1 Oscillator Layout Considerations

The Timer1 oscillator circuit draws very little power during operation. Due to the low-power nature of the oscillator, it may also be sensitive to rapidly changing signals in close proximity.

The oscillator circuit, shown in Figure 7-3, should be located as close as possible to the microcontroller. There should be no circuits passing within the oscillator circuit boundaries other than VSS or VDD.

If a high-speed circuit must be located near the oscillator, a grounded guard ring around the oscillator circuit, as shown in Figure 7-4, may be helpful when used on a single sided PCB or in addition to a ground plane.

FIGURE 7-4: OSCILLATOR CIRCUIT WITH GROUNDED GUARD RING



7.8 Resetting Timer1 Using a CCP Trigger Output

If the CCP1 module is configured in Compare mode to generate a “special event trigger" signal (CCP1M3:CCP1M0 = 1011), the signal will reset Timer1 and start an A/D conversion (if the A/D module is enabled).

Note: The special event triggers from the CCP1 module will not set interrupt flag bit, TMR1IF (PIR1<0>).

Timer1 must be configured for either Timer or Synchronized Counter mode to take advantage of this feature. If Timer1 is running in Asynchronous Counter mode, this Reset operation may not work.

In the event that a write to Timer1 coincides with a special event trigger from CCP1, the write will take precedence.

In this mode of operation, the CCPR1H:CCPR1L register pair effectively becomes the period register for Timer1.

7.9 Resetting Timer1 Register Pair (TMR1H, TMR1L)

TMR1H and TMR1L registers are not reset to 00h on a POR, or any other Reset, except by the CCP1 special event triggers.

T1CON register is reset to 00h on a Power-on Reset or a Brown-out Reset, which shuts off the timer and leaves a 1:1 prescale. In all other Resets, the register is unaffected.

7.10 Timer1 Prescaler

The prescaler counter is cleared on writes to the TMR1H or TMR1L registers.

7.11 Using Timer1 as a Real-Time Clock

Adding an external LP oscillator to Timer1 (such as the one described in **Section 7.6 "Timer1 Oscillator"**) gives users the option to include RTC functionality in their applications. This is accomplished with an inexpensive watch crystal to provide an accurate time base and several lines of application code to calculate the time. When operating in Sleep mode and using a battery or supercapacitor as a power source, it can completely eliminate the need for a separate RTC device and battery backup.

The application code routine, `RTCisr`, shown in Example 7-3, demonstrates a simple method to increment a counter at one-second intervals using an Interrupt Service Routine. Incrementing the TMR1 register pair to overflow, triggers the interrupt and calls the routine which increments the seconds counter by one; additional counters for minutes and hours are incremented as the previous counter overflows.

Since the register pair is 16 bits wide, counting up to overflow the register directly from a 32.768 kHz clock would take 2 seconds. To force the overflow at the required one-second intervals, it is necessary to preload it; the simplest method is to set the MSbit of TMR1H with a `BSF` instruction. Note that the TMR1L register is never preloaded or altered; doing so may introduce cumulative error over many cycles.

For this method to be accurate, Timer1 must operate in Asynchronous mode and the Timer1 overflow interrupt must be enabled (PIE1<0> = `1`) as shown in the routine, `RTCinit`. The Timer1 oscillator must also be enabled and running at all times.

EXAMPLE 7-3: IMPLEMENTING A REAL-TIME CLOCK USING A TIMER1 INTERRUPT SERVICE

```
RTCinit     BANKSEL     TMR1H
            MOVLW       0x80                ; Preload TMR1 register pair
            MOVWF       TMR1H               ; for 1 second overflow
            CLRF        TMR1L
            MOVLW       b'00001111'         ; Configure for external clock,
            MOVWF       T1CON               ; Asynchronous operation, external oscillator
            CLRF        secs                ; Initialize timekeeping registers
            CLRF        mins
            MOVLW       .12
            MOVWF       hours
            BANKSEL     PIE1
            BSF         PIE1, TMR1IE        ; Enable Timer1 interrupt
            RETURN
RTCisr      BANKSEL     TMR1H
            BSF         TMR1H, 7            ; Preload for 1 sec overflow
            BCF         PIR1, TMR1IF        ; Clear interrupt flag
            INCF        secs, F             ; Increment seconds
            MOVF        secs, w
            SUBLW       .60
            BTFSS       STATUS, Z           ; 60 seconds elapsed?
            RETURN                          ; No, done
            CLRF        seconds             ; Clear seconds
            INCF        mins, f             ; Increment minutes
            MOVF        mins, w
            SUBLW       .60
            BTFSS       STATUS, Z           ; 60 seconds elapsed?
            RETURN                          ; No, done
            CLRF        mins                ; Clear minutes
            INCF        hours, f            ; Increment hours
            MOVF        hours, w
            SUBLW       .24
            BTFSS       STATUS, Z           ; 24 hours elapsed?
            RETURN                          ; No, done
            CLRF        hours               ; Clear hours
            RETURN                          ; Done
```


TABLE 7-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER1 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh, 18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
0Eh	TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
0Fh	TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
10h	T1CON	—	T1RUN	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	T1SYNC	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on the PIC16F737/767 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

NOTES:

8.0 TIMER2 MODULE

Timer2 is an 8-bit timer with a prescaler and a postscaler. It can be used as the PWM time base for the PWM mode of the CCP module(s). The TMR2 register is readable and writable and is cleared on any device Reset.

The input clock (FOSC/4) has a prescale option of 1:1, 1:4 or 1:16, selected by control bits, T2CKPS1:T2CKPS0 (T2CON<1:0>).

The Timer2 module has an 8-bit period register, PR2. Timer2 increments from 00h until it matches PR2 and then resets to 00h on the next increment cycle. PR2 is a readable and writable register. The PR2 register is initialized to FFh upon Reset.

The match output of TMR2 goes through a 4-bit postscaler (which gives a 1:1 to 1:16 scaling inclusive) to generate a TMR2 interrupt, latched in flag bit, TMR2IF (PIR1<1>).

Timer2 can be shut-off by clearing control bit, TMR2ON (T2CON<2>), to minimize power consumption.

Register 8-1 shows the Timer2 Control register.

Additional information on timer modules is available in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023).

8.1 Timer2 Prescaler and Postscaler

The prescaler and postscaler counters are cleared when any of the following occurs:

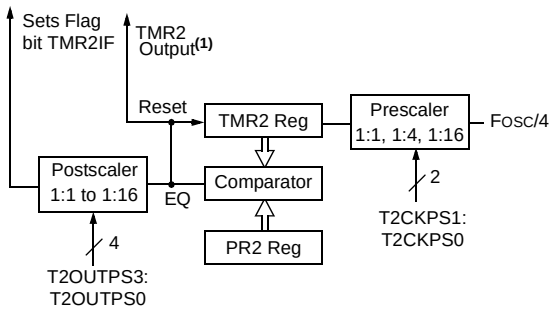
- a write to the TMR2 register
- a write to the T2CON register
- any device Reset (POR, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, WDT Reset or BOR)

TMR2 is not cleared when T2CON is written.

8.2 Output of TMR2

The output of TMR2 (before the postscaler) is fed to the SSP module which optionally uses it to generate the shift clock.

FIGURE 8-1: TIMER2 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: TMR2 register output can be software selected by the SSP module as a baud clock.

REGISTER 8-1: T2CON: TIMER2 CONTROL REGISTER (ADDRESS 12h)

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-3 **TOUTPS3:TOUTPS0**: Timer2 Output Postscale Select bits
0000 = 1:1 postscale
0001 = 1:2 postscale
0010 = 1:3 postscale
•
•
•
1111 = 1:16 postscale

bit 2 **TMR2ON**: Timer2 On bit
1 = Timer2 is on
0 = Timer2 is off

bit 1-0 **T2CKPS1:T2CKPS0**: Timer2 Clock Prescale Select bits
00 = Prescaler is 1
01 = Prescaler is 4
1x = Prescaler is 16

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

TABLE 8-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER2 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh,8Bh, 10Bh, 18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
11h	TMR2	Timer2 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
12h	T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
92h	PR2	Timer2 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer2 module.
Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on the PIC16F737/767 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

9.0 CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM MODULES

Each Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) module contains a 16-bit register which can operate as a:

- 16-bit Capture register
- 16-bit Compare register
- PWM Master/Slave Duty Cycle register

The CCP1, CCP2 and CCP3 modules are identical in operation, with the exception being the operation of the special event trigger. Table 9-1 and Table 9-2 show the resources and interactions of the CCP module(s). In the following sections, the operation of a CCP module is described with respect to CCP1. CCP2 and CCP3 operate the same as CCP1, except where noted.

9.1 CCP1 Module

Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (CCPR1) is comprised of two 8-bit registers: CCPR1L (low byte) and CCPR1H (high byte). The CCP1CON register controls the operation of CCP1. The special event trigger is generated by a compare match and will clear both TMR1H and TMR1L registers.

9.2 CCP2 Module

Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (CCPR1) is comprised of two 8-bit registers: CCPR1L (low byte) and CCPR1H (high byte). The CCP2CON register controls the operation of CCP2. The special event trigger is generated by a compare match; it will clear both TMR1H and TMR1L registers and start an A/D conversion (if the A/D module is enabled).

Additional information on CCP modules is available in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023) and in Application Note *AN594, "Using the CCP Module(s)"* (DS00594).

9.3 CCP3 Module

Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (CCPR1) is comprised of two 8-bit registers: CCPR1L (low byte) and CCPR1H (high byte). The CCP3CON register controls the operation of CCP3.

TABLE 9-1: CCP MODE – TIMER RESOURCES REQUIRED

CCP Mode	Timer Resource
Capture	Timer1
Compare	Timer1
PWM	Timer2

TABLE 9-2: INTERACTION OF TWO CCP MODULES

CCPx Mode	CCPy Mode	Interaction
Capture	Capture	Same TMR1 time base.
Capture	Compare	Same TMR1 time base.
Compare	Compare	Same TMR1 time base.
PWM	PWM	The PWMs will have the same frequency and update rate (TMR2 interrupt). The rising edges are aligned.
PWM	Capture	None.
PWM	Compare	None.

REGISTER 9-1: CCPxCON REGISTER (ADDRESS 17h, 1Dh, 97h)

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	CCPxX	CCPxY	CCPxM3	CCPxM2	CCPxM1	CCPxM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **CCPxX:CCPxY**: PWM Least Significant bits

Capture mode:
Unused.

Compare mode:
Unused.

PWM mode:
These bits are the two LSbs of the PWM duty cycle. The eight MSbs are found in CCPRxL.

bit 3-0 **CCPxM3:CCPxM0**: CCPx Mode Select bits

0000 = Capture/Compare/PWM disabled (resets CCPx module)
0100 = Capture mode, every falling edge
0101 = Capture mode, every rising edge
0110 = Capture mode, every 4th rising edge
0111 = Capture mode, every 16th rising edge
1000 = Compare mode, set output on match (CCPxIF bit is set)
1001 = Compare mode, clear output on match (CCPxIF bit is set)
1010 = Compare mode, generate software interrupt on match (CCPxIF bit is set, CCPx pin is unaffected)
1011 = Compare mode, trigger special event (CCPxIF bit is set, CCPx pin is unaffected); CCP1 clears Timer1; CCP2 clears Timer1 and starts an A/D conversion (if A/D module is enabled)
11xx = PWM mode

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

9.4 Capture Mode

In Capture mode, CCPR1H:CCPR1L captures the 16-bit value of the TMR1 register when an event occurs on pin RC2/CCP1. An event is defined as one of the following and is configured by CCPxCON<3:0>:

- Every falling edge
- Every rising edge
- Every 4th rising edge
- Every 16th rising edge

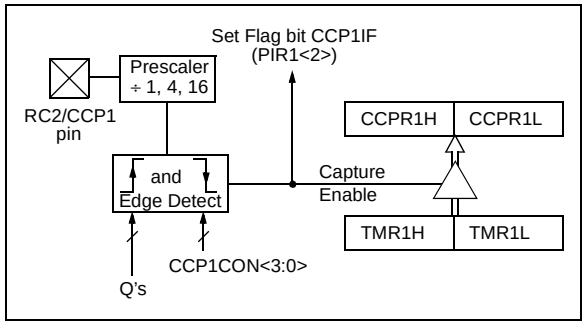
An event is selected by control bits, CCP1M3:CCP1M0 (CCP1CON<3:0>). When a capture is made, the interrupt request flag bit, CCP1IF (PIR1<2>), is set. The interrupt flag must be cleared in software. If another capture occurs before the value in register CCPR1 is read, the old captured value is overwritten by the new captured value.

9.4.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

In Capture mode, the RC2/CCP1 pin should be configured as an input by setting the TRISC<2> bit.

Note:	If the RC2/CCP1 pin is configured as an output, a write to the port can cause a capture condition.

FIGURE 9-1: CAPTURE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



9.4.2 TIMER1 MODE SELECTION

Timer1 must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode for the CCP module to use the capture feature. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the capture operation may not work.

9.4.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT

When the Capture mode is changed, a false capture interrupt may be generated. The user should keep bit, CCP1IE (PIE1<2>), clear to avoid false interrupts and should clear the flag bit, CCP1IF, following any such change in operating mode.

9.4.4 CCP PRESCALER

There are four prescaler settings specified by bits, CCP1M3:CCP1M0. Whenever the CCP module is turned off, or the CCP module is not in Capture mode, the prescaler counter is cleared. Any Reset will clear the prescaler counter.

Switching from one capture prescaler to another may generate an interrupt. Also, the prescaler counter will not be cleared, therefore, the first capture may be from a non-zero prescaler. Example 9-1 shows the recommended method for switching between capture prescalers. This example also clears the prescaler counter and will not generate the "false" interrupt.

EXAMPLE 9-1: CHANGING BETWEEN CAPTURE PRESCALERS

```
CLRF   CCP1CON      ;Turn CCP module off
MOVLW  NEW_CAPT_PS  ;Load the W reg with
                    ;the new prescaler
                    ;move value and CCP ON
MOVWF  CCP1CON      ;Load CCP1CON with this
                    ;value
```

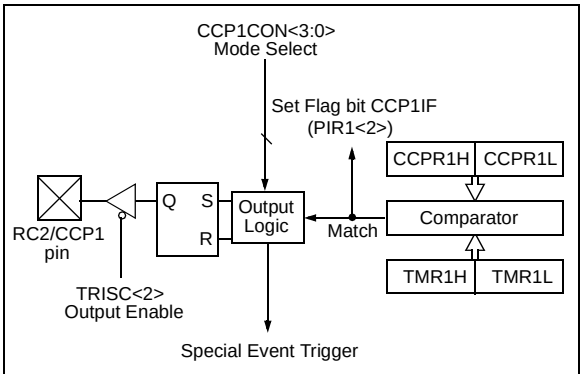
9.5 Compare Mode

In Compare mode, the 16-bit CCPR1 register value is constantly compared against the TMR1 register pair value. When a match occurs, the RC2/CCP1 pin is:

- Driven high
- Driven low
- Remains unchanged

The action on the pin is based on the value of control bits, CCP1M3:CCP1M0 (CCP1CON<3:0>). At the same time, interrupt flag bit CCP1IF is set.

FIGURE 9-2: COMPARE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



9.5.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

The user must configure the RC2/CCP1 pin as an output by clearing the TRISC<2> bit.

Note:	Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the RC2/CCP1 compare output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORTC I/O data latch.

9.5.2 TIMER1 MODE SELECTION

Timer1 must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode if the CCP module is using the compare feature. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the compare operation may not work.

9.5.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT MODE

When Generate Software Interrupt mode is chosen, the CCP1 pin is not affected. The CCP1IF or CCP2IF bit is set, causing a CCP interrupt (if enabled).

9.5.4 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

In this mode, an internal hardware trigger is generated which may be used to initiate an action.

The special event trigger output of CCP1 resets the TMR1 register pair. This allows the CCPR1 register to effectively be a 16-bit programmable period register for Timer1.

The special event trigger output of CCP2 resets the TMR1 register pair and starts an A/D conversion (if the A/D module is enabled).

Note:	The special event trigger from the CCP1 and CCP2 modules will not set interrupt flag bit, TMR1IF (PIR1<0>).

TABLE 9-3: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CAPTURE, COMPARE AND TIMER1

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh,8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
0Dh	PIR2	OSFIF	CMIF	LVDIF	—	BCLIF	—	CCP3IF	CCP2IF	000- 0--0	000- 0--0
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
8Dh	PIE2	OSFIE	CMIE	LVDIE	—	BCLIE	—	CCP3IE	CCP2IE	000- 0--0	000- 0--0
87h	TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
0Eh	TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
0Fh	TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
10h	T1CON	—	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
15h	CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
16h	CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
17h	CCP1CON	—	—	CCP1X	CCP1Y	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
1Bh	CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
1Ch	CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
1Dh	CCP2CON	—	—	CCP2X	CCP2Y	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
95h	CCPR3L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 3 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
96h	CCPR3H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 3 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
97h	CCP3CON	—	—	CCP3X	CCP3Y	CCP3M3	CCP3M2	CCP3M1	CCP3M0	--00 0000	--00 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Capture and Timer1.

Note 1: The PSP is not implemented on the PIC16F737/767 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

9.6 PWM Mode (PWM)

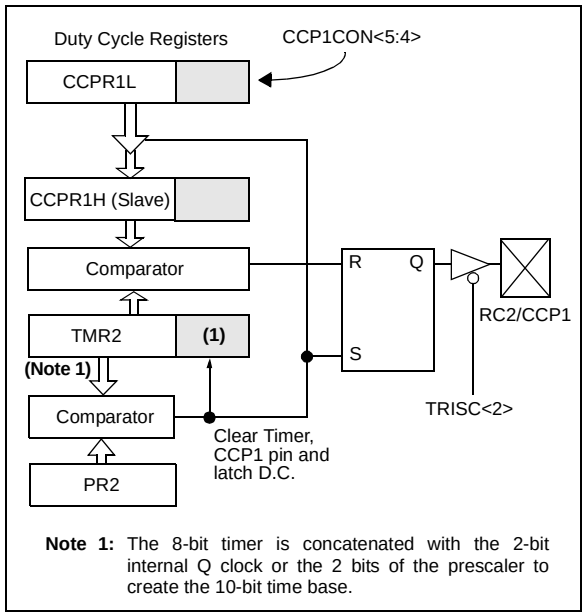
In Pulse Width Modulation mode, the CCPx pin produces up to a 10-bit resolution PWM output. Since the CCP1 pin is multiplexed with the PORTC data latch, the TRISC<2> bit must be cleared to make the CCP1 pin an output.

Note:	Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the CCP1 PWM output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORTC I/O data latch.

Figure 9-3 shows a simplified block diagram of the CCP module in PWM mode.

For a step-by-step procedure on how to set up the CCP module for PWM operation, see **Section 9.6.3 "Setup for PWM Operation"**.

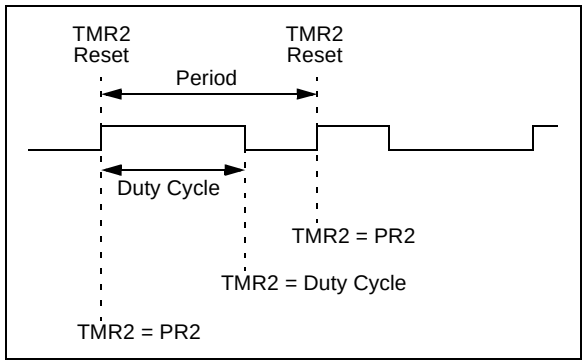
FIGURE 9-3: SIMPLIFIED PWM BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: The 8-bit timer is concatenated with the 2-bit internal Q clock or the 2 bits of the prescaler to create the 10-bit time base.

A PWM output (Figure 9-4) has a time base (period) and a time that the output stays high (duty cycle). The frequency of the PWM is the inverse of the period (1/period).

FIGURE 9-4: PWM OUTPUT



9.6.1 PWM PERIOD

The PWM period is specified by writing to the PR2 register. The PWM period can be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{PWM Period} = [(PR2) + 1] \cdot 4 \cdot T_{OSC} \cdot (\text{TMR2 Prescale Value})$$

PWM frequency is defined as 1/[PWM period].

When TMR2 is equal to PR2, the following three events occur on the next increment cycle:

- TMR2 is cleared
- The CCP1 pin is set (exception: if PWM duty cycle = 0%, the CCP1 pin will not be set)
- The PWM duty cycle is latched from CCPR1L into CCPR1H

Note:	The Timer2 postscaler (see **Section 9.4 "Capture Mode"**) is not used in the determination of the PWM frequency. The postscaler could be used to have a servo update rate at a different frequency than the PWM output.

9.6.2 PWM DUTY CYCLE

The PWM duty cycle is specified by writing to the CCPR1L register and to the CCP1CON<5:4> bits. Up to 10-bit resolution is available. The CCPR1L contains the eight MSbs and the CCP1CON<5:4> contains the two LSbs. This 10-bit value is represented by CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>. The following equation is used to calculate the PWM duty cycle in time:

$$\text{PWM Duty Cycle} = (\text{CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>}) \cdot T_{OSC} \cdot (\text{TMR2 Prescale Value})$$

CCPR1L and CCP1CON<5:4> can be written to at any time, but the duty cycle value is not latched into CCPR1H until after a match between PR2 and TMR2 occurs (i.e., the period is complete). In PWM mode, CCPR1H is a read-only register.

The CCPR1H register and a 2-bit internal latch are used to double-buffer the PWM duty cycle. This double-buffering is essential for glitchless PWM operation.

When the CCPR1H and 2-bit latch match TMR2, concatenated with an internal 2-bit Q clock or 2 bits of the TMR2 prescaler, the CCP1 pin is cleared.

The maximum PWM resolution (bits) for a given PWM frequency is given by the formula:

$$\text{Resolution} = \frac{\log\left(\frac{F_{OSC}}{F_{PWM}}\right)}{\log(2)} \text{ bits}$$

Note:	If the PWM duty cycle value is longer than the PWM period, the CCP1 pin will not be cleared.

9.6.3 SETUP FOR PWM OPERATION

The following steps should be taken when configuring the CCP module for PWM operation:

1. Set the PWM period by writing to the PR2 register.
2. Set the PWM duty cycle by writing to the CCPR1L register and CCP1CON<5:4> bits.
3. Make the CCP1 pin an output by clearing the TRISC<2> bit.
4. Set the TMR2 prescale value and enable Timer2 by writing to T2CON.
5. Configure the CCP1 module for PWM operation.

TABLE 9-4: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS (FOSC = 20 MHz)

PWM Frequency	1.22 kHz	4.88 kHz	19.53 kHz	78.12 kHz	156.3 kHz	208.3 kHz
Timer Prescale (1, 4, 16)	16	4	1	1	1	1
PR2 Value	0xFF	0xFF	0xFF	0x3F	0x1F	0x17
Maximum Resolution (bits)	10	10	10	8	7	6.6

TABLE 9-5: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PWM AND TIMER2

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh,8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
0Dh	PIR2	OSFIF	CMIF	LVDIF	—	BCLIF	—	CCP3IF	CCP2IF	000- 0-00	000- 0-00
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
8Dh	PIE2	OSFIE	CMIE	LVDIE	—	BCLIE	—	CCP3IE	CCP2IE	000- 0-00	000- 0-00
87h	TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
11h	TMR2	Timer2 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
92h	PR2	Timer2 Module Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
12h	T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
15h	CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
16h	CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
17h	CCP1CON	—	—	CCP1X	CCP1Y	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
1Bh	CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
1Ch	CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
1Dh	CCP2CON	—	—	CCP2X	CCP2Y	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
95h	CCPR3L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 3 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
96h	CCPR3H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 3 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
97h	CCP3CON	—	—	CCP3X	CCP3Y	CCP3M3	CCP3M2	CCP3M1	CCP3M0	--00 0000	--00 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PWM and Timer2.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on the PIC16F737/767 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

10.0 MASTER SYNCHRONOUS SERIAL PORT (MSSP) MODULE

10.1 Master SSP (MSSP) Module Overview

The Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) module is a serial interface, useful for communicating with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be serial EEPROMs, shift registers, display drivers, A/D converters, etc. The MSSP module can operate in one of two modes:

- Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI™)
- Inter-Integrated Circuit (I^2C™)
  - Full Master mode
  - Slave mode (with general address call)

The I^2C interface supports the following modes in hardware:

- Master mode
- Multi-Master mode
- Slave mode

10.2 Control Registers

The MSSP module has three associated registers. These include a status register (SSPSTAT) and two control registers (SSPCON and SSPCON2). The use of these registers and their individual configuration bits differ significantly, depending on whether the MSSP module is operated in SPI or I^2C mode.

Additional details are provided under the individual sections.

10.3 SPI Mode

The SPI mode allows 8 bits of data to be synchronously transmitted and received simultaneously. All four modes of SPI are supported. To accomplish communication, typically three pins are used:

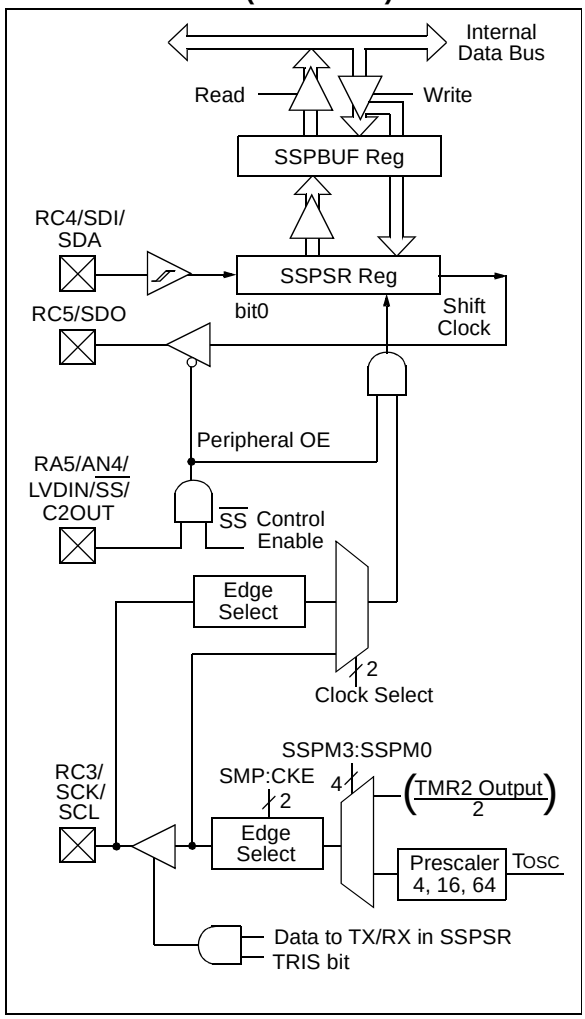
- Serial Data Out (SDO) – RC5/SDO
- Serial Data In (SDI) – RC4/SDI/SDA
- Serial Clock (SCK) – RC3/SCK/SCL

Additionally, a fourth pin may be used when in a Slave mode of operation:

- Slave Select ($\overline{SS}$) – RA5/AN4/LVDIN/$\overline{SS}$/C2OUT

Figure 10-1 shows the block diagram of the MSSP module when operating in SPI mode.

FIGURE 10-1: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (SPI MODE)



Note:	When the SPI is in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled (SSPCON<3:0> = 0100), the state of the $\overline{SS}$ pin can affect the state read back from the TRISC<5> bit. The Peripheral OE signal, from the SSP module into PORTC, controls the state that is read back from the TRISC<5> bit (see **Section 5.3 "PORTC and the TRISC Register"** for information on PORTC). If Read-Modify-Write instructions, such as BSF are performed on the TRISC register while the $\overline{SS}$ pin is high, this will cause the TRISC<5> bit to be set, thus disabling the SDO output.

10.3.1 REGISTERS

The MSSP module has four registers for SPI mode operation. These are:

- MSSP Control Register (SSPCON)
- MSSP Status Register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- MSSP Shift Register (SSPSR) – Not directly accessible

SSPCON and SSPSTAT are the control and status registers in SPI mode operation. The SSPCON register is readable and writable. The lower 6 bits of the SSPSTAT are read-only. The upper two bits of the SSPSTAT are read/write.

SSPSR is the shift register used for shifting data in or out. SSPBUF is the buffer register to which data bytes are written to or read from.

In receive operations, SSPSR and SSPBUF together create a double-buffered receiver. When SSPSR receives a complete byte, it is transferred to SSPBUF and the SSPIF interrupt is set.

During transmission, the SSPBUF is not double-buffered. A write to SSPBUF will write to both SSPBUF and SSPSR.

REGISTER 10-1: SSPSTAT: MSSP STATUS (SPI MODE) REGISTER (ADDRESS 94h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SMP:** Sample bit
SPI Master mode:
1 = Input data sampled at end of data output time
0 = Input data sampled at middle of data output time
SPI Slave mode:
SMP must be cleared when SPI is used in Slave mode.

bit 6 **CKE:** SPI Clock Edge Select bit
When CKP = 0:
1 = Data transmitted on rising edge of SCK
0 = Data transmitted on falling edge of SCK
When CKP = 1:
1 = Data transmitted on falling edge of SCK
0 = Data transmitted on rising edge of SCK

bit 5 **D/$\overline{A}$:** Data/$\overline{Address}$ bit
Used in I^2C mode only.

bit 4 **P:** Stop bit
Used in I^2C mode only. This bit is cleared when the MSSP module is disabled, SSPEN is cleared.

bit 3 **S:** Start bit
Used in I^2C mode only.

bit 2 **R/$\overline{W}$:** Read/$\overline{Write}$ bit Information
Used in I^2C mode only.

bit 1 **UA:** Update Address bit
Used in I^2C mode only.

bit 0 **BF:** Buffer Full Status bit (Receive mode only)
1 = Receive complete, SSPBUF is full
0 = Receive not complete, SSPBUF is empty

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 10-2: SSPCON: MSSP CONTROL (SPI MODE) REGISTER 1 (ADDRESS 14h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WCOL:** Write Collision Detect bit (Transmit mode only)

1 = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word. (Must be cleared in software.)
0 = No collision

bit 6 **SSPOV:** Receive Overflow Indicator bit

SPI Slave mode:

1 = A new byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous data. In case of overflow, the data in SSPSR is lost. Overflow can only occur in Slave mode. The user must read the SSPBUF, even if only transmitting data, to avoid setting overflow. (Must be cleared in software.)
0 = No overflow

Note: In Master mode, the overflow bit is not set since each new reception (and transmission) is initiated by writing to the SSPBUF register.

bit 5 **SSPEN:** Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit

1 = Enables serial port and configures SCK, SDO, SDI and $\overline{SS}$ as serial port pins
0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

Note: When enabled, these pins must be properly configured as input or output.

bit 4 **CKP:** Clock Polarity Select bit

1 = Idle state for clock is a high level
0 = Idle state for clock is a low level

bit 3-0 **SSPM3:SSPM0:** Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits

0101 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin. $\overline{SS}$ pin control disabled. $\overline{SS}$ can be used as I/O pin.
0100 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin. $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled.
0011 = SPI Master mode, clock = TMR2 output/2
0010 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/64
0001 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/16
0000 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/4

Note: Bit combinations not specifically listed here are either reserved or implemented in I^2C mode only.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

10.3.2 OPERATION

When initializing the SPI, several options need to be specified. This is done by programming the appropriate control bits (SSPCON<5:0> and SSPSTAT<7:6>). These control bits allow the following to be specified:

- Master mode (SCK is the clock output)
- Slave mode (SCK is the clock input)
- Clock Polarity (Idle state of SCK)
- Data Input Sample Phase (middle or end of data output time)
- Clock Edge (output data on rising/falling edge of SCK)
- Clock Rate (Master mode only)
- Slave Select mode (Slave mode only)

The MSSP consists of a transmit/receive shift register (SSPSR) and a buffer register (SSPBUF). The SSPSR shifts the data in and out of the device, MSb first. The SSPBUF holds the data that was written to the SSPSR until the received data is ready. Once the 8 bits of data have been received, that byte is moved to the SSPBUF register. Then, the Buffer Full detect bit, BF (SSPSTAT<0>), and the interrupt flag bit, SSPIF, are set. This double-buffering of the received data (SSPBUF) allows the next byte to start reception before reading the data that was just received. Any write to the SSPBUF register during transmission/reception of data will be ignored and the write collision detect bit, WCOL (SSPCON<7>), will be set. User software must clear the WCOL bit so that it can be determined if the following write(s) to the SSPBUF register completed successfully.

When the application software is expecting to receive valid data, the SSPBUF should be read before the next byte of data to transfer is written to the SSPBUF. Buffer Full bit, BF (SSPSTAT<0>), indicates when SSPBUF has been loaded with the received data (transmission is complete). When the SSPBUF is read, the BF bit is cleared. This data may be irrelevant if the SPI is only a transmitter. Generally, the MSSP interrupt is used to determine when the transmission/reception has completed. The SSPBUF must be read and/or written. If the interrupt method is not going to be used, then software polling can be done to ensure that a write collision does not occur. Example 10-1 shows the loading of the SSPBUF (SSPSR) for data transmission.

The SSPSR is not directly readable or writable, and can only be accessed by addressing the SSPBUF register. Additionally, the MSSP Status register (SSPSTAT) indicates the various status conditions.

EXAMPLE 10-1: LOADING THE SSPBUF (SSPSR) REGISTER

```
LOOP  BTFSS   SSPSTAT, BF    ;Has data been received (transmit complete)?
      BRA     LOOP           ;No
      MOVF    SSPBUF, W      ;WREG reg = contents of SSPBUF

      MOVWF   RXDATA         ;Save in user RAM, if data is meaningful

      MOVF    TXDATA, W      ;W reg = contents of TXDATA
      MOVWF   SSPBUF         ;New data to xmit
```


10.3.3 ENABLING SPI I/O

To enable the serial port, SSP Enable bit, SSPEN (SSPCON<5>), must be set. To reset or reconfigure SPI mode, clear the SSPEN bit, reinitialize the SSPCON registers and then set the SSPEN bit. This configures the SDI, SDO, SCK and $\overline{SS}$ pins as serial port pins. For the pins to behave as the serial port function, some must have their data direction bits (in the TRIS register) appropriately programmed. That is:

- SDI is automatically controlled by the SPI module
- SDO must have TRISC<5> bit cleared
- SCK (Master mode) must have TRISC<3> bit cleared
- SCK (Slave mode) must have TRISC<3> bit set
- $\overline{SS}$ must have TRISA<5> bit set

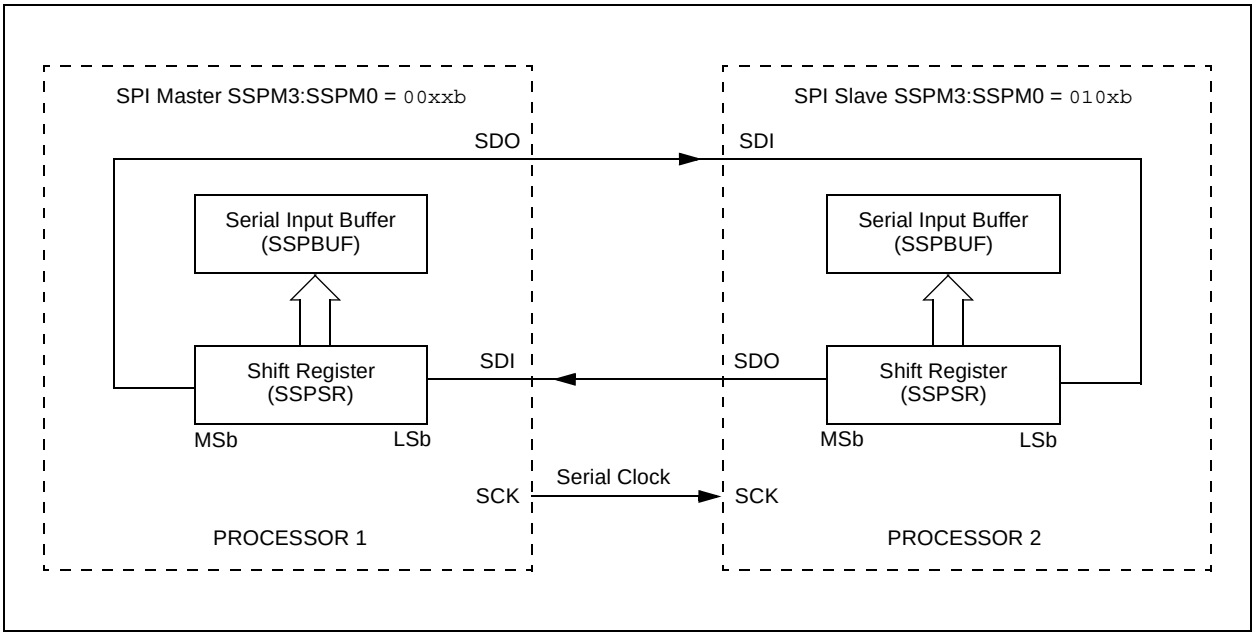
Any serial port function that is not desired may be overridden by programming the corresponding data direction (TRIS) register to the opposite value.

10.3.4 TYPICAL CONNECTION

Figure 10-2 shows a typical connection between two microcontrollers. The master controller (Processor 1) initiates the data transfer by sending the SCK signal. Data is shifted out of both shift registers on their programmed clock edge and latched on the opposite edge of the clock. Both processors should be programmed to the same Clock Polarity (CKP), then both controllers would send and receive data at the same time. Whether the data is meaningful (or dummy data) depends on the application software. This leads to three scenarios for data transmission:

- Master sends data – Slave sends dummy data
- Master sends data – Slave sends data
- Master sends dummy data – Slave sends data

FIGURE 10-2: SPI MASTER/SLAVE CONNECTION



10.3.5 MASTER MODE

The master can initiate the data transfer at any time because it controls the SCK. The master determines when the slave (Processor 2, Figure 10-2) is to broadcast data by the software protocol.

In Master mode, the data is transmitted/received as soon as the SSPBUF register is written to. If the SPI is only going to receive, the SDO output could be disabled (programmed as an input). The SSPSR register will continue to shift in the signal present on the SDI pin at the programmed clock rate. As each byte is received, it will be loaded into the SSPBUF register as if a normal received byte (interrupts and status bits appropriately set). This could be useful in receiver applications as a “Line Activity Monitor” mode.

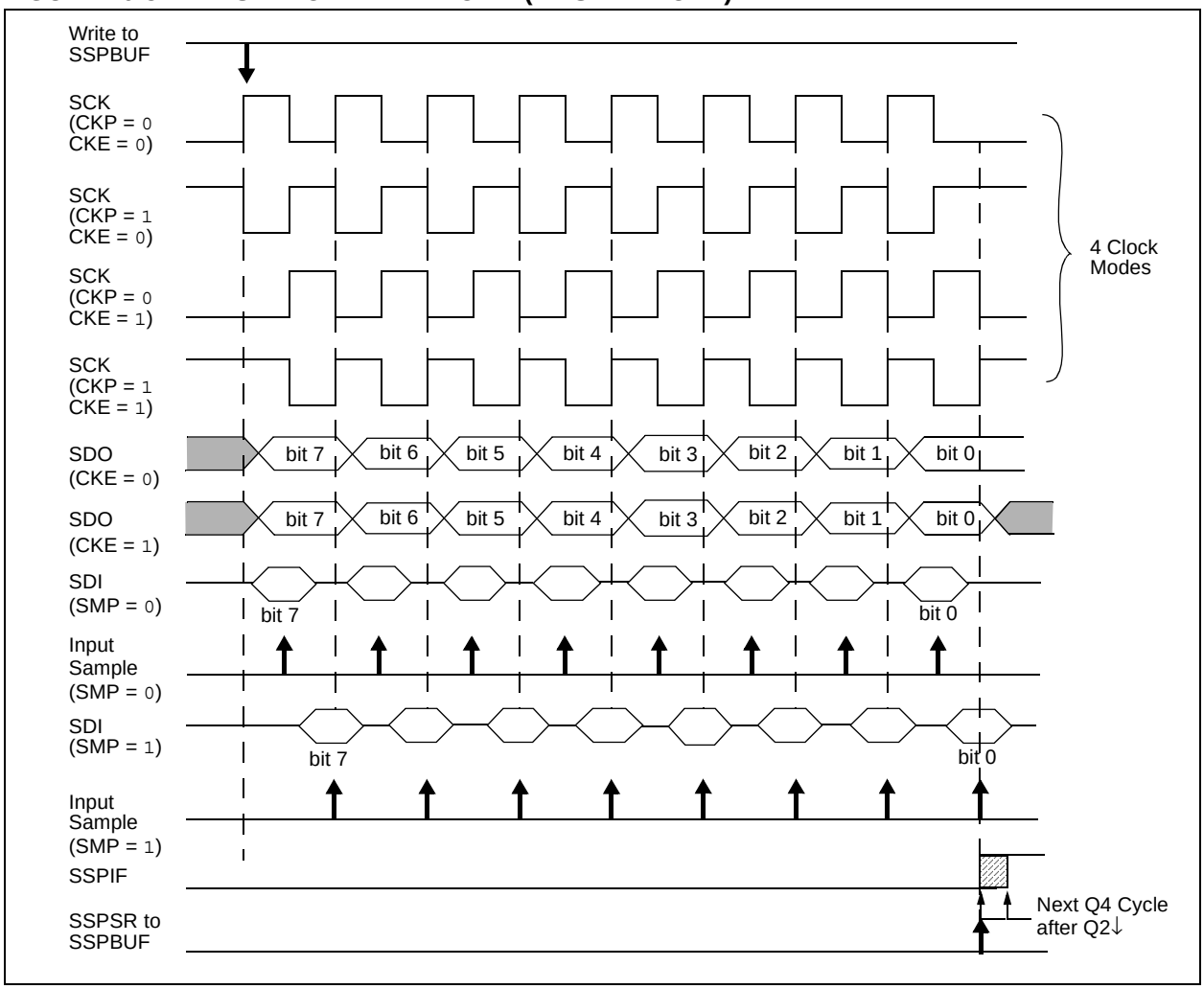
The clock polarity is selected by appropriately programming the CKP bit (SSPCON<4>). This then, would give waveforms for SPI communication as shown in Figure 10-3, Figure 10-5 and Figure 10-6, where the MSB is transmitted first. In Master mode, the SPI clock rate (bit rate) is user programmable to be one of the following:

- FOSC/4 (or TCY)
- FOSC/16 (or 4 • TCY)
- FOSC/64 (or 16 • TCY)
- Timer2 output/2

This allows a maximum data rate (at 40 MHz) of 10.00 Mbps.

Figure 10-3 shows the waveforms for Master mode. When the CKE bit is set, the SDO data is valid before there is a clock edge on SCK. The change of the input sample is shown based on the state of the SMP bit. The time when the SSPBUF is loaded with the received data is shown.

FIGURE 10-3: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (MASTER MODE)



10.3.6 SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the data is transmitted and received as the external clock pulses appear on SCK. When the last bit is latched, the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

While in Slave mode, the external clock is supplied by the external clock source on the SCK pin. This external clock must meet the minimum high and low times, as specified in the electrical specifications.

While in Sleep mode, the slave can transmit/receive data. When a byte is received, the device will wake-up from Sleep.

10.3.7 SLAVE SELECT SYNCHRONIZATION

The $\overline{SS}$ pin allows a Synchronous Slave mode. The SPI must be in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled (SSPCON<3:0> = 4h). The pin must not be driven low for the $\overline{SS}$ pin to function as an input. The data latch must be high. When the $\overline{SS}$ pin is low, transmission and reception are enabled and the SDO pin is driven. When the $\overline{SS}$ pin goes high, the SDO pin is no longer driven, even if in the middle of a transmitted byte and becomes a floating output. External pull-up/pull-down resistors may be desirable, depending on the application.

Note 1:	When the SPI is in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled (SSPCON<3:0> = 0100), the SPI module will reset if the $\overline{SS}$ pin is set to V_{DD}.
2:	If the SPI is used in Slave mode with CKE set, then the $\overline{SS}$ pin control must be enabled.

When the SPI module resets, the bit counter is forced to '0'. This can be done by either forcing the $\overline{SS}$ pin to a high level or clearing the SSPEN bit.

To emulate two-wire communication, the SDO pin can be connected to the SDI pin. When the SPI needs to operate as a receiver, the SDO pin can be configured as an input. This disables transmissions from the SDO. The SDI can always be left as an input (SDI function) since it cannot create a bus conflict.

FIGURE 10-4: SLAVE SYNCHRONIZATION WAVEFORM

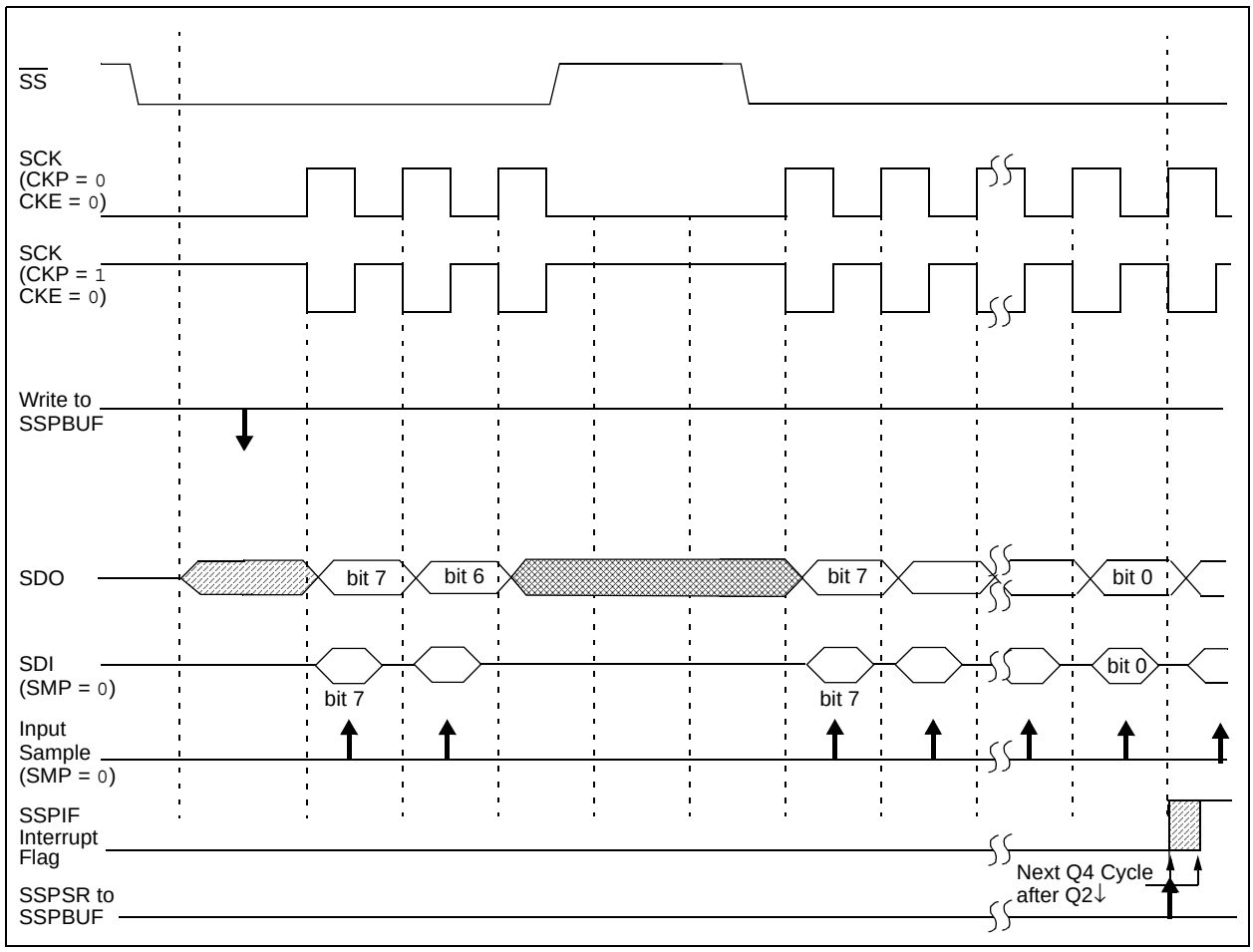


FIGURE 10-5: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 0)

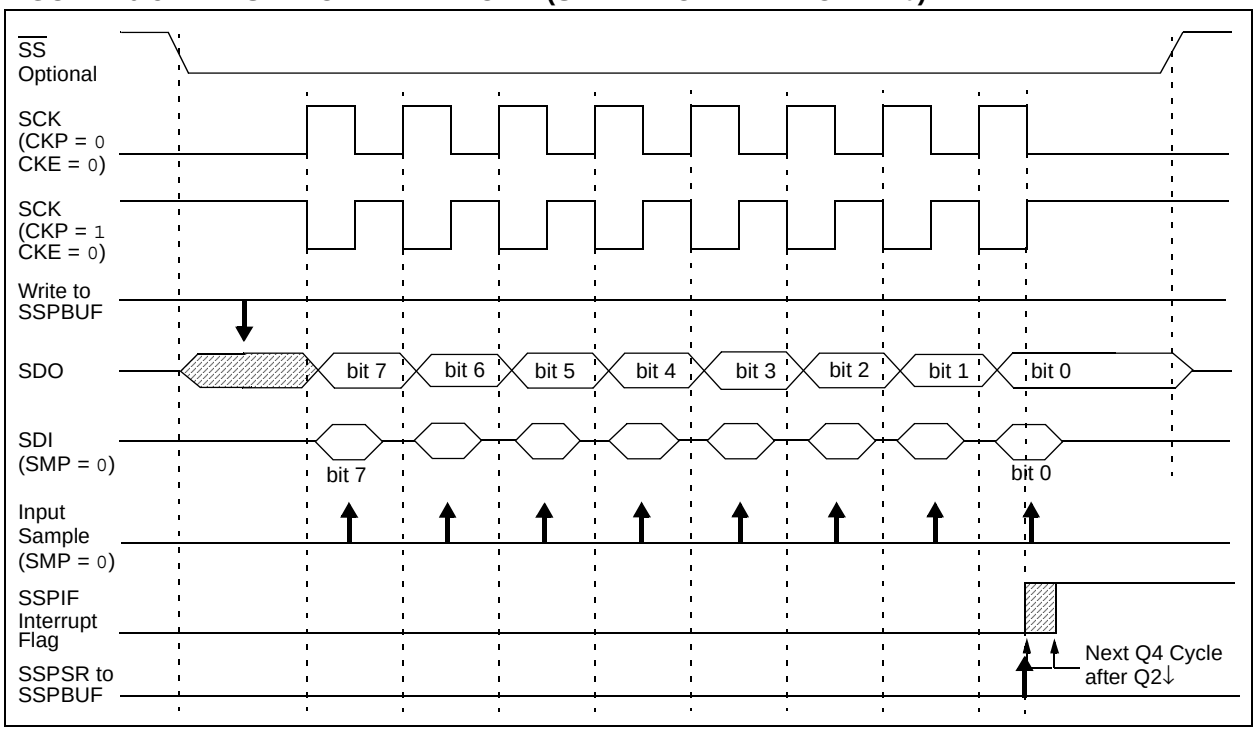
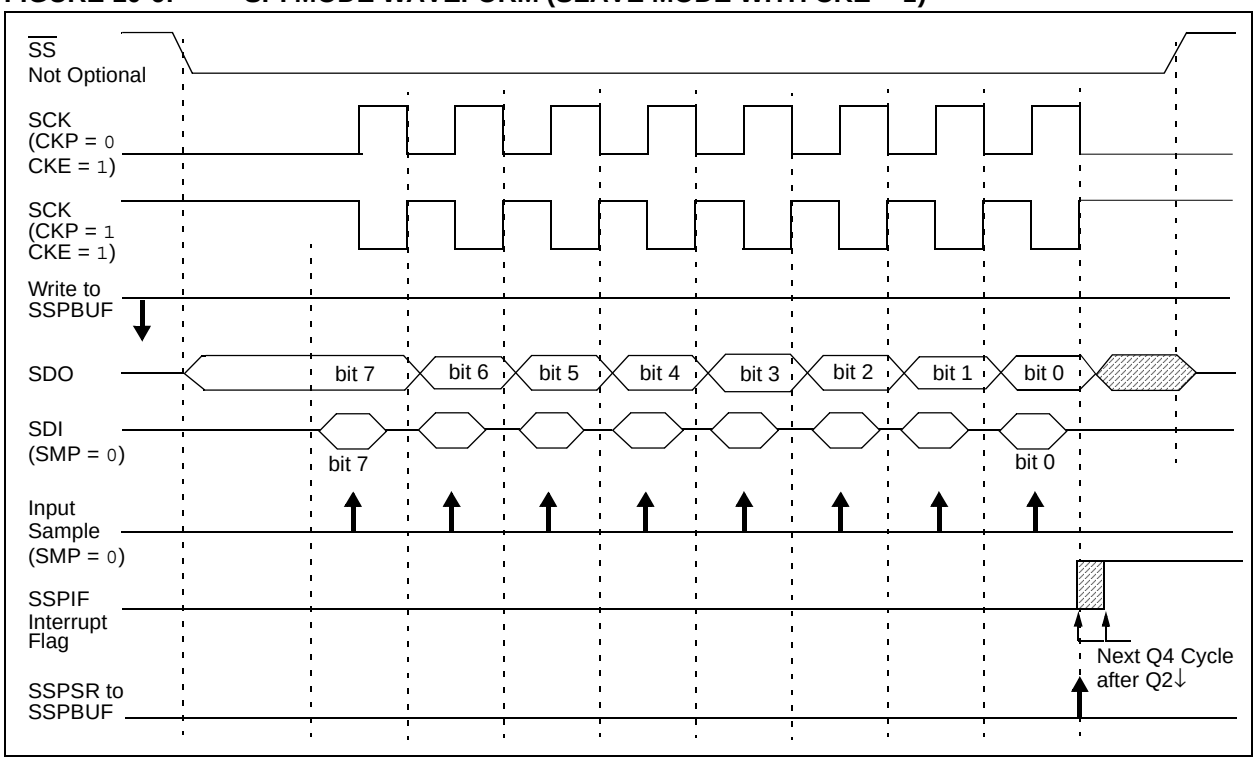


FIGURE 10-6: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 1)



10.3.8 SLEEP OPERATION

In Master mode, all module clocks are halted and the transmission/reception will remain in that state until the device wakes from Sleep. After the device returns to normal mode, the module will continue to transmit/ receive data.

In Slave mode, the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register operates asynchronously to the device. This allows the device to be placed in Sleep mode and data to be shifted into the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register. When all 8 bits have been received, the MSSP interrupt flag bit will be set and if enabled, will wake the device from Sleep.

10.3.9 EFFECTS OF A RESET

A Reset disables the MSSP module and terminates the current transfer.

10.3.10 BUS MODE COMPATIBILITY

Table 10-1 shows the compatibility between the standard SPI modes and the states of the CKP and CKE control bits.

TABLE 10-1: SPI BUS MODES

Standard SPI Mode Terminology	Control Bits State	
	CKP	CKE
0, 0	0	1
0, 1	0	0
1, 0	1	1
1, 1	1	0

There is also an SMP bit which controls when the data is sampled.

TABLE 10-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SPI OPERATION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
SSPBUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISA	PORTA Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
SSPSTAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the MSSP in SPI mode.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

10.4 I²C Mode

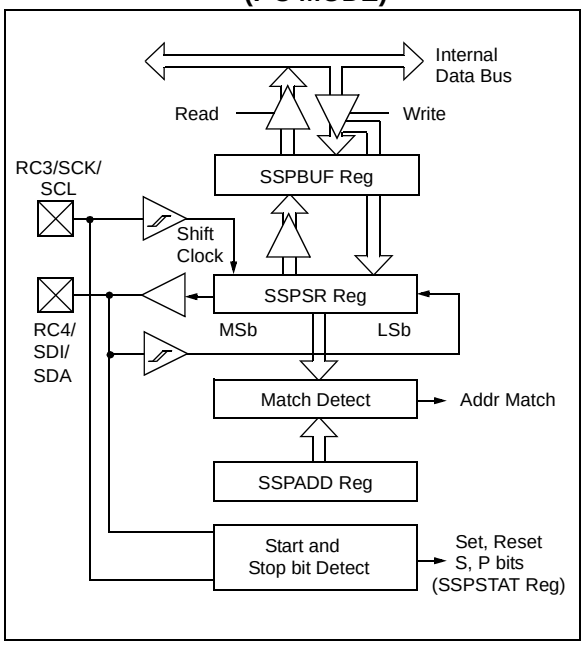
The MSSP module in I²C mode fully implements all master and slave functions (including general call support) and provides interrupts on Start and Stop bits in hardware to determine a free bus (multi-master function). The MSSP module implements the standard mode specifications, as well as 7-bit and 10-bit addressing.

Two pins are used for data transfer:

- Serial clock (SCL) – RC3/SCK/SCL
- Serial data (SDA) – RC4/SDI/SDA

The user must configure these pins as inputs or outputs through the TRISC<4:3> bits.

FIGURE 10-7: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I²C MODE)



10.4.1 REGISTERS

The MSSP module has six registers for I²C operation. These are:

- MSSP Control Register (SSPCON)
- MSSP Control Register 2 (SSPCON2)
- MSSP Status Register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- MSSP Shift Register (SSPSR) – Not directly accessible
- MSSP Address Register (SSPADD)

SSPCON, SSPCON2 and SSPSTAT are the control and status registers in I²C mode operation. The SSPCON and SSPCON2 registers are readable and writable. The lower 6 bits of the SSPSTAT are read-only. The upper two bits of the SSPSTAT are read/write.

SSPSR is the shift register used for shifting data in or out. SSPBUF is the buffer register to which data bytes are written to or read from.

SSPADD register holds the slave device address when the SSP is configured in I²C Slave mode. When the SSP is configured in Master mode, the lower seven bits of SSPADD act as the baud rate generator reload value.

In receive operations, SSPSR and SSPBUF together create a double-buffered receiver. When SSPSR receives a complete byte, it is transferred to SSPBUF and the SSPIF interrupt is set.

During transmission, the SSPBUF is not double-buffered. A write to SSPBUF will write to both SSPBUF and SSPSR.

REGISTER 10-3: SSPSTAT: MSSP STATUS (I^2C MODE) REGISTER (ADDRESS 94h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SMP:** Slew Rate Control bit

In Master or Slave mode:

1 = Slew rate control disabled for standard speed mode (100 kHz and 1 MHz)

0 = Slew rate control enabled for high-speed mode (400 kHz)

bit 6 **CKE:** SMBus Select bit

In Master or Slave mode:

1 = Enable SMBus specific inputs

0 = Disable SMBus specific inputs

bit 5 **D/$\overline{A}$:** Data/$\overline{Address}$ bit

In Master mode:

Reserved.

In Slave mode:

1 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was data

0 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was address

bit 4 **P:** Stop bit

1 = Indicates that a Stop bit has been detected last

0 = Stop bit was not detected last

Note: This bit is cleared on Reset and when SSPEN is cleared.

bit 3 **S:** Start bit

1 = Indicates that a Start bit has been detected last

0 = Start bit was not detected last

Note: This bit is cleared on Reset and when SSPEN is cleared.

bit 2 **R/$\overline{W}$:** Read/$\overline{Write}$ bit Information bit (I^2C mode only)

In Slave mode:

1 = Read

0 = Write

Note: This bit holds the R/$\overline{W}$ bit information following the last address match. This bit is only valid from the address match to the next Start bit, Stop bit or not $\overline{ACK}$ bit.

In Master mode:

1 = Transmit is in progress

0 = Transmit is not in progress

Note: ORing this bit with SEN, RSEN, PEN, RCEN or ACKEN will indicate if the MSSP is in Idle mode.

bit 1 **UA:** Update Address bit (10-bit Slave mode only)

1 = Indicates that the user needs to update the address in the SSPADD register

0 = Address does not need to be updated

bit 0 **BF:** Buffer Full Status bit

In Transmit mode:

1 = Receive complete, SSPBUF is full

0 = Receive not complete, SSPBUF is empty

In Receive mode:

1 = Data transmit in progress (does not include the $\overline{ACK}$ and Stop bits), SSPBUF is full

0 = Data transmit complete (does not include the $\overline{ACK}$ and Stop bits), SSPBUF is empty

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 10-4: SSPCON: MSSP CONTROL (I^2C MODE) REGISTER 1 (ADDRESS 14h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WCOL:** Write Collision Detect bit

In Master Transmit mode:

1 = A write to the SSPBUF register was attempted while the I^2C conditions were not valid for a transmission to be started. (Must be cleared in software.)

0 = No collision

In Slave Transmit mode:

1 = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word. (Must be cleared in software.)

0 = No collision

In Receive mode (Master or Slave modes):

This is a "don't care" bit.

bit 6 **SSPOV:** Receive Overflow Indicator bit

In Receive mode:

1 = A byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous byte. (Must be cleared in software.)

0 = No overflow

In Transmit mode:

This is a "don't care" bit in Transmit mode.

bit 5 **SSPEN:** Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit

1 = Enables the serial port and configures the SDA and SCL pins as the serial port pins

0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

Note: When enabled, the SDA and SCL pins must be properly configured as input or output.

bit 4 **CKP:** SCK Release Control bit

In Slave mode:

1 = Release clock

0 = Holds clock low (clock stretch). (Used to ensure data setup time.)

In Master mode:

Unused in this mode.

bit 3-0 **SSPM3:SSPM0:** Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits

1111 = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled

1110 = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled

1011 = I^2C Firmware Controlled Master mode (slave Idle)

1000 = I^2C Master mode, clock = FOSC/(4 * (SSPADD + 1))

0111 = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address

0110 = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address

Note: Bit combinations not specifically listed here are either reserved or implemented in SPI mode only.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 10-5: SSPCON2: MSSP CONTROL (I^2C MODE) REGISTER 2 (ADDRESS 91h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **GCEN:** General Call Enable bit (Slave mode only)
1 = Enable interrupt when a general call address (0000h) is received in the SSPSR
0 = General call address disabled

bit 6 **ACKSTAT:** Acknowledge Status bit (Master Transmit mode only)
1 = Acknowledge was not received from slave
0 = Acknowledge was received from slave

bit 5 **ACKDT:** Acknowledge Data bit (Master Receive mode only)
1 = Not Acknowledge
0 = Acknowledge

Note: Value that will be transmitted when the user initiates an Acknowledge sequence at the end of a receive.

bit 4 **ACKEN:** Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit (Master Receive mode only)
1 = Initiate Acknowledge sequence on SDA and SCL pins and transmit ACKDT data bit. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Acknowledge sequence Idle

bit 3 **RCEN:** Receive Enable bit (Master mode only)
1 = Enables Receive mode for I^2C
0 = Receive Idle

bit 2 **PEN:** Stop Condition Enable bit (Master mode only)
1 = Initiate Stop condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Stop condition Idle

bit 1 **RSEN:** Repeated Start Condition Enabled bit (Master mode only)
1 = Initiate Repeated Start condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Repeated Start condition Idle

bit 0 **SEN:** Start Condition Enabled/Stretch Enabled bit
In Master mode:
1 = Initiate Start condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Start condition Idle
In Slave mode:
1 = Clock stretching is enabled for both slave transmit and slave receive (stretch enabled)
0 = Clock stretching is enabled for slave transmit only (PIC16F87X compatibility)

Note: For bits ACKEN, RCEN, PEN, RSEN, SEN: If the I^2C module is not in the Idle mode, this bit may not be set (no spooling) and the SSPBUF may not be written (or writes to the SSPBUF are disabled).

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

10.4.2 OPERATION

The MSSP module functions are enabled by setting MSSP enable bit, SSPEN (SSPCON<5>).

The SSPCON register allows control of the I^2C operation. Four mode selection bits (SSPCON<3:0>) allow one of the following I^2C modes to be selected:

- I^2C Master mode, clock = Osc/4 (SSPADD + 1)
- I^2C Slave mode (7-bit address)
- I^2C Slave mode (10-bit address)
- I^2C Slave mode (7-bit address), with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled
- I^2C Slave mode (10-bit address), with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled
- I^2C Firmware Controlled Master mode, slave is Idle

Selection of any I^2C mode, with the SSPEN bit set, forces the SCL and SDA pins to be open-drain, provided these pins are programmed to inputs by setting the appropriate TRISC bits. To ensure proper operation of the module, pull-up resistors must be provided externally to the SCL and SDA pins.

10.4.3 SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the SCL and SDA pins must be configured as inputs (TRISC<4:3> set). The MSSP module will override the input state with the output data when required (slave-transmitter).

The I^2C Slave mode hardware will always generate an interrupt on an address match. Through the mode select bits, the user can also choose to interrupt on Start and Stop bits.

When an address is matched, or the data transfer after an address match is received, the hardware automatically will generate the Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$) pulse and load the SSPBUF register with the received value currently in the SSPSR register.

Any combination of the following conditions will cause the MSSP module not to give this $\overline{ACK}$ pulse:

- The Buffer Full bit, BF (SSPSTAT<0>), was set before the transfer was received.
- The overflow bit, SSPOV (SSPCON<6>), was set before the transfer was received.

In this case, the SSPSR register value is not loaded into the SSPBUF, but bit SSPIF (PIR1<3>) is set. The BF bit is cleared by reading the SSPBUF register, while bit SSPOV is cleared through software.

The SCL clock input must have a minimum high and low for proper operation. The high and low times of the I^2C specification, as well as the requirement of the MSSP module, are shown in timing parameter #100 and parameter #101.

10.4.3.1 Addressing

Once the MSSP module has been enabled, it waits for a Start condition to occur. Following the Start condition, the 8 bits are shifted into the SSPSR register. All incoming bits are sampled with the rising edge of the clock (SCL) line. The value of register SSPSR<7:1> is compared to the value of the SSPADD register. The address is compared on the falling edge of the eighth clock (SCL) pulse. If the addresses match and the BF and SSPOV bits are clear, the following events occur:

1. The SSPSR register value is loaded into the SSPBUF register.
2. The Buffer Full bit, BF, is set.
3. An $\overline{ACK}$ pulse is generated.
4. MSSP Interrupt Flag bit, SSPIF (PIR1<3>), is set (interrupt is generated if enabled) on the falling edge of the ninth SCL pulse.

In 10-bit Address mode, two address bytes need to be received by the slave. The five Most Significant bits (MSbs) of the first address byte specify if this is a 10-bit address. Bit R/$\overline{W}$ (SSPSTAT<2>) must specify a write so the slave device will receive the second address byte. For a 10-bit address, the first byte would equal '`11110 A9 A8 0`', where '`A9`' and '`A8`' are the two MSbs of the address. The sequence of events for 10-bit address is as follows, with steps 7 through 9 for the slave-transmitter:

1. Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF and bit UA (SSPSTAT<1>) are set).
2. Update the SSPADD register with second (low) byte of address (clears bit UA and releases the SCL line).
3. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
4. Receive second (low) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF and UA are set).
5. Update the SSPADD register with the first (high) byte of address. If match releases SCL line, this will clear bit UA.
6. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
7. Receive Repeated Start condition.
8. Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF and BF are set).
9. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.

10.4.3.2 Reception

When the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the address byte is clear and an address match occurs, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPSTAT register is cleared. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register and the SDA line is held low ($\overline{ACK}$).

When the address byte overflow condition exists, then the no Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$) pulse is given. An overflow condition is defined as either bit BF (SSPSTAT<0>) is set or bit SSPOV (SSPCON<6>) is set.

An MSSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. Flag bit, SSPIF (PIR1<3>), must be cleared in software. The SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte.

If SEN is enabled (SSPCON<0> = 1), RC3/SCK/SCL will be held low (clock stretch) following each data transfer. The clock must be released by setting bit, CKP (SSPCON<4>). See **Section 10.4.4 "Clock Stretching"** for more detail.

10.4.3.3 Transmission

When the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the incoming address byte is set and an address match occurs, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPSTAT register is set. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register. The $\overline{ACK}$ pulse will be sent on the ninth bit and pin RC3/SCK/SCL is held low regardless of SEN (see **Section 10.4.4 "Clock Stretching"** for more detail). By stretching the clock, the master will be unable to assert another clock pulse until the slave is done preparing the transmit data. The transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Then pin RC3/SCK/SCL should be enabled by setting bit CKP (SSPCON<4>). The eight data bits are shifted out on the falling edge of the SCL input. This ensures that the SDA signal is valid during the SCL high time (Figure 10-9).

The $\overline{ACK}$ pulse from the master-receiver is latched on the rising edge of the ninth SCL input pulse. If the SDA line is high (not $\overline{ACK}$), then the data transfer is complete. In this case, when the $\overline{ACK}$ is latched by the slave, the slave logic is reset (resets SSPSTAT register) and the slave monitors for another occurrence of the Start bit. If the SDA line was low ($\overline{ACK}$), the next transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register. Again, pin RC3/SCK/SCL must be enabled by setting bit CKP.

An MSSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. The SSPIF bit must be cleared in software and the SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte. The SSPIF bit is set on the falling edge of the ninth clock pulse.

FIGURE 10-8: I^2C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 0 (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)

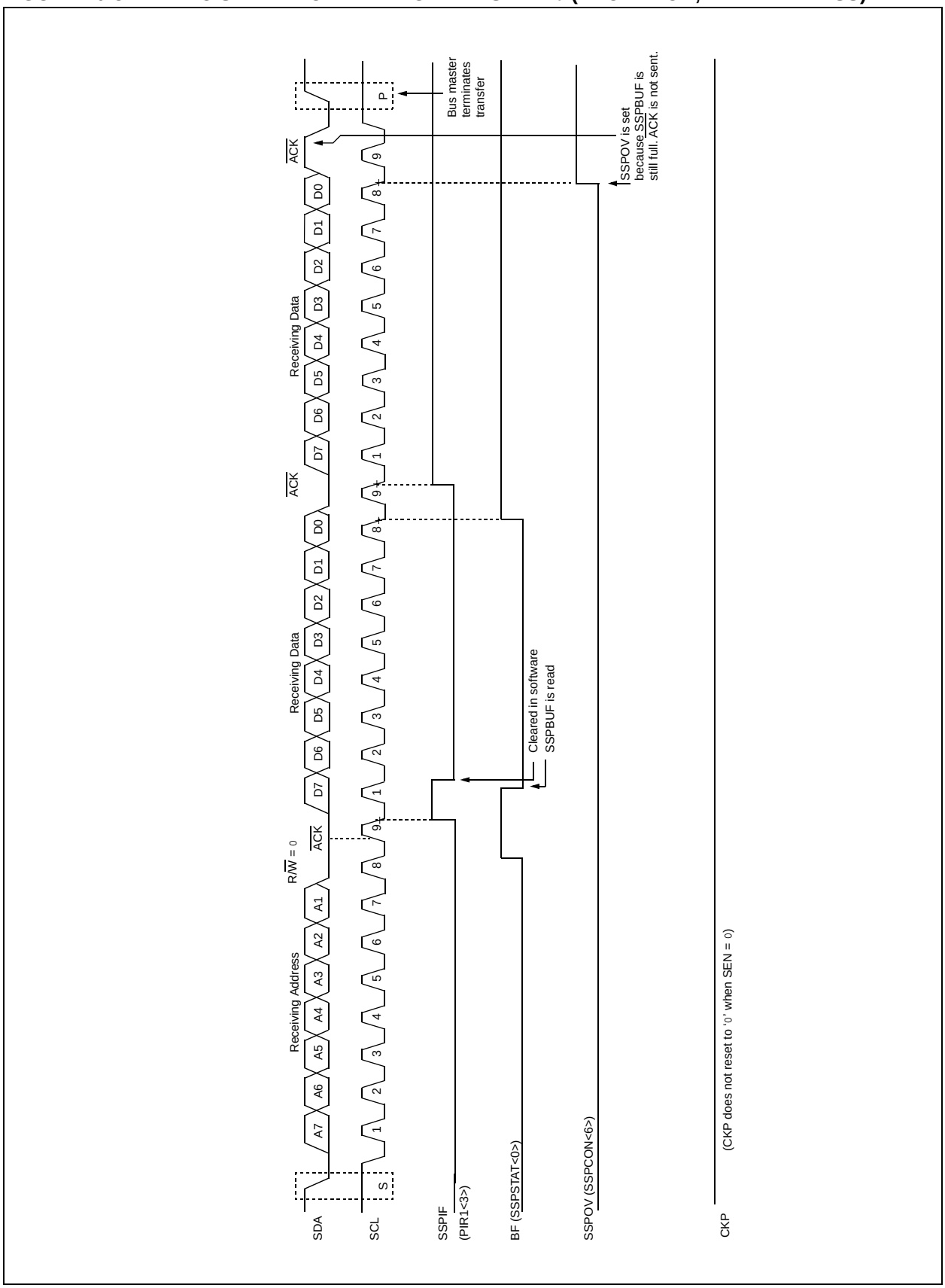


FIGURE 10-9: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING (TRANSMISSION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)

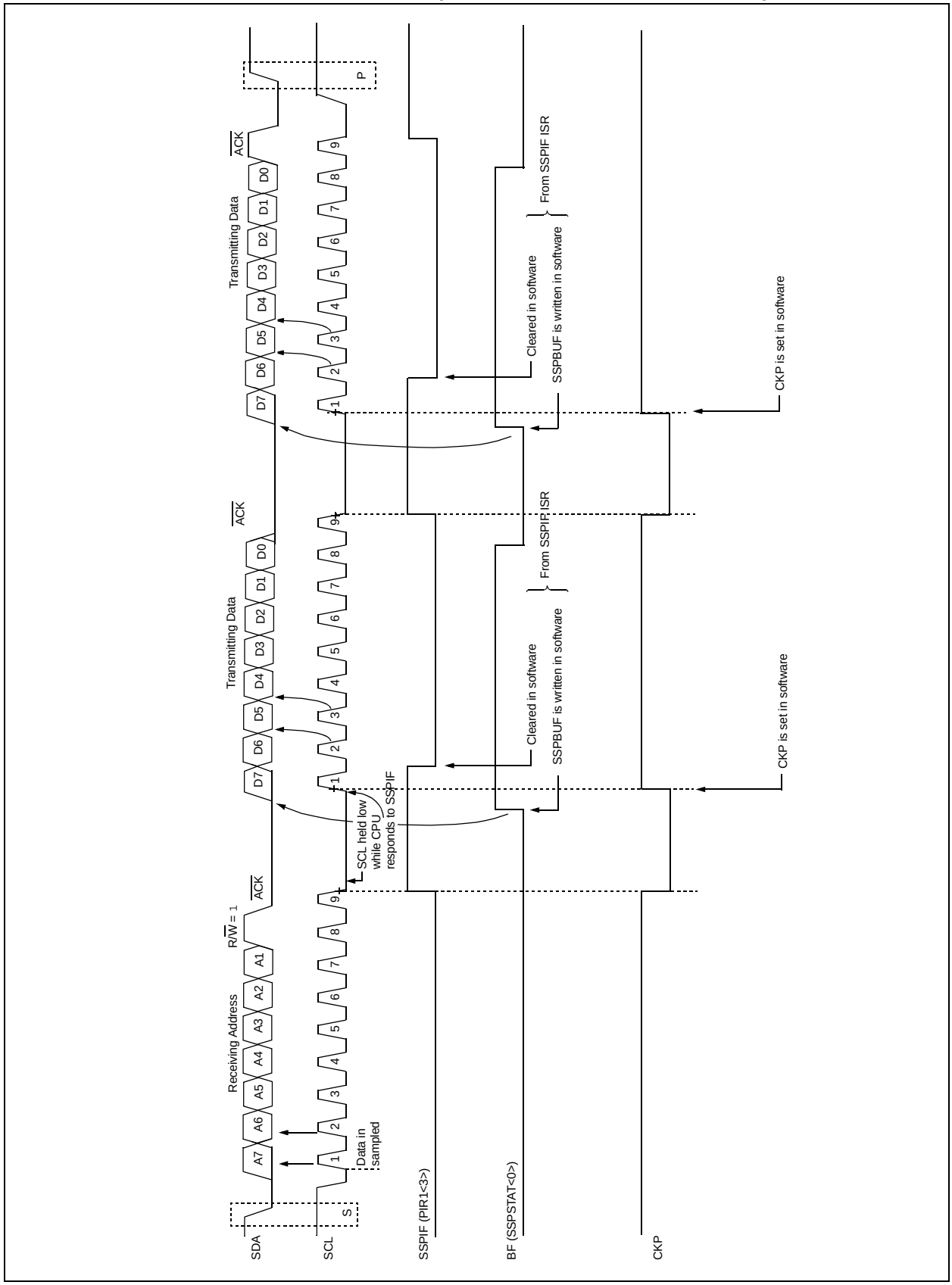


FIGURE 10-10: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 0 (RECEPTION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)

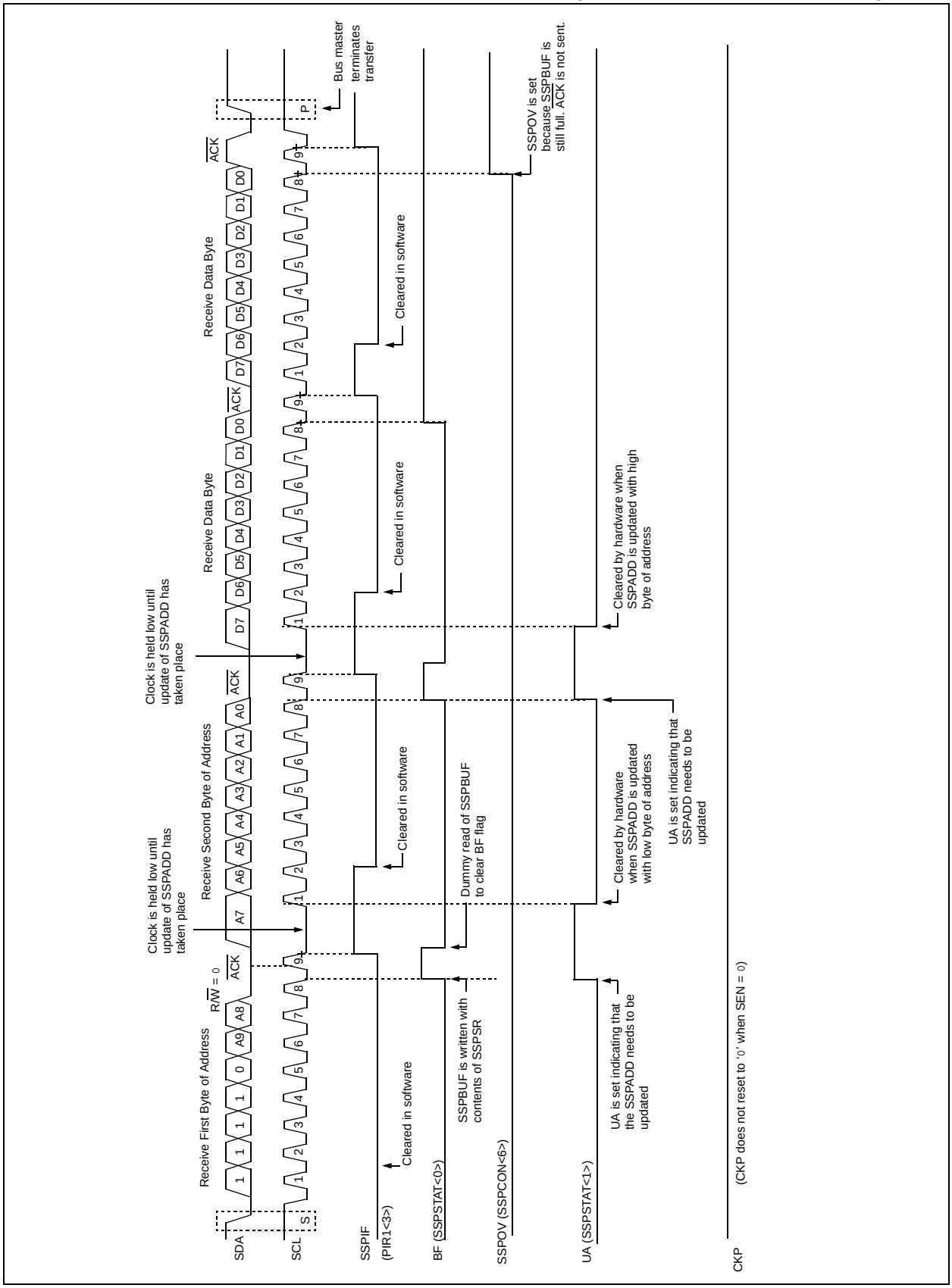
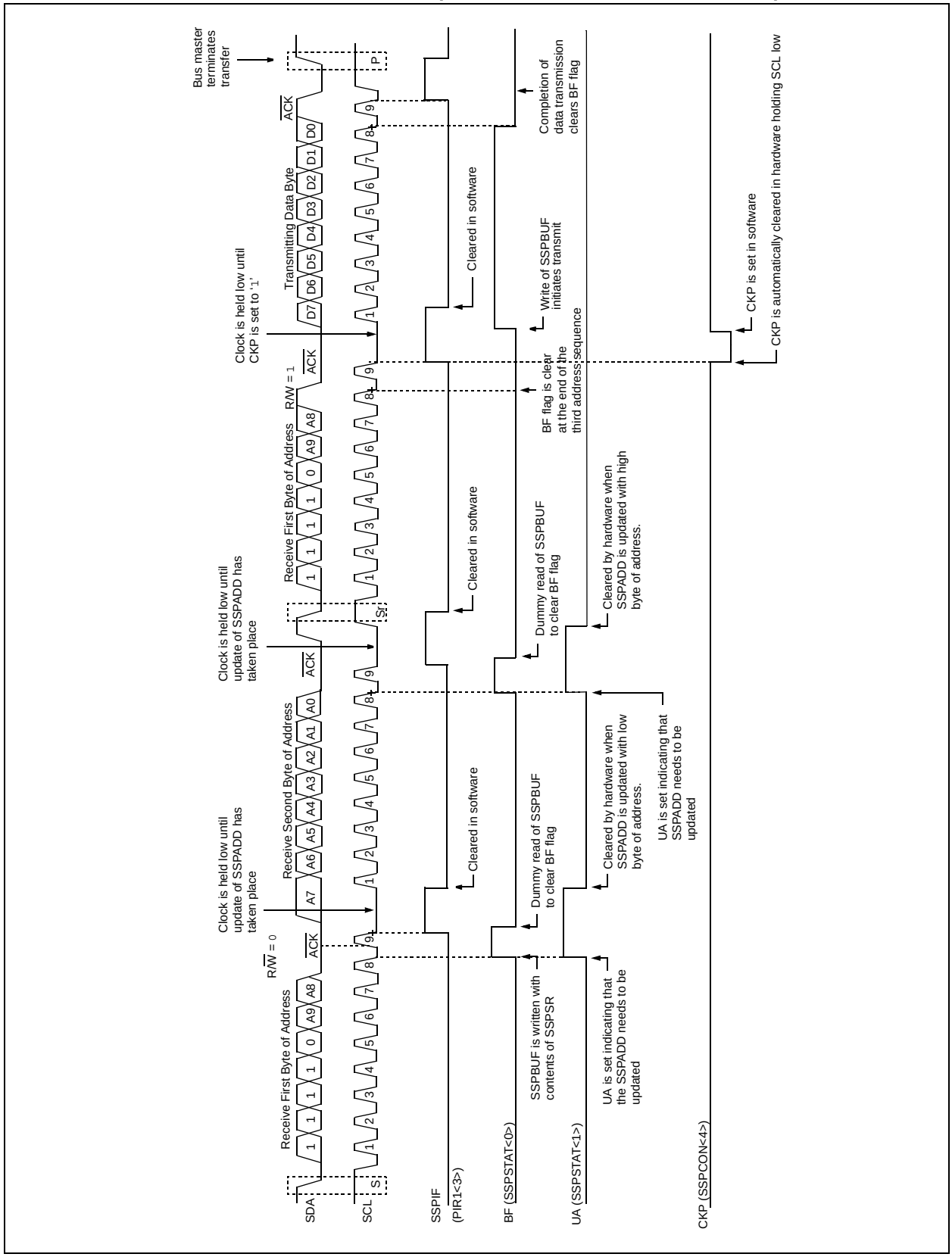


FIGURE 10-11: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING (TRANSMISSION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



10.4.4 CLOCK STRETCHING

Both 7-bit and 10-bit Slave modes implement automatic clock stretching during a transmit sequence.

The SEN bit (SSPCON2<0>) allows clock stretching to be enabled during receives. Setting SEN will cause the SCL pin to be held low at the end of each data receive sequence.

10.4.4.1 Clock Stretching for 7-bit Slave Receive Mode (SEN = 1)

In 7-bit Slave Receive mode, on the falling edge of the ninth clock, at the end of the ACK sequence if the BF bit is set, the CKP bit in the SSPCON register is automatically cleared, forcing the SCL output to be held low. The CKP being cleared to '0' will assert the SCL line low. The CKP bit must be set in the user's ISR before reception is allowed to continue. By holding the SCL line low, the user has time to service the ISR and read the contents of the SSPBUF before the master device can initiate another receive sequence. This will prevent buffer overruns from occurring (see Figure 10-13).

Note 1:	If the user reads the contents of the SSPBUF before the falling edge of the ninth clock, thus clearing the BF bit, the CKP bit will not be cleared and clock stretching will not occur.
2:	The CKP bit can be set in software regardless of the state of the BF bit. The user should be careful to clear the BF bit in the ISR before the next receive sequence in order to prevent an overflow condition.

10.4.4.2 Clock Stretching for 10-bit Slave Receive Mode (SEN = 1)

In 10-bit Slave Receive mode during the address sequence, clock stretching automatically takes place but CKP is not cleared. During this time, if the UA bit is set after the ninth clock, clock stretching is initiated. The UA bit is set after receiving the upper byte of the 10-bit address and following the receive of the second byte of the 10-bit address, with the R/$\overline{W}$ bit cleared to '0'. The release of the clock line occurs upon updating SSPADD. Clock stretching will occur on each data receive sequence as described in 7-bit mode.

Note:	If the user polls the UA bit and clears it by updating the SSPADD register before the falling edge of the ninth clock occurs and if the user hasn't cleared the BF bit by reading the SSPBUF register before that time, then the CKP bit will still NOT be asserted low. Clock stretching on the basis of the state of the BF bit only occurs during a data sequence, not an address sequence.

10.4.4.3 Clock Stretching for 7-bit Slave Transmit Mode

7-bit Slave Transmit mode implements clock stretching by clearing the CKP bit after the falling edge of the ninth clock, if the BF bit is clear. This occurs regardless of the state of the SEN bit.

The user's ISR must set the CKP bit before transmission is allowed to continue. By holding the SCL line low, the user has time to service the ISR and load the contents of the SSPBUF before the master device can initiate another transmit sequence (see Figure 10-9).

Note 1:	If the user loads the contents of SSPBUF, setting the BF bit before the falling edge of the ninth clock, the CKP bit will not be cleared and clock stretching will not occur.
2:	The CKP bit can be set in software regardless of the state of the BF bit.

10.4.4.4 Clock Stretching for 10-bit Slave Transmit Mode

In 10-bit Slave Transmit mode, clock stretching is controlled during the first two address sequences by the state of the UA bit, just as it is in 10-bit Slave Receive mode. The first two addresses are followed by a third address sequence, which contains the high order bits of the 10-bit address and the R/$\overline{W}$ bit set to '1'. After the third address sequence is performed, the UA bit is not set, the module is now configured in Transmit mode and clock stretching is controlled by the BF flag as in 7-bit Slave Transmit mode (see Figure 10-11).

10.4.4.5 Clock Synchronization and the CKP Bit

When the CKP bit is cleared, the SCL output is forced to '0'; however, setting the CKP bit will not assert the SCL output low until the SCL output is already sampled low. Therefore, the CKP bit will not assert the SCL line until an external I^2C master device has already asserted the SCL line. The SCL output will remain low until the CKP bit is set and all other devices on the I^2C bus have deasserted SCL. This ensures that a write to the CKP bit will not violate the minimum high time requirement for SCL (see Figure 10-12).

FIGURE 10-12: CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION TIMING

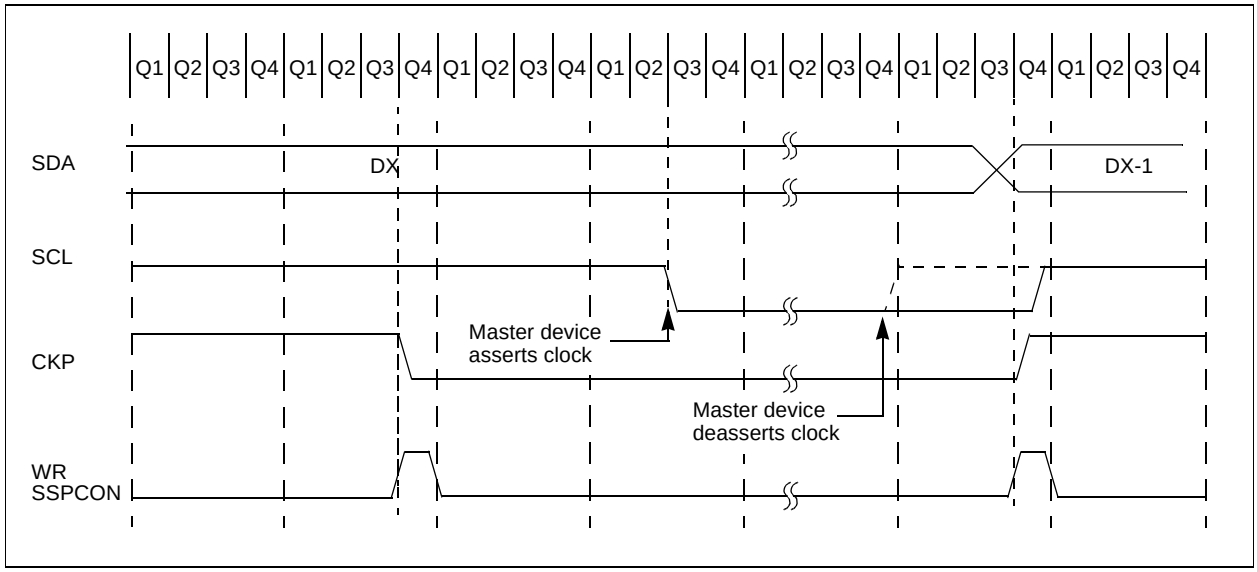


FIGURE 10-13: I^2C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 1 (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)

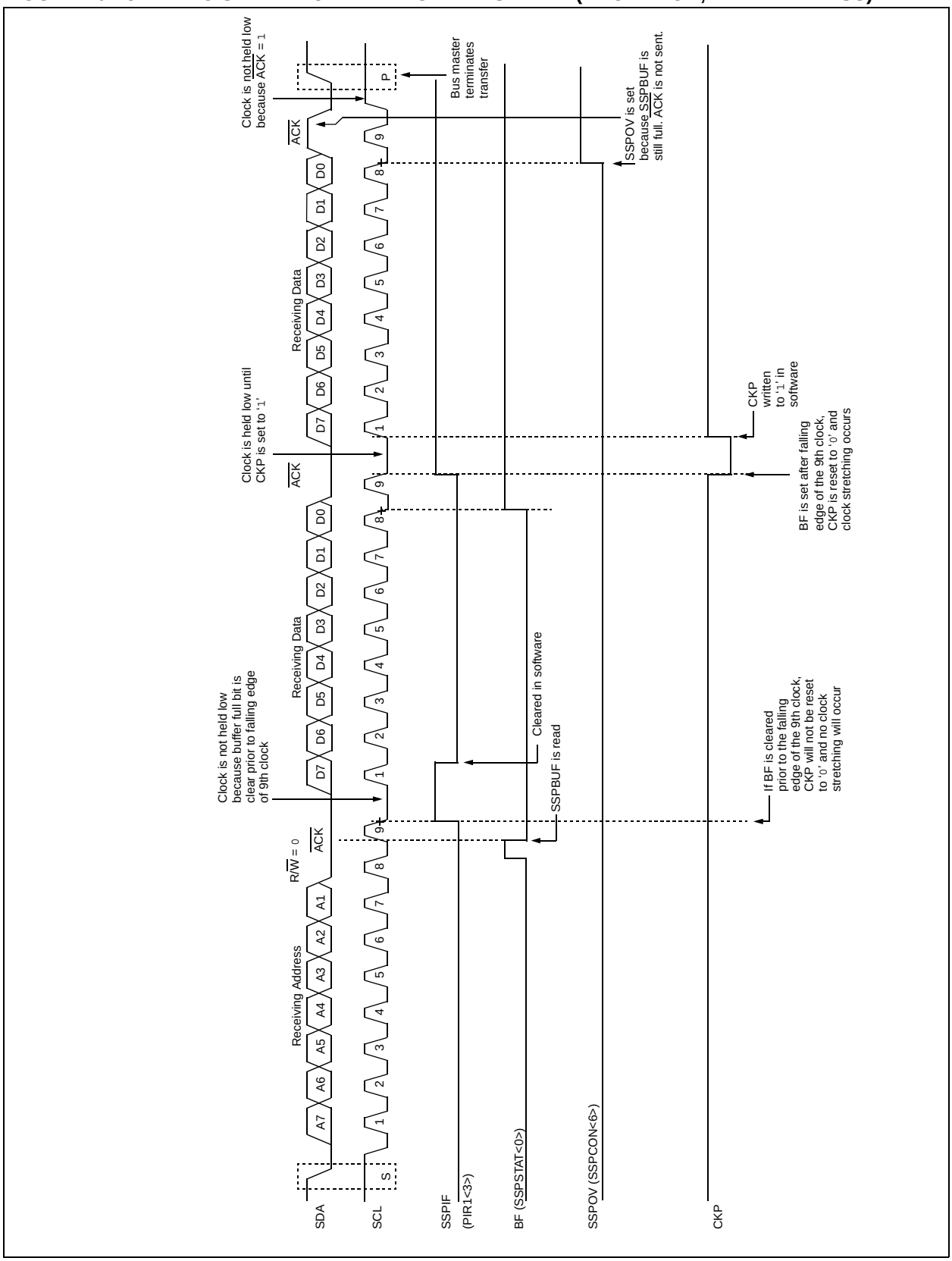
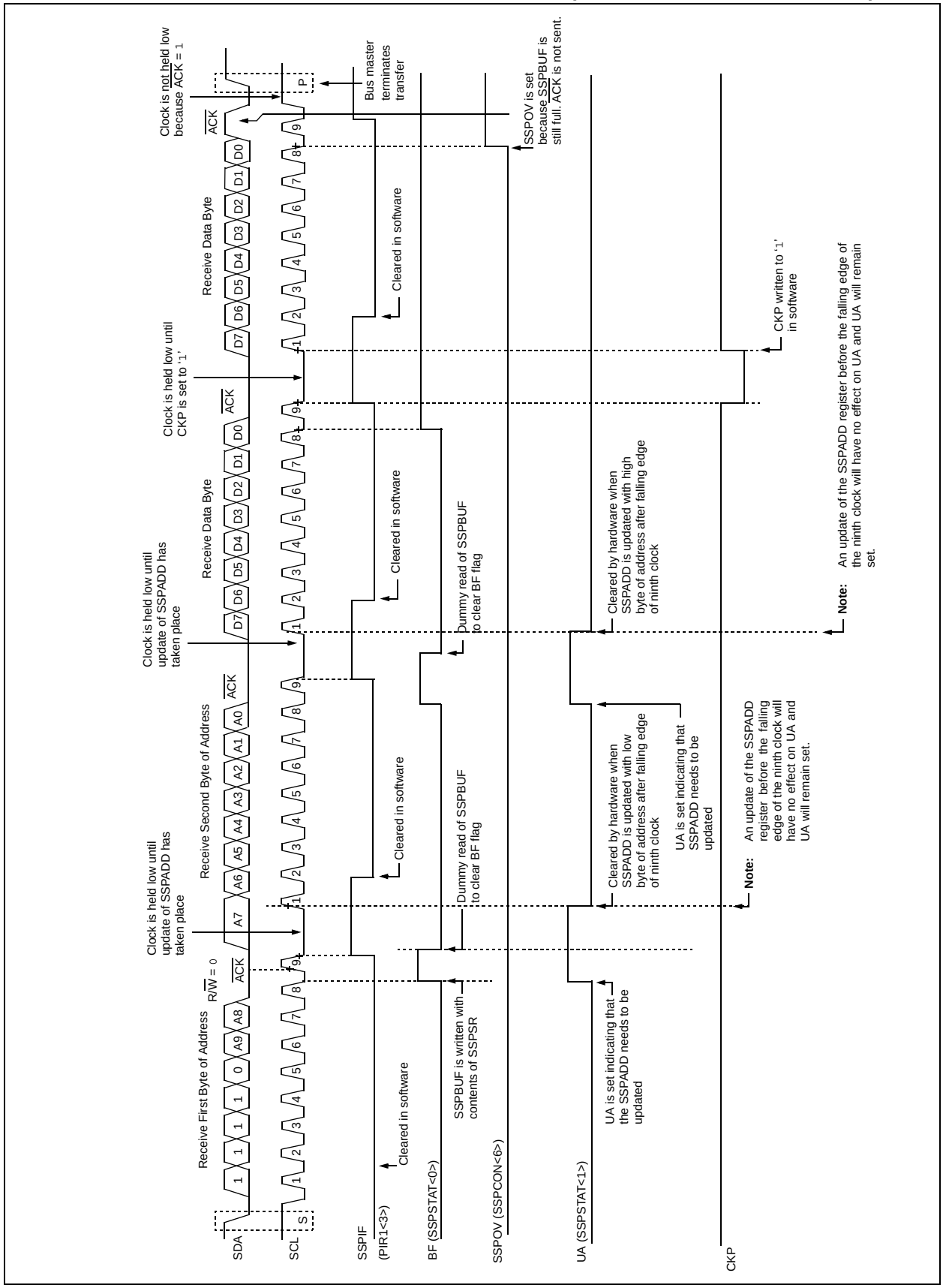


FIGURE 10-14: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 1 (RECEPTION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



10.4.5 GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SUPPORT

The addressing procedure for the I^2C bus is such that the first byte after the Start condition usually determines which device will be the slave addressed by the master. The exception is the general call address, which can address all devices. When this address is used, all devices should, in theory, respond with an Acknowledge.

The general call address is one of eight addresses reserved for specific purposes by the I^2C protocol. It consists of all '0's with R/$\overline{W}$ = 0.

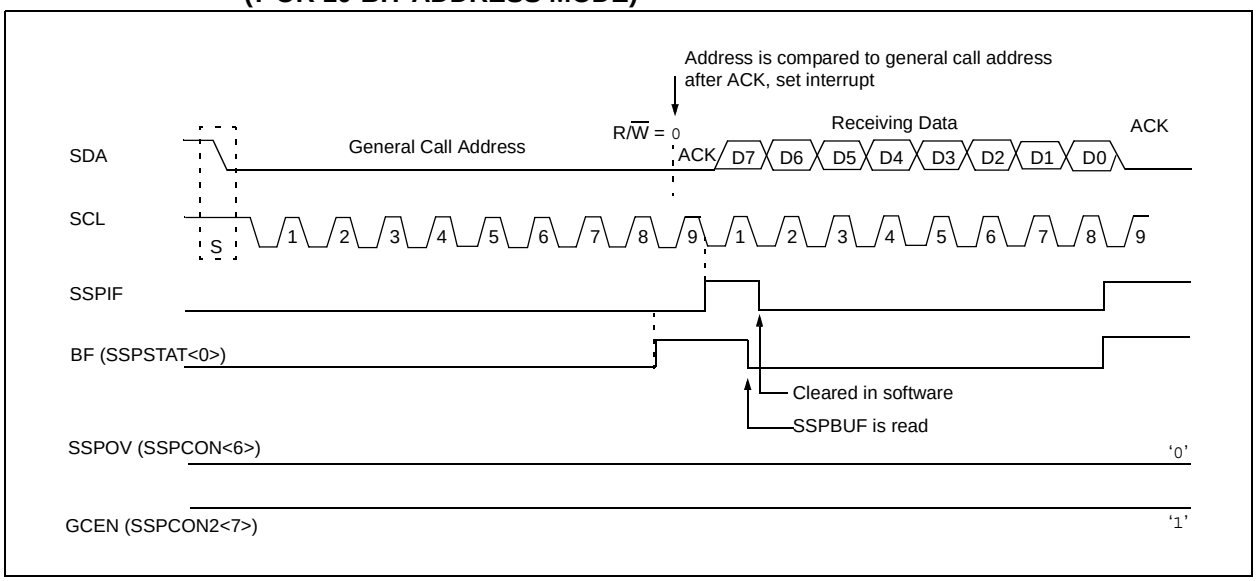
The general call address is recognized when the General Call Enable bit (GCEN) is enabled (SSPCON2<7> set). Following a Start bit detect, 8 bits are shifted into the SSPSR and the address is compared against the SSPADD. It is also compared to the general call address and fixed in hardware.

If the general call address matches, the SSPSR is transferred to the SSPBUF, the BF flag bit is set (eighth bit) and on the falling edge of the ninth bit ($\overline{ACK}$ bit), the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

When the interrupt is serviced, the source for the interrupt can be checked by reading the contents of the SSPBUF. The value can be used to determine if the address was device specific or a general call address.

In 10-bit mode, the SSPADD is required to be updated for the second half of the address to match and the UA bit is set (SSPSTAT<1>). If the general call address is sampled when the GCEN bit is set and while the slave is configured in 10-bit Address mode, then the second half of the address is not necessary, the UA bit will not be set and the slave will begin receiving data after the Acknowledge (Figure 10-15).

FIGURE 10-15: SLAVE MODE GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SEQUENCE (7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS MODE)



10.4.6 MASTER MODE

Master mode is enabled by setting and clearing the appropriate SSPM bits in SSPCON and by setting the SSPEN bit. In Master mode, the SCL and SDA lines are manipulated by the MSSP hardware.

Master mode of operation is supported by interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the MSSP module is disabled. Control of the I^2C bus may be taken when the P bit is set or the bus is Idle, with both the S and P bits clear.

In Firmware Controlled Master mode, user code conducts all I^2C bus operations based on Start and Stop bit conditions.

Once Master mode is enabled, the user has six options:

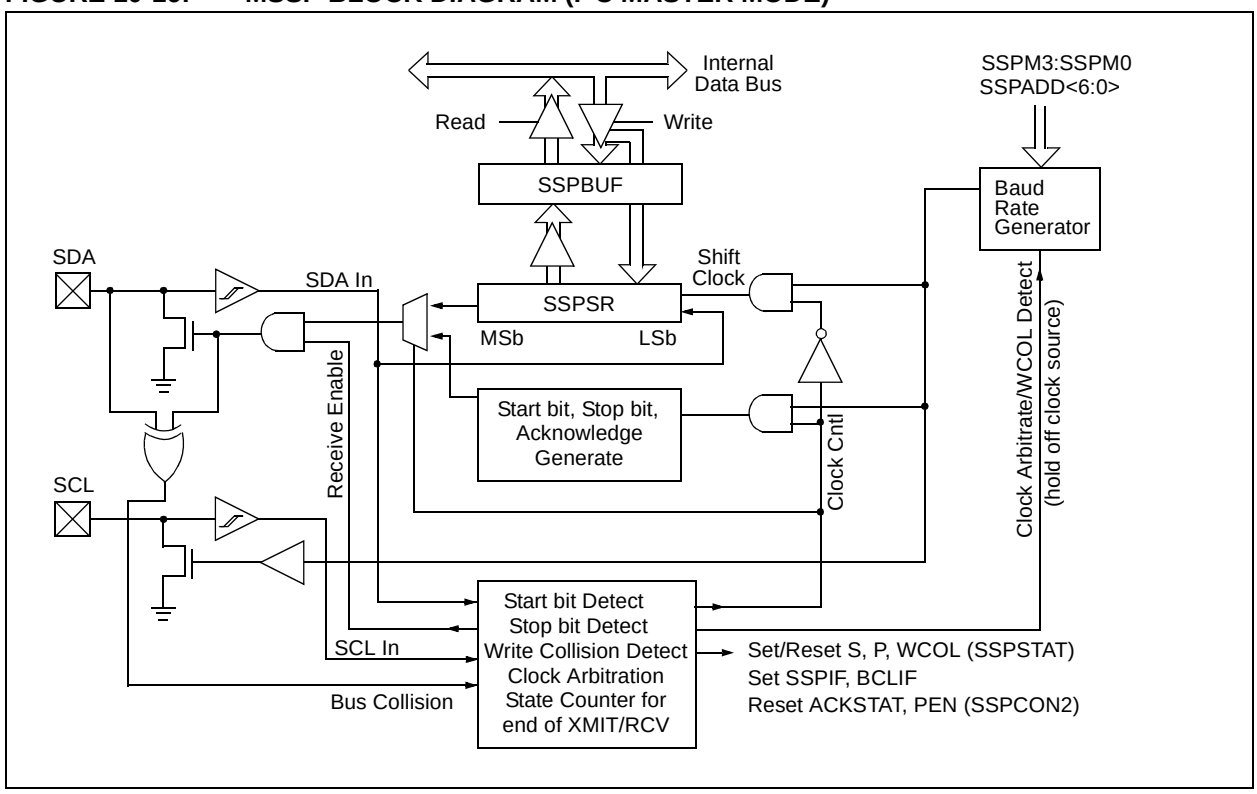
1. Assert a Start condition on SDA and SCL.
2. Assert a Repeated Start condition on SDA and SCL.
3. Write to the SSPBUF register, initiating transmission of data/address.
4. Configure the I^2C port to receive data.
5. Generate an Acknowledge condition at the end of a received byte of data.
6. Generate a Stop condition on SDA and SCL.

Note: The MSSP module, when configured in I^2C Master mode, does not allow queueing of events. For instance, the user is not allowed to initiate a Start condition and immediately write the SSPBUF register to initiate transmission before the Start condition is complete. In this case, the SSPBUF will not be written to and the WCOL bit will be set, indicating that a write to the SSPBUF did not occur.

The following events will cause SSP Interrupt Flag bit, SSPIF, to be set (SSP interrupt if enabled):

- Start condition
- Stop condition
- Data transfer byte transmitted/received
- Acknowledge Transmit
- Repeated Start

FIGURE 10-16: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I^2C MASTER MODE)



10.4.6.1 I²C Master Mode Operation

The master device generates all of the serial clock pulses and the Start and Stop conditions. A transfer is ended with a Stop condition or with a Repeated Start condition. Since the Repeated Start condition is also the beginning of the next serial transfer, the I²C bus will not be released.

In Master Transmitter mode, serial data is output through SDA while SCL outputs the serial clock. The first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the receiving device (7 bits) and the Read/Write (R/$\overline{W}$) bit. In this case, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit will be logic '0'. Serial data is transmitted 8 bits at a time. After each byte is transmitted, an Acknowledge bit is received. Start and Stop conditions are output to indicate the beginning and the end of a serial transfer.

In Master Receive mode, the first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the transmitting device (7 bits) and the R/$\overline{W}$ bit. In this case, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit will be logic '1'. Thus, the first byte transmitted is a 7-bit slave address followed by a '1' to indicate a receive bit. Serial data is received via SDA while SCL outputs the serial clock. Serial data is received 8 bits at a time. After each byte is received, an Acknowledge bit is transmitted. Start and Stop conditions indicate the beginning and end of transmission.

The baud rate generator used for the SPI mode operation is used to set the SCL clock frequency for either 100 kHz, 400 kHz or 1 MHz I²C operation. See **Section 10.4.7 "Baud Rate Generator"** for more detail.

A typical transmit sequence would go as follows:

1. The user generates a Start condition by setting the Start enable bit, SEN (SSPCON2<0>).
2. SSPIF is set. The MSSP module will wait the required Start time before any other operation takes place.
3. The user loads the SSPBUF with the slave address to transmit.
4. Address is shifted out the SDA pin until all 8 bits are transmitted.
5. The MSSP module shifts in the ACK bit from the slave device and writes its value into the SSPCON2 register (SSPCON2<6>).
6. The MSSP module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPIF bit.
7. The user loads the SSPBUF with eight bits of data.
8. Data is shifted out the SDA pin until all 8 bits are transmitted.
9. The MSSP module shifts in the ACK bit from the slave device and writes its value into the SSPCON2 register (SSPCON2<6>).
10. The MSSP module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPIF bit.
11. The user generates a Stop condition by setting the Stop enable bit, PEN (SSPCON2<2>).
12. Interrupt is generated once the Stop condition is complete.

10.4.7 BAUD RATE GENERATOR

In I^2C Master mode, the Baud Rate Generator (BRG) reload value is placed in the lower 7 bits of the SSPADD register (Figure 10-17). When a write occurs to SSPBUF, the Baud Rate Generator will automatically begin counting. The BRG counts down to 0 and stops until another reload has taken place. The BRG count is decremented twice per instruction cycle (TCY) on the Q2 and Q4 clocks. In I^2C Master mode, the BRG is reloaded automatically.

Once the given operation is complete (i.e., transmission of the last data bit is followed by $\overline{ACK}$), the internal clock will automatically stop counting and the SCL pin will remain in its last state.

Table 10-3 demonstrates clock rates based on instruction cycles and the BRG value loaded into SSPADD.

FIGURE 10-17: BAUD RATE GENERATOR BLOCK DIAGRAM

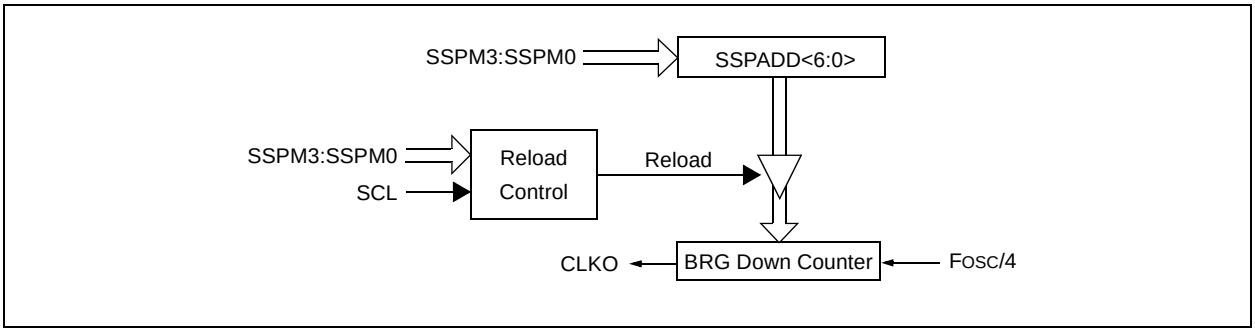


TABLE 10-3: I^2C CLOCK RATE w/BRG

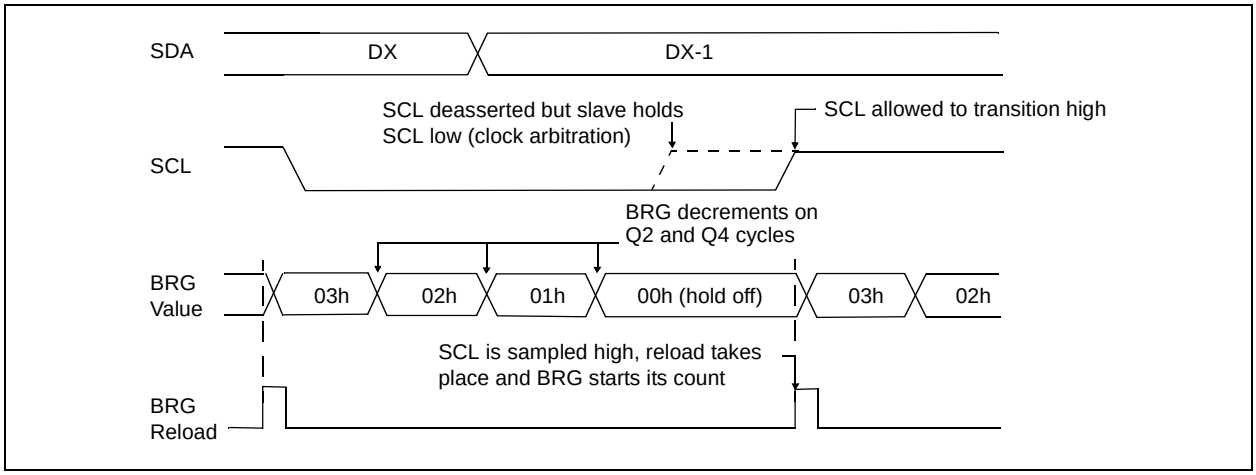
FCY	FCY*2	BRG VALUE	FSCL (2 Rollovers of BRG)
10 MHz	20 MHz	19h	400 kHz(1)
10 MHz	20 MHz	20h	312.5 kHz
10 MHz	20 MHz	3Fh	100 kHz
4 MHz	8 MHz	0Ah	400 kHz(1)
4 MHz	8 MHz	0Dh	308 kHz
4 MHz	8 MHz	28h	100 kHz
1 MHz	2 MHz	03h	333 kHz(1)
1 MHz	2 MHz	0Ah	100 kHz
1 MHz	2 MHz	00h	1 MHz(1)

Note 1: The I^2C interface does not conform to the 400 kHz I^2C specification (which applies to rates greater than 100 kHz) in all details, but may be used with care where higher rates are required by the application.

10.4.7.1 Clock Arbitration

Clock arbitration occurs when the master, during any receive, transmit or Repeated Start/Stop condition, deasserts the SCL pin (SCL allowed to float high). When the SCL pin is allowed to float high, the Baud Rate Generator (BRG) is suspended from counting until the SCL pin is actually sampled high. When the SCL pin is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and begins counting. This ensures that the SCL high time will always be at least one BRG rollover count in the event that the clock is held low by an external device (Figure 10-18).

FIGURE 10-18: BAUD RATE GENERATOR TIMING WITH CLOCK ARBITRATION



10.4.8 I²C MASTER MODE START CONDITION TIMING

To initiate a Start condition, the user sets the Start Condition Enable bit, SEN (SSPCON2<0>). If the SDA and SCL pins are sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and starts its count. If SCL and SDA are both sampled high when the Baud Rate Generator times out (TBRG), the SDA pin is driven low. The action of the SDA being driven low while SCL is high is the Start condition and causes the S bit (SSPSTAT<3>) to be set. Following this, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and resumes its count. When the Baud Rate Generator times out (TBRG), the SEN bit (SSPCON2<0>) will be automatically cleared by hardware, the Baud Rate Generator is suspended, leaving the SDA line held low and the Start condition is complete.

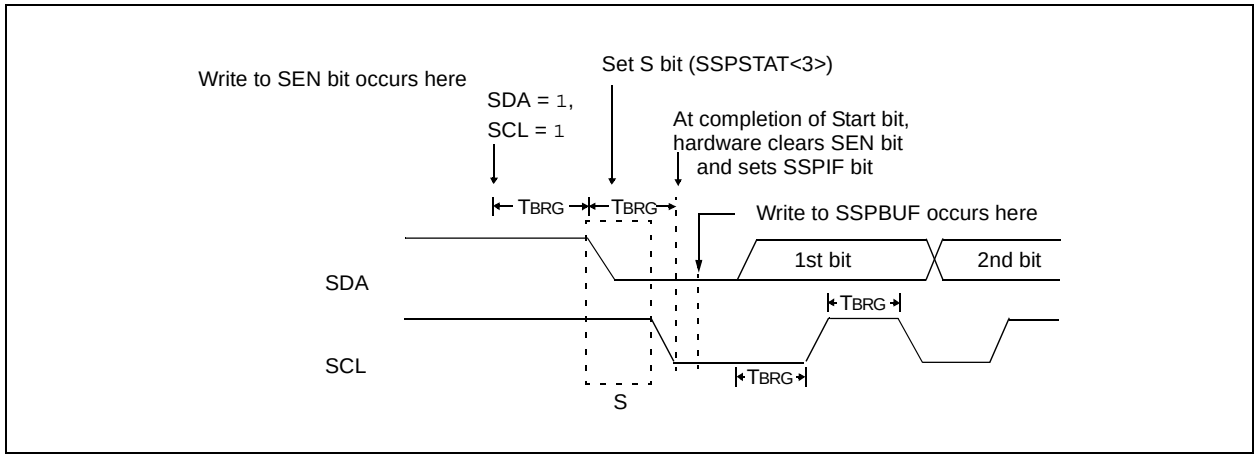
Note:	If at the beginning of the Start condition, the SDA and SCL pins are already sampled low, or if during the Start condition, the SCL line is sampled low before the SDA line is driven low, a bus collision occurs, the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag, BCLIF, is set, the Start condition is aborted and the I²C module is reset into its Idle state.

10.4.8.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a Start sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

Note:	Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing to the lower 5 bits of SSPCON2 is disabled until the Start condition is complete.

FIGURE 10-19: FIRST START BIT TIMING



10.4.9 I²C MASTER MODE REPEATED START CONDITION TIMING

A Repeated Start condition occurs when the RSEN bit (SSPCON2<1>) is programmed high and the I²C logic module is in the Idle state. When the RSEN bit is set, the SCL pin is asserted low. When the SCL pin is sampled low, the Baud Rate Generator is loaded with the contents of SSPADD<5:0> and begins counting. The SDA pin is released (brought high) for one Baud Rate Generator count (TBRG). When the Baud Rate Generator times out, if SDA is sampled high, the SCL pin will be deasserted (brought high). When SCL is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and begins counting. SDA and SCL must be sampled high for one TBRG. This action is then followed by assertion of the SDA pin (SDA = 0) for one TBRG while SCL is high. Following this, the RSEN bit (SSPCON2<1>) will be automatically cleared and the Baud Rate Generator will not be reloaded, leaving the SDA pin held low. As soon as a Start condition is detected on the SDA and SCL pins, the S bit (SSPSTAT<3>) will be set. The SSPIF bit will not be set until the Baud Rate Generator has timed out.

Note 1: If RSEN is programmed while any other event is in progress, it will not take effect.

2: A bus collision during the Repeated Start condition occurs if:

- SDA is sampled low when SCL goes from low-to-high.
- SCL goes low before SDA is asserted low. This may indicate that another master is attempting to transmit a data '1'.

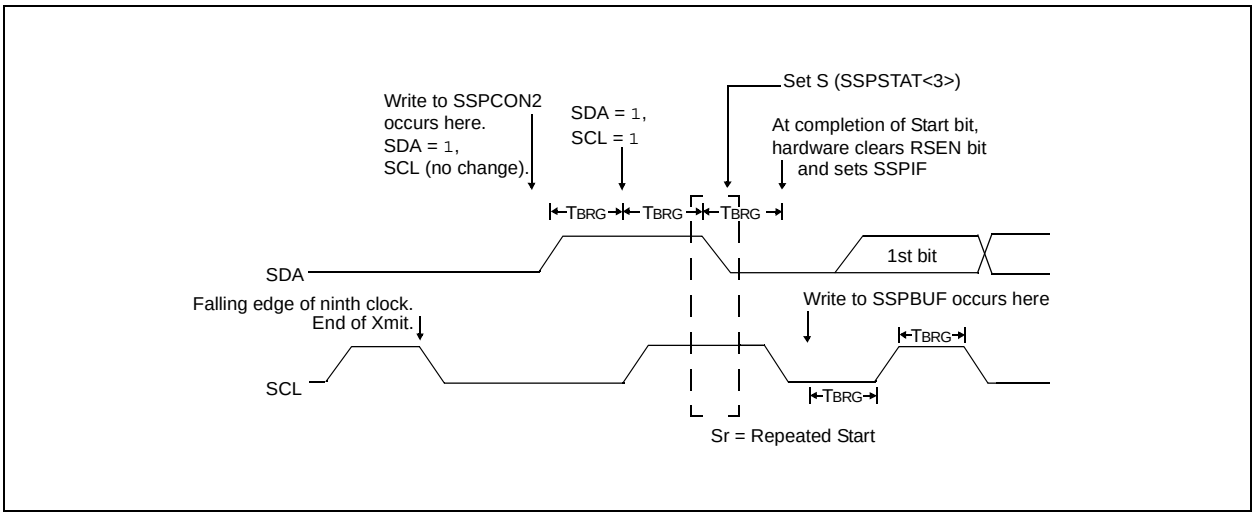
Immediately following the SSPIF bit getting set, the user may write the SSPBUF with the 7-bit address in 7-bit mode or the default first address in 10-bit mode. After the first eight bits are transmitted and an ACK is received, the user may then transmit an additional eight bits of address (10-bit mode) or eight bits of data (7-bit mode).

10.4.9.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a Repeated Start sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

Note: Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing of the lower 5 bits of SSPCON2 is disabled until the Repeated Start condition is complete.

FIGURE 10-20: REPEAT START CONDITION WAVEFORM



10.4.10 I²C MASTER MODE TRANSMISSION

Transmission of a data byte, a 7-bit address or the other half of a 10-bit address, is accomplished by simply writing a value to the SSPBUF register. This action will set the Buffer Full flag bit, BF, and allow the Baud Rate Generator to begin counting and start the next transmission. Each bit of address/data will be shifted out onto the SDA pin after the falling edge of SCL is asserted (see data hold time specification parameter #106). SCL is held low for one Baud Rate Generator rollover count (TBRG). Data should be valid before SCL is released high (see data setup time specification parameter #107). When the SCL pin is released high, it is held that way for TBRG. The data on the SDA pin must remain stable for that duration and some hold time after the next falling edge of SCL. After the eighth bit is shifted out (the falling edge of the eighth clock), the BF flag is cleared and the master releases SDA. This allows the slave device being addressed to respond with an $\overline{ACK}$ bit during the ninth bit time, if an address match occurred or if data was received properly. The status of $\overline{ACK}$ is written into the ACKDT bit on the falling edge of the ninth clock. If the master receives an Acknowledge, the Acknowledge Status bit, ACKSTAT, is cleared. If not, the bit is set. After the ninth clock, the SSPIF bit is set and the master clock (Baud Rate Generator) is suspended until the next data byte is loaded into the SSPBUF, leaving SCL low and SDA unchanged (Figure 10-21).

After the write to the SSPBUF, each bit of address will be shifted out on the falling edge of SCL until all seven address bits and the R/$\overline{W}$ bit are completed. On the falling edge of the eighth clock, the master will deassert the SDA pin, allowing the slave to respond with an Acknowledge. On the falling edge of the ninth clock, the master will sample the SDA pin to see if the address was recognized by a slave. The status of the ACK bit is loaded into the ACKSTAT status bit (SSPCON2<6>). Following the falling edge of the ninth clock transmission of the address, the SSPIF is set, The BF flag Is cleared and the Baud Rate Generator is turned off until another write to the SSPBUF takes place, holding SCL low and allowing SDA to float.

10.4.10.1 BF Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the BF bit (SSPSTAT<0>) is set when the CPU writes to SSPBUF and is cleared when all 8 bits are shifted out.

10.4.10.2 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a transmit is already in progress (i.e., SSPSR is still shifting out a data byte), the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

WCOL must be cleared in software.

10.4.10.3 ACKSTAT Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the ACKSTAT bit (SSPCON2<6>) is cleared when the slave has sent an Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$ = 0) and is set when the slave does not Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$ = 1). A slave sends an Acknowledge when it has recognized its address (including a general call) or when the slave has properly received its data.

10.4.11 I²C MASTER MODE RECEPTION

Master mode reception is enabled by programming the Receive Enable bit, RCEN (SSPCON2<3>).

Note:	The MSSP module must be in an Idle state before the RCEN bit is set or the RCEN bit will be disregarded.

The Baud Rate Generator begins counting and on each rollover, the state of the SCL pin changes (high-to-low/low-to-high) and data is shifted into the SSPSR. After the falling edge of the eighth clock, the receive enable flag is automatically cleared, the contents of the SSPSR are loaded into the SSPBUF, the BF flag bit is set, the SSPIF flag bit is set and the Baud Rate Generator is suspended from counting, holding SCL low. The MSSP is now in Idle state, awaiting the next command. When the buffer is read by the CPU, the BF flag bit is automatically cleared. The user can then send an Acknowledge bit at the end of reception by setting the Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit, ACKEN (SSPCON2<4>).

10.4.11.1 BF Status Flag

In receive operation, the BF bit is set when an address or data byte is loaded into SSPBUF from SSPSR. It is cleared when the SSPBUF register is read.

10.4.11.2 SSPOV Status Flag

In receive operation, the SSPOV bit is set when 8 bits are received into the SSPSR and the BF flag bit is already set from a previous reception.

10.4.11.3 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a receive is already in progress (i.e., SSPSR is still shifting in a data byte), the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

FIGURE 10-21: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (TRANSMISSION, 7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS)

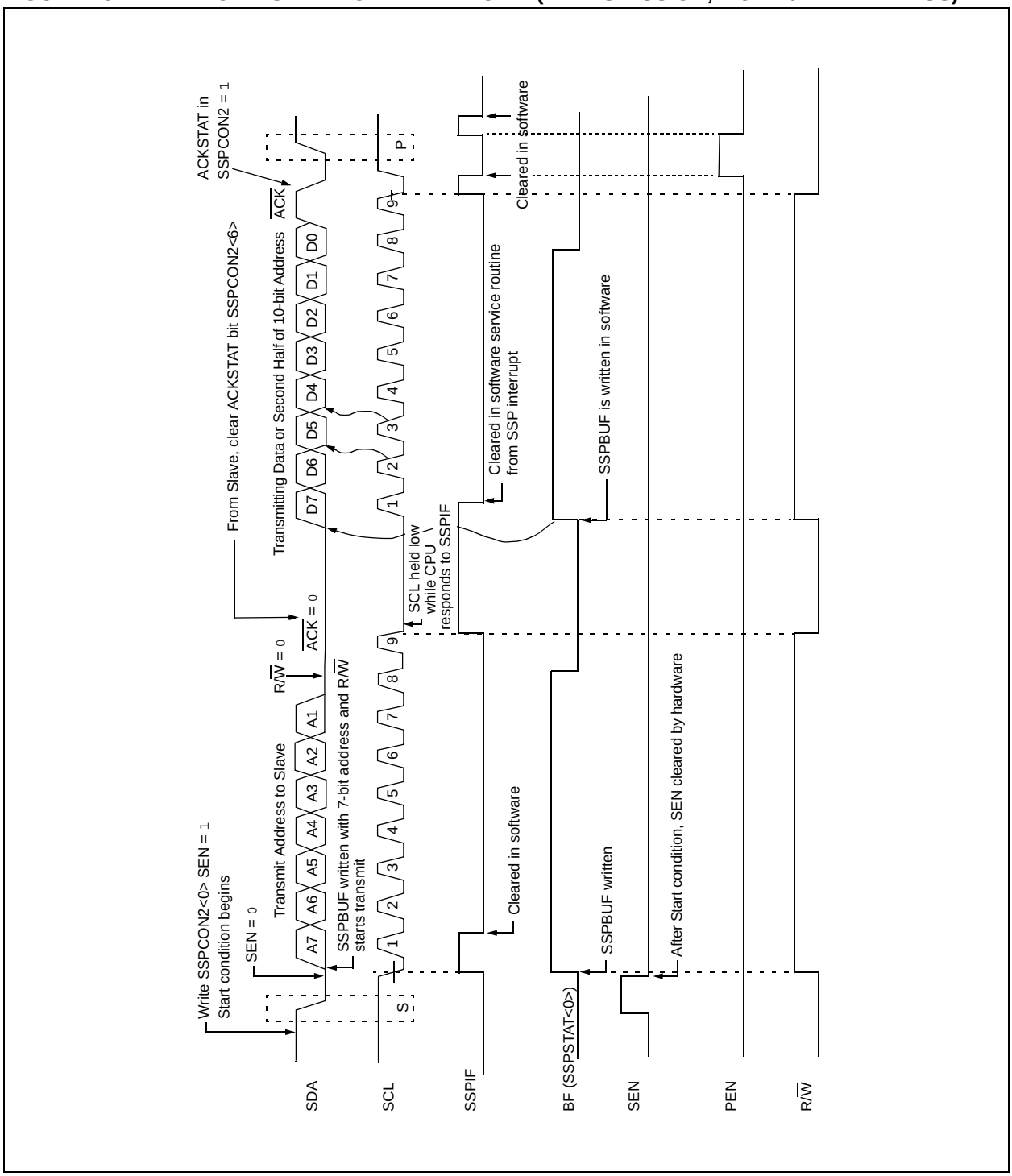
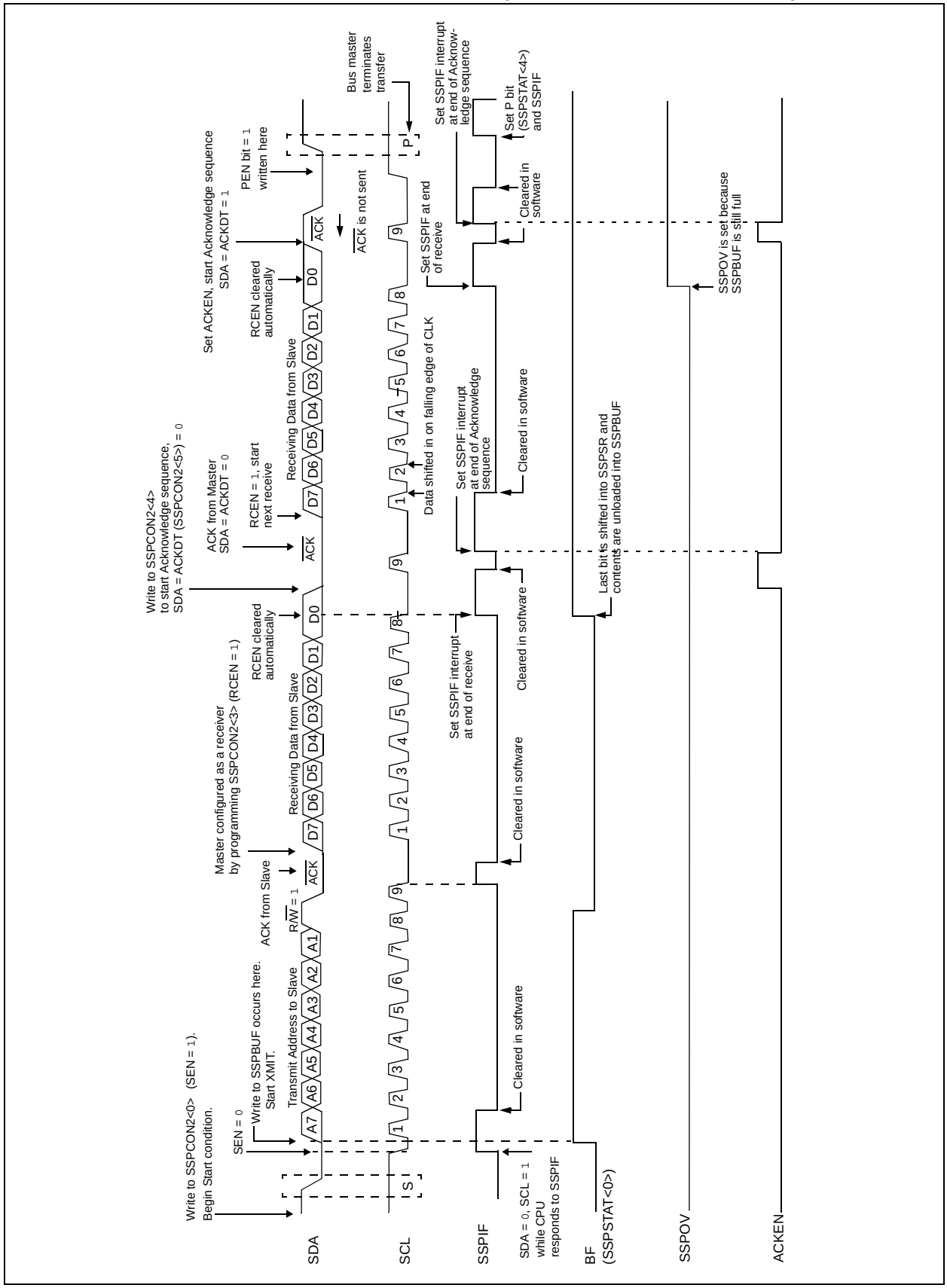


FIGURE 10-22: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)



10.4.12 ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE TIMING

An Acknowledge sequence is enabled by setting the Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit, ACKEN (SSPCON2<4>). When this bit is set, the SCL pin is pulled low and the contents of the Acknowledge data bit are presented on the SDA pin. If the user wishes to generate an Acknowledge, then the ACKDT bit should be cleared. If not, the user should set the ACKDT bit before starting an Acknowledge sequence. The Baud Rate Generator then counts for one rollover period (TBRG) and the SCL pin is deasserted (pulled high). When the SCL pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the Baud Rate Generator counts for TBRG. The SCL pin is then pulled low. Following this, the ACKEN bit is automatically cleared, the Baud Rate Generator is turned off and the MSSP module then goes into Idle mode (Figure 10-23).

10.4.12.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when an Acknowledge sequence is in progress, then WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

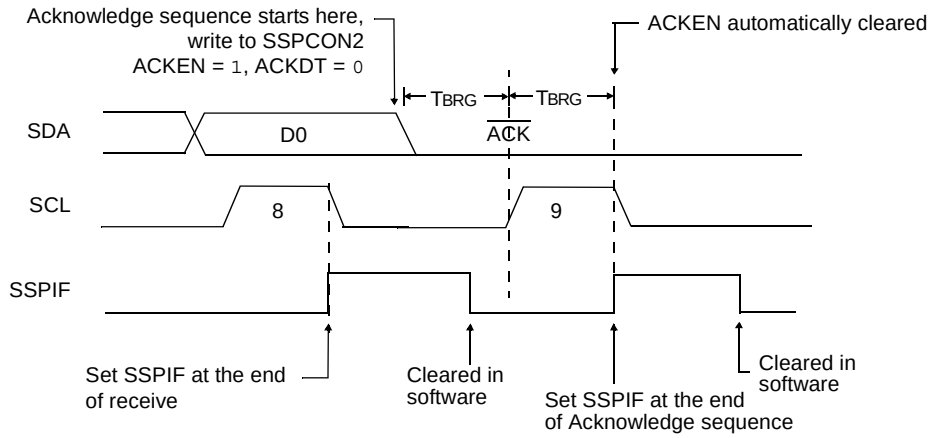
10.4.13 STOP CONDITION TIMING

A Stop bit is asserted on the SDA pin at the end of a receive/transmit by setting the Stop Sequence Enable bit, PEN (SSPCON2<2>). At the end of a receive/transmit, the SCL line is held low after the falling edge of the ninth clock. When the PEN bit is set, the master will assert the SDA line low. When the SDA line is sampled low, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded and counts down to '0'. When the Baud Rate Generator times out, the SCL pin will be brought high and one TBRG (Baud Rate Generator rollover count) later, the SDA pin will be deasserted. When the SDA pin is sampled high while SCL is high, the P bit (SSPSTAT<4>) is set. A TBRG later, the PEN bit is cleared and the SSPIF bit is set (Figure 10-24).

10.4.13.1 WCOL Status Flag

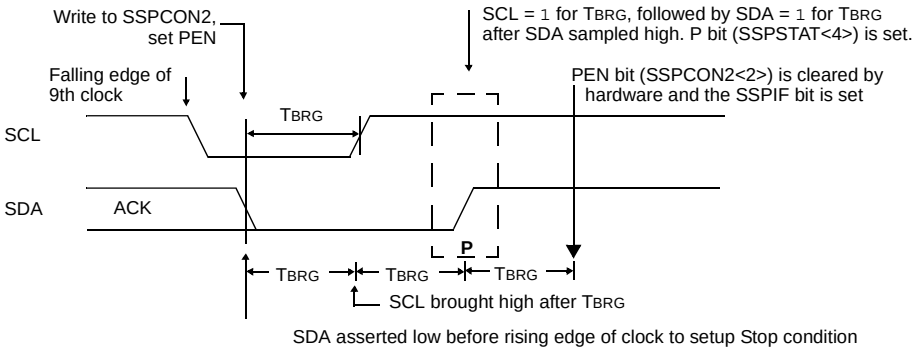
If the user writes the SSPBUF when a Stop sequence is in progress, then the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

FIGURE 10-23: ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE WAVEFORM



Note: TBRG = one Baud Rate Generator period.

FIGURE 10-24: STOP CONDITION RECEIVE OR TRANSMIT MODE



Note: TBRG = one Baud Rate Generator period.

10.4.14 SLEEP OPERATION

While in Sleep mode, the I^2C module can receive addresses or data and when an address match or complete byte transfer occurs, wake the processor from Sleep (if the MSSP interrupt is enabled).

10.4.15 EFFECT OF A RESET

A Reset disables the MSSP module and terminates the current transfer.

10.4.16 MULTI-MASTER MODE

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the MSSP module is disabled. Control of the I^2C bus may be taken when the P bit (SSPSTAT<4>) is set or the bus is Idle, with both the S and P bits clear. When the bus is busy, enabling the SSP interrupt will generate the interrupt when the Stop condition occurs.

In multi-master operation, the SDA line must be monitored for arbitration to see if the signal level is at the expected output level. This check is performed in hardware with the result placed in the BCLIF bit.

The states where arbitration can be lost are:

- Address Transfer
- Data Transfer
- A Start Condition
- A Repeated Start Condition
- An Acknowledge Condition

10.4.17 MULTI-MASTER COMMUNICATION, BUS COLLISION AND BUS ARBITRATION

Multi-Master mode support is achieved by bus arbitration. When the master outputs address/data bits onto the SDA pin, arbitration takes place when the master outputs a '1' on SDA by letting SDA float high and another master asserts a '0'. When the SCL pin floats high, data should be stable. If the expected data on SDA is a '1' and the data sampled on the SDA pin = 0, then a bus collision has taken place. The master will set the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag, BCLIF, and reset the I^2C port to its Idle state (Figure 10-25).

If a transmit was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the transmission is halted, the BF flag is cleared, the SDA and SCL lines are deasserted and the SSPBUF can be written to. When the user services the bus collision Interrupt Service Routine and if the I^2C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a Start condition.

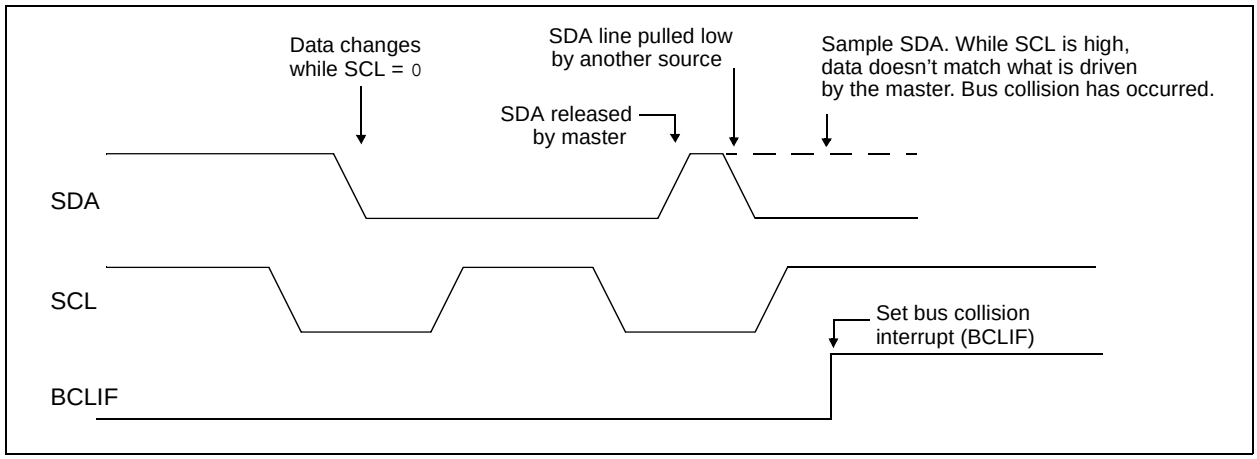
If a Start, Repeated Start, Stop or Acknowledge condition was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the condition is aborted, the SDA and SCL lines are deasserted and the respective control bits in the SSPCON2 register are cleared. When the user services the bus collision Interrupt Service Routine and if the I^2C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a Start condition.

The master will continue to monitor the SDA and SCL pins. If a Stop condition occurs, the SSPIF bit will be set.

A write to the SSPBUF will start the transmission of data at the first data bit, regardless of where the transmitter left off when the bus collision occurred.

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of Start and Stop conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. Control of the I^2C bus can be taken when the P bit is set in the SSPSTAT register or the bus is Idle and the S and P bits are cleared.

FIGURE 10-25: BUS COLLISION TIMING FOR TRANSMIT AND ACKNOWLEDGE



10.4.17.1 Bus Collision During a Start Condition

During a Start condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) SDA or SCL are sampled low at the beginning of the Start condition (Figure 10-26).

b) SCL is sampled low before SDA is asserted low (Figure 10-27).

During a Start condition, both the SDA and the SCL pins are monitored.

If the SDA pin is already low, or the SCL pin is already low, then all of the following occur:

- the Start condition is aborted,
- the BCLIF flag is set and
- the MSSP module is reset to its Idle state (Figure 10-26).

The Start condition begins with the SDA and SCL pins deasserted. When the SDA pin is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is loaded from SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. If the SCL pin is sampled low while SDA is high, a bus collision occurs because it is assumed that another master is attempting to drive a data '1' during the Start condition.

If the SDA pin is sampled low during this count, the BRG is reset and the SDA line is asserted early (Figure 10-28). If, however, a '1' is sampled on the SDA pin, the SDA pin is asserted low at the end of the BRG count. The Baud Rate Generator is then reloaded and counts down to 0 and during this time, if the SCL pin is sampled as '0', a bus collision does not occur. At the end of the BRG count, the SCL pin is asserted low.

Note:	The reason that bus collision is not a factor during a Start condition is that no two bus masters can assert a Start condition at the exact same time. Therefore, one master will always assert SDA before the other. This condition does not cause a bus collision because the two masters must be allowed to arbitrate the first address following the Start condition. If the address is the same, arbitration must be allowed to continue into the data portion, Repeated Start or Stop conditions.

FIGURE 10-26: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SDA ONLY)

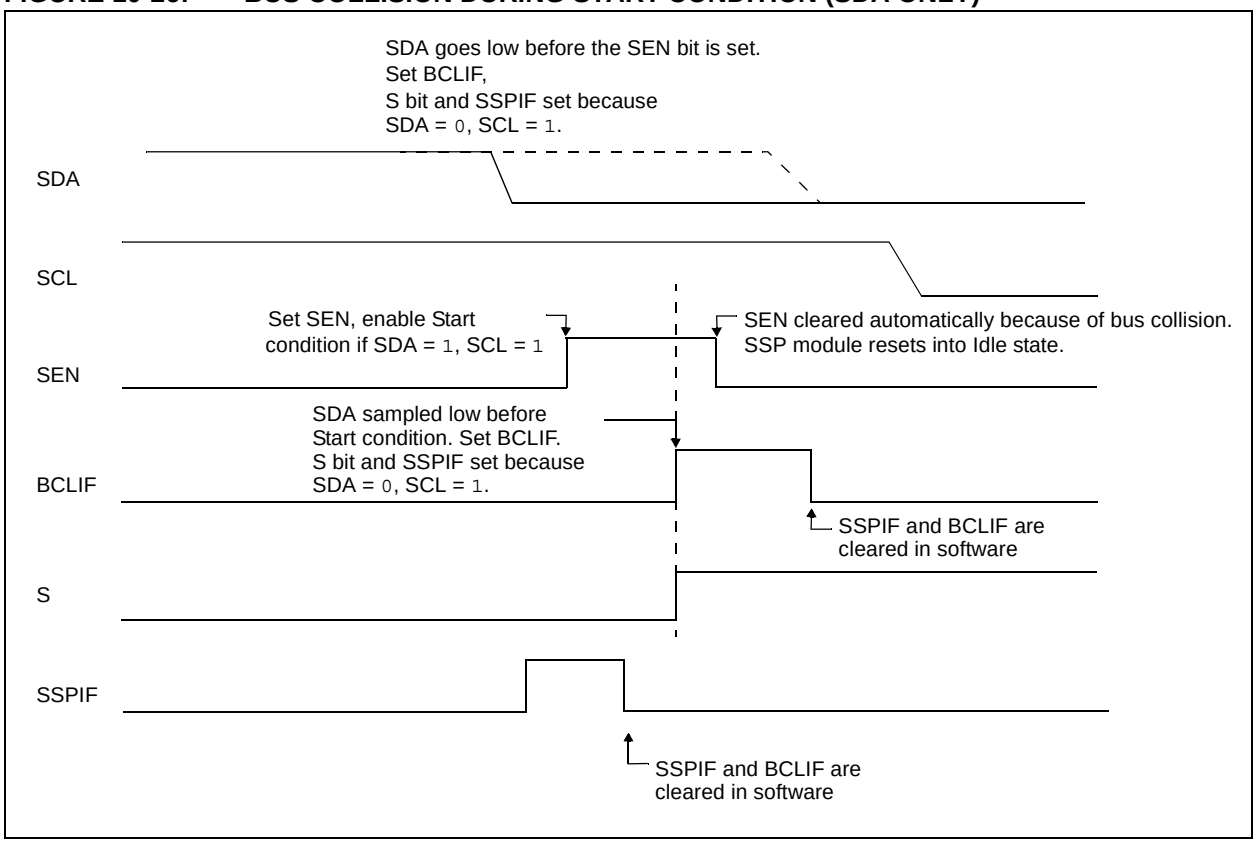


FIGURE 10-27: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SCL = 0)

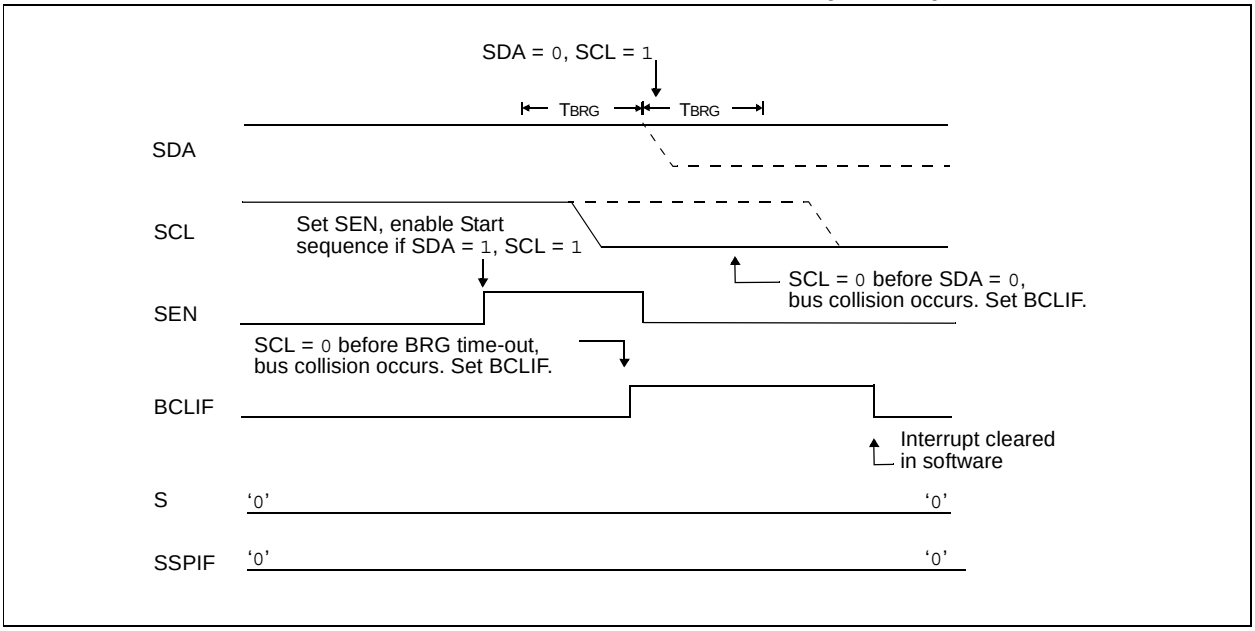
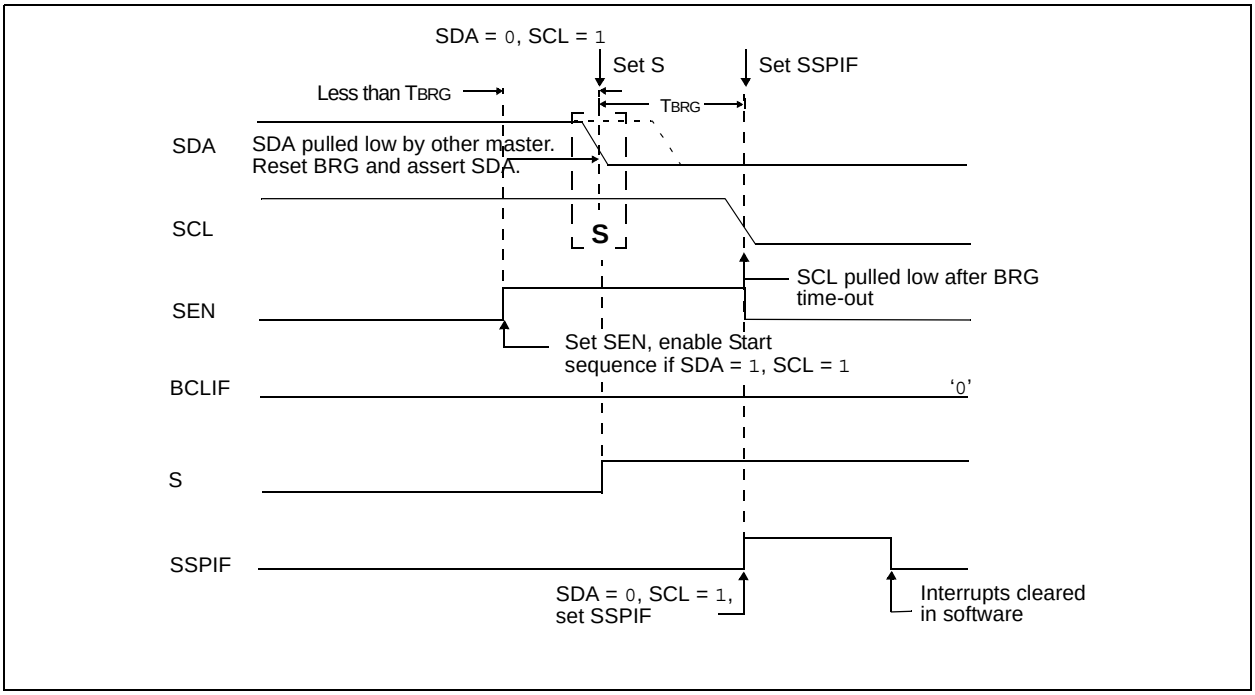


FIGURE 10-28: BRG RESET DUE TO SDA ARBITRATION DURING START CONDITION



10.4.17.2 Bus Collision During a Repeated Start Condition

During a Repeated Start condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) A low level is sampled on SDA when SCL goes from low level to high level.

b) SCL goes low before SDA is asserted low, indicating that another master is attempting to transmit a data '1'.

When the user deasserts SDA and the pin is allowed to float high, the BRG is loaded with SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. The SCL pin is then deasserted and when sampled high, the SDA pin is sampled.

If SDA is low, a bus collision has occurred (i.e., another master is attempting to transmit a data '0', see Figure 10-29). If SDA is sampled high, the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. If SDA goes from high-to-low before the BRG times out, no bus collision occurs because no two masters can assert SDA at exactly the same time.

If SCL goes from high-to-low before the BRG times out and SDA has not already been asserted, a bus collision occurs. In this case, another master is attempting to transmit a data '1' during the Repeated Start condition (Figure 10-30).

If at the end of the BRG time-out, both SCL and SDA are still high, the SDA pin is driven low and the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. At the end of the count, regardless of the status of the SCL pin, the SCL pin is driven low and the Repeated Start condition is complete.

FIGURE 10-29: BUS COLLISION DURING A REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 1)

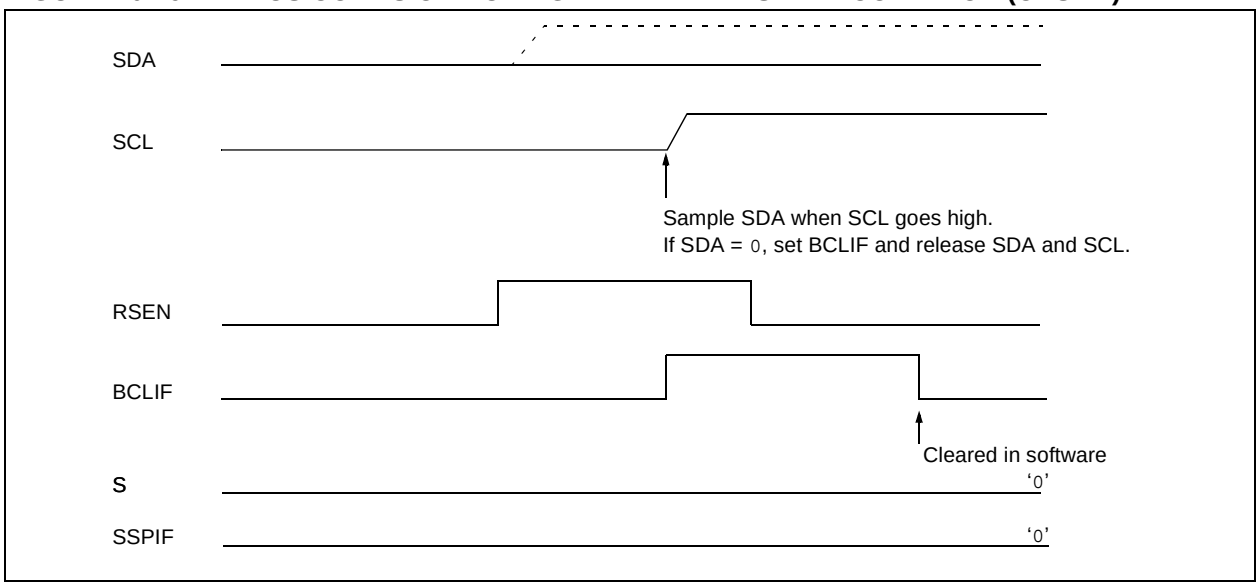
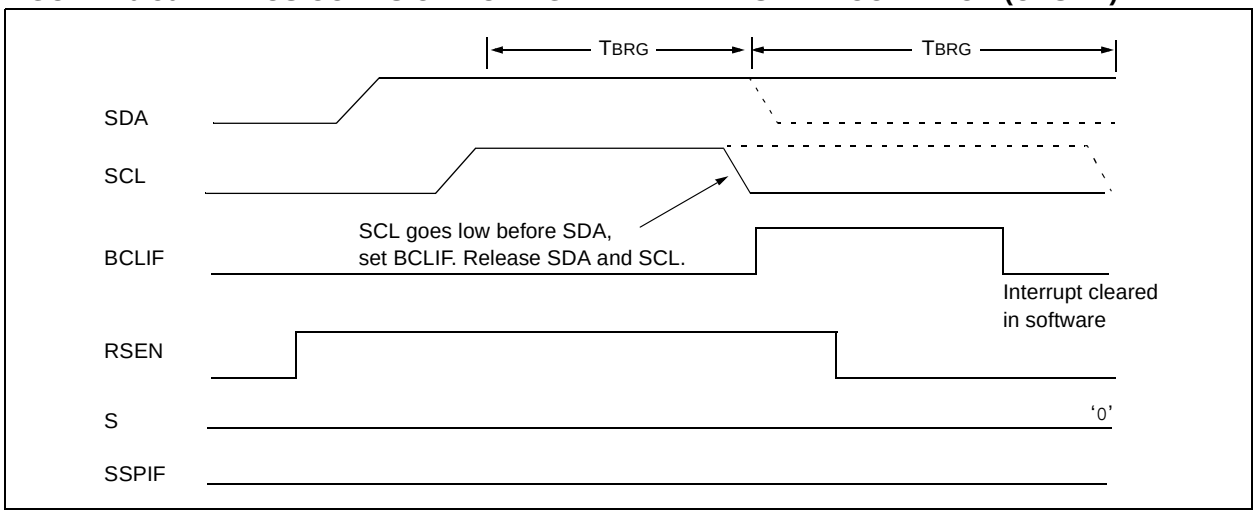


FIGURE 10-30: BUS COLLISION DURING A REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 2)



10.4.17.3 Bus Collision During a Stop Condition

Bus collision occurs during a Stop condition if:

a) After the SDA pin has been deasserted and allowed to float high, SDA is sampled low after the BRG has timed out.

b) After the SCL pin is deasserted, SCL is sampled low before SDA goes high.

The Stop condition begins with SDA asserted low. When SDA is sampled low, the SCL pin is allowed to float. When the pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the Baud Rate Generator is loaded with SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. After the BRG times out, SDA is sampled. If SDA is sampled low, a bus collision has occurred. This is due to another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 10-31). If the SCL pin is sampled low before SDA is allowed to float high, a bus collision occurs. This is another case of another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 10-32).

FIGURE 10-31: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 1)

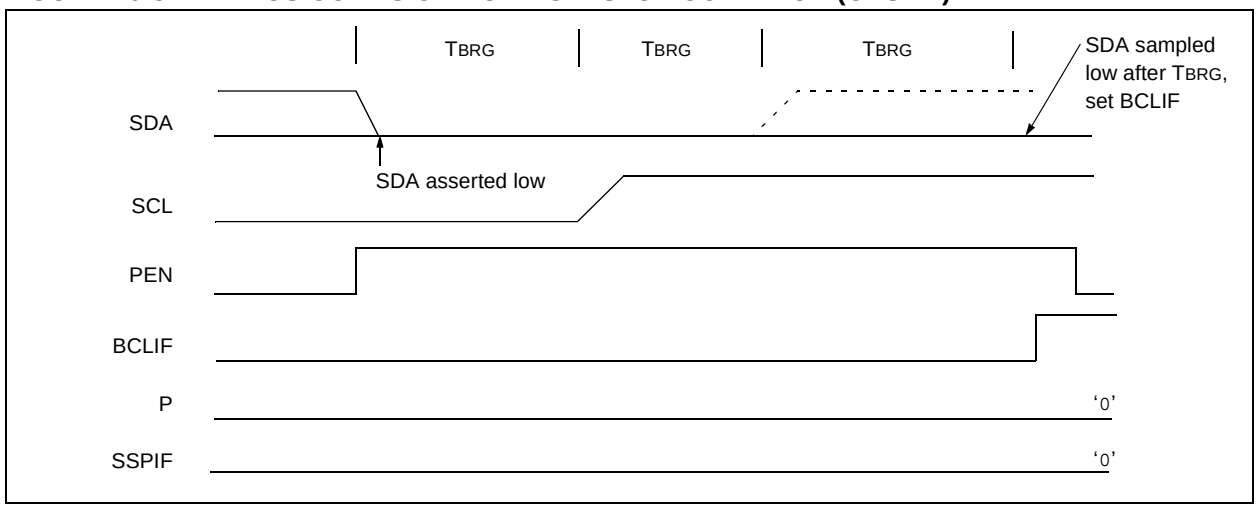
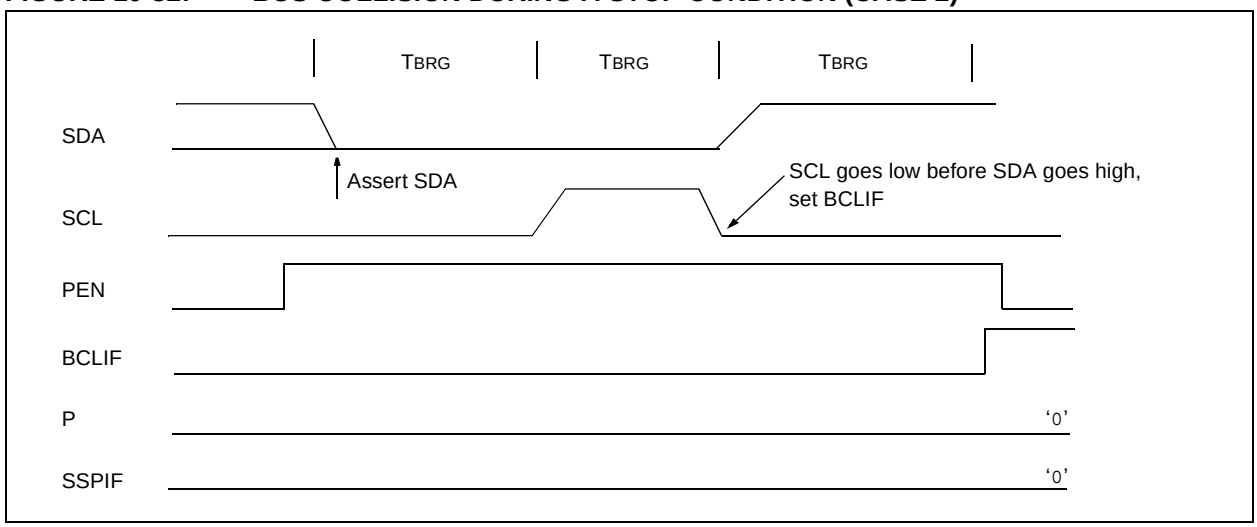


FIGURE 10-32: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 2)



NOTES:

11.0 ADDRESSABLE UNIVERSAL SYNCHRONOUS ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (USART)

The Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) module is one of the two serial I/O modules. (USART is also known as a Serial Communications Interface or SCI.) The USART can be configured as a full-duplex asynchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as CRT terminals and personal computers, or it can be configured as a half-duplex synchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as A/D or D/A integrated circuits, serial EEPROMs, etc.

The USART can be configured in the following modes:

- Asynchronous (full-duplex)
- Synchronous – Master (half-duplex)
- Synchronous – Slave (half-duplex)

Bit SPEN (RCSTA<7>) and bits TRISC<7:6> have to be set in order to configure pins RC6/TX/CK and RC7/RX/DT as the Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter.

The USART module also has a multi-processor communication capability using 9-bit address detection.

REGISTER 11-1: TXSTA: TRANSMIT STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER (ADDRESS 98h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R-1	R/W-0
CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CSRC:** Clock Source Select bit
Asynchronous mode:
Don't care.
Synchronous mode:
1 = Master mode (clock generated internally from BRG)
0 = Slave mode (clock from external source)

bit 6 **TX9**: 9-bit Transmit Enable bit
1 = Selects 9-bit transmission
0 = Selects 8-bit transmission

bit 5 **TXEN**: Transmit Enable bit
1 = Transmit enabled
0 = Transmit disabled
Note: SREN/CREN overrides TXEN in Sync mode.

bit 4 **SYNC**: USART Mode Select bit
1 = Synchronous mode
0 = Asynchronous mode

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **BRGH**: High Baud Rate Select bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = High speed
0 = Low speed
Synchronous mode:
Unused in this mode.

bit 1 **TRMT**: Transmit Shift Register Status bit
1 = TSR empty
0 = TSR full

bit 0 **TX9D:** 9th bit of Transmit Data, can be Parity bit

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 11-2: RCSTA: RECEIVE STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER (ADDRESS 18h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-x
SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SPEN:** Serial Port Enable bit
1 = Serial port enabled (configures RC7/RX/DT and RC6/TX/CK pins as serial port pins)
0 = Serial port disabled

bit 6 **RX9**: 9-bit Receive Enable bit
1 = Selects 9-bit reception
0 = Selects 8-bit reception

bit 5 **SREN**: Single Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
Don't care.
Synchronous mode – Master:
1 = Enables single receive
0 = Disables single receive
This bit is cleared after reception is complete.
Synchronous mode – Slave:
Don't care.

bit 4 **CREN**: Continuous Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Enables continuous receive
0 = Disables continuous receive
Synchronous mode:
1 = Enables continuous receive until enable bit CREN is cleared (CREN overrides SREN)
0 = Disables continuous receive

bit 3 **ADDEN:** Address Detect Enable bit
Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 1):
1 = Enables address detection, enables interrupt and load of the receive buffer when RSR<8> is set
0 = Disables address detection, all bytes are received and ninth bit can be used as parity bit

bit 2 **FERR**: Framing Error bit
1 = Framing error (can be updated by reading RCREG register and receiving next valid byte)
0 = No framing error

bit 1 **OERR**: Overrun Error bit
1 = Overrun error (can be cleared by clearing bit CREN)
0 = No overrun error

bit 0 **RX9D:** 9th bit of Received Data (can be parity bit, but must be calculated by user firmware)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

11.1 USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The BRG supports both the Asynchronous and Synchronous modes of the USART. It is a dedicated 8-bit Baud Rate Generator. The SPBRG register controls the period of a free-running 8-bit timer. In Asynchronous mode, bit BRGH (TXSTA<2>) also controls the baud rate. In Synchronous mode, bit BRGH is ignored. Table 11-1 shows the formula for computation of the baud rate for different USART modes, which only apply in Master mode (internal clock).

Given the desired baud rate and FOSC, the nearest integer value for the SPBRG register can be calculated using the formula in Table 11-1. From this, the error in baud rate can be determined.

It may be advantageous to use the high baud rate (BRGH = 1), even for slower baud clocks. This is because the FOSC/(16(X + 1)) equation can reduce the baud rate error in some cases.

Writing a new value to the SPBRG register causes the BRG timer to be reset (or cleared). This ensures the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before outputting the new baud rate.

11.1.1 SAMPLING

The data on the RC7/RX/DT pin is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine if a high or a low level is present at the RX pin.

TABLE 11-1: BAUD RATE FORMULA

SYNC	BRGH = 0 (Low Speed)	BRGH = 1 (High Speed)
0	(Asynchronous) Baud Rate = FOSC/(64(X + 1))	Baud Rate = FOSC/(16(X + 1))
1	(Synchronous) Baud Rate = FOSC/(4(X + 1))	N/A

X = value in SPBRG (0 to 255)

TABLE 11-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH BAUD RATE GENERATOR

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the BRG.

TABLE 11-3: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 0)

BAUD RATE (K)	Fosc = 20 MHz			Fosc = 16 MHz			Fosc = 10 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
1.2	1.221	1.75	255	1.202	0.17	207	1.202	0.17	129
2.4	2.404	0.17	129	2.404	0.17	103	2.404	0.17	64
9.6	9.766	1.73	31	9.615	0.16	25	9.766	1.73	15
19.2	19.531	1.72	15	19.231	0.16	12	19.531	1.72	7
28.8	31.250	8.51	9	27.778	3.55	8	31.250	8.51	4
33.6	34.722	3.34	8	35.714	6.29	6	31.250	6.99	4
57.6	62.500	8.51	4	62.500	8.51	3	52.083	9.58	2
HIGH	1.221	-	255	0.977	-	255	0.610	-	255
LOW	312.500	-	0	250.000	-	0	156.250	-	0

BAUD RATE (K)	Fosc = 4 MHz			Fosc = 3.6864 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	0.300	0	207	0.3	0	191
1.2	1.202	0.17	51	1.2	0	47
2.4	2.404	0.17	25	2.4	0	23
9.6	8.929	6.99	6	9.6	0	5
19.2	20.833	8.51	2	19.2	0	2
28.8	31.250	8.51	1	28.8	0	1
33.6	-	-	-	-	-	-
57.6	62.500	8.51	0	57.6	0	0
HIGH	0.244	-	255	0.225	-	255
LOW	62.500	-	0	57.6	-	0

TABLE 11-4: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 1)

BAUD RATE (K)	Fosc = 20 MHz			Fosc = 16 MHz			Fosc = 10 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
1.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
2.4	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.441	1.71	255
9.6	9.615	0.16	129	9.615	0.16	103	9.615	0.16	64
19.2	19.231	0.16	64	19.231	0.16	51	19.531	1.72	31
28.8	29.070	0.94	42	29.412	2.13	33	28.409	1.36	21
33.6	33.784	0.55	36	33.333	0.79	29	32.895	2.10	18
57.6	59.524	3.34	20	58.824	2.13	16	56.818	1.36	10
HIGH	4.883	-	255	3.906	-	255	2.441	-	255
LOW	1250.000	-	0	1000.000		0	625.000	-	0

BAUD RATE (K)	Fosc = 4 MHz			Fosc = 3.6864 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	-	-	-	-	-	-
1.2	1.202	0.17	207	1.2	0	191
2.4	2.404	0.17	103	2.4	0	95
9.6	9.615	0.16	25	9.6	0	23
19.2	19.231	0.16	12	19.2	0	11
28.8	27.798	3.55	8	28.8	0	7
33.6	35.714	6.29	6	32.9	2.04	6
57.6	62.500	8.51	3	57.6	0	3
HIGH	0.977	-	255	0.9	-	255
LOW	250.000	-	0	230.4	-	0

TABLE 11-5: INTRC BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 0)

BAUD RATE (K)	Fosc = 8 MHz			Fosc = 4 MHz			Fosc = 2 MHz			Fosc = 1 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	—	—	0.300	0	207	0.300	0	103	0.300	0	51
1.2	1.202	+0.16	103	1.202	+0.16	51	1.202	+0.16	25	1.202	+0.16	12
2.4	2.404	+0.16	51	2.404	+0.16	25	2.404	+0.16	12	2.232	-6.99	6
9.6	9.615	+0.16	12	8.929	-6.99	6	10.417	+8.51	2	NA	—	—
19.2	17.857	-6.99	6	20.833	+8.51	2	NA	—	—	NA	—	—
28.8	31.250	+8.51	3	31.250	+8.51	1	31.250	+8.51	0	NA	—	—
38.4	41.667	+8.51	2	NA	—	—	NA	—	—	NA	—	—
57.6	62.500	+8.51	1	62.500	8.51	0	NA	—	—	NA	—	—

TABLE 11-6: INTRC BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 1)

BAUD RATE (K)	Fosc = 8 MHz			Fosc = 4 MHz			Fosc = 2 MHz			Fosc = 1 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	—	—	NA	—	—	NA	—	—	0.300	0	207
1.2	NA	—	—	1.202	+0.16	207	1.202	+0.16	103	1.202	+0.16	51
2.4	2.404	+0.16	207	2.404	+0.16	103	2.404	+0.16	51	2.404	+0.16	25
9.6	9.615	+0.16	51	9.615	+0.16	25	9.615	+0.16	12	8.929	-6.99	6
19.2	19.231	+0.16	25	19.231	+0.16	12	17.857	-6.99	6	20.833	+8.51	2
28.8	29.412	+2.12	16	27.778	-3.55	8	31.250	+8.51	3	31.250	+8.51	1
38.4	38.462	+0.16	12	35.714	-6.99	6	41.667	+8.51	2	NA	—	—
57.6	55.556	-3.55	8	62.500	+8.51	3	62.500	+8.51	1	62.500	+8.51	0

11.2 USART Asynchronous Mode

In this mode, the USART uses standard Non-Return-to-Zero (NRZ) format (one Start bit, eight or nine data bits and one Stop bit). The most common data format is 8-bits. An on-chip, dedicated, 8-bit Baud Rate Generator can be used to derive standard baud rate frequencies from the oscillator. The USART transmits and receives the LSb first. The transmitter and receiver are functionally independent but use the same data format and baud rate. The Baud Rate Generator produces a clock, either x16 or x64 of the bit shift rate, depending on bit BRGH (TXSTA<2>). Parity is not supported by the hardware but can be implemented in software (and stored as the ninth data bit). Asynchronous mode is stopped during Sleep.

Asynchronous mode is selected by clearing bit, SYNC (TXSTA<4>).

The USART asynchronous module consists of the following important elements:

- Baud Rate Generator
- Sampling Circuit
- Asynchronous Transmitter
- Asynchronous Receiver

11.2.1 USART ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMITTER

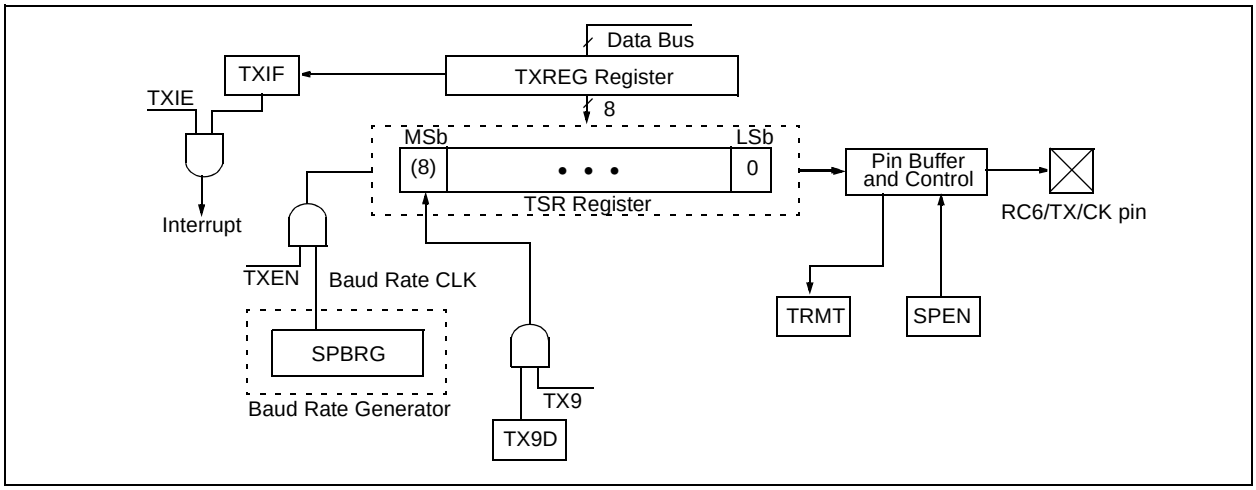
The USART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 11-1. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (Serial) Shift Register (TSR). The Shift register obtains its data from the Read/Write Transmit Buffer register, TXREG. The TXREG register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the Stop bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the Stop bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREG register (if available). Once the TXREG register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one TCY), the TXREG register is empty and flag bit, TXIF (PIR1<4>), is set. This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, TXIE (PIE1<4>). Flag bit TXIF will be set regardless of the state of enable bit TXIE and cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREG register. While flag bit TXIF indicates the status of the TXREG register, another bit, TRMT (TXSTA<1>), shows the status of the TSR register. Status bit TRMT is a read-only bit which is set when the TSR register is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty.

Note 1:	The TSR register is not mapped in data memory so it is not available to the user.
2:	Flag bit TXIF is set when enable bit TXEN is set. TXIF is cleared by loading TXREG.

Transmission is enabled by setting enable bit, TXEN (TXSTA<5>). The actual transmission will not occur until the TXREG register has been loaded with data and the Baud Rate Generator (BRG) has produced a shift clock (Figure 11-2). The transmission can also be started by first loading the TXREG register and then setting enable bit TXEN. Normally, when transmission is first started, the TSR register is empty. At that point, transfer to the TXREG register will result in an immediate transfer to TSR, resulting in an empty TXREG. A back-to-back transfer is thus possible (Figure 11-3). Clearing enable bit TXEN during a transmission will cause the transmission to be aborted and will reset the transmitter. As a result, the RC6/TX/CK pin will revert to high-impedance.

In order to select 9-bit transmission, transmit bit TX9 (TXSTA<6>) should be set and the ninth bit should be written to TX9D (TXSTA<0>). The ninth bit must be written before writing the 8-bit data to the TXREG register. This is because a data write to the TXREG register can result in an immediate transfer of the data to the TSR register (if the TSR is empty). In such a case, an incorrect ninth data bit may be loaded in the TSR register.

FIGURE 11-1: USART TRANSMIT BLOCK DIAGRAM



When setting up an Asynchronous Transmission, follow these steps:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high-speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH (**Section 11.1 "USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, then set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, then set transmit bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN, which will also set bit TXIF.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Load data to the TXREG register (starts transmission).
8. If using interrupts, ensure that GIE and PEIE (bits 7 and 6) of the INTCON register are set.

FIGURE 11-2: ASYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

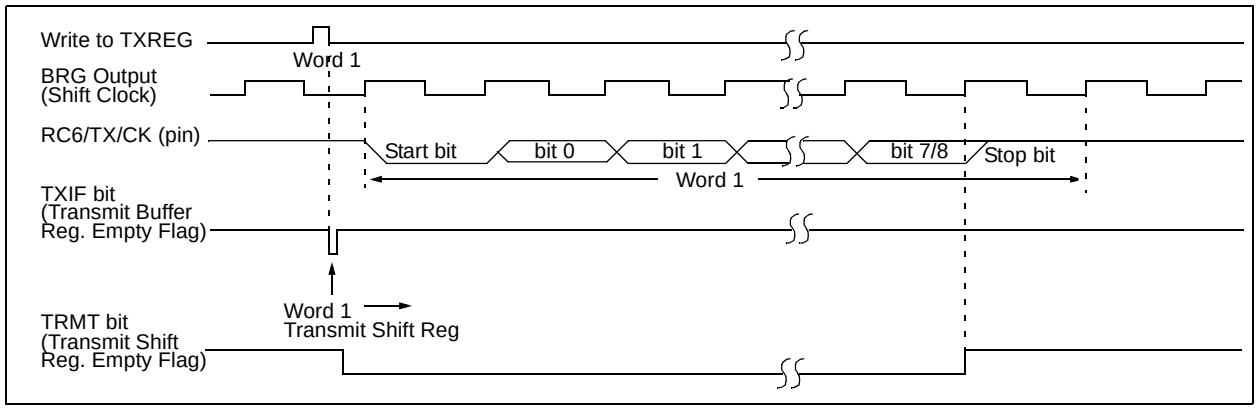
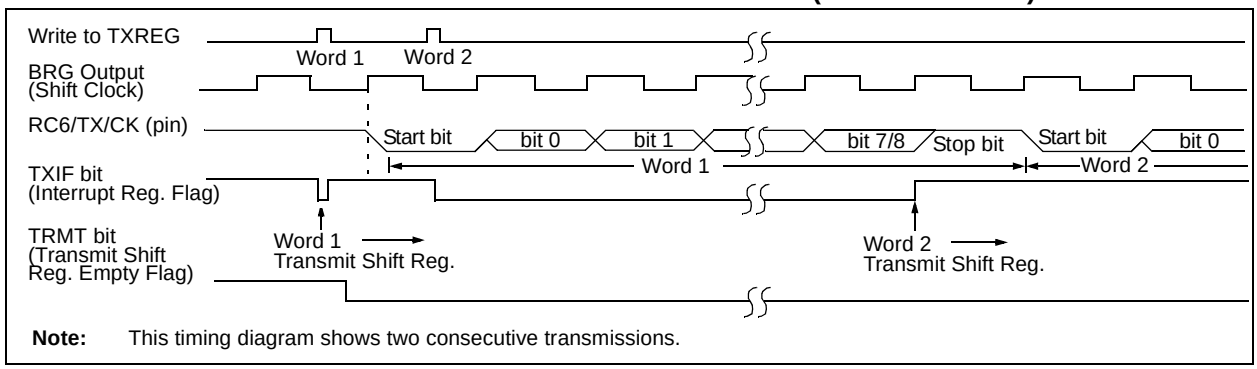


FIGURE 11-3: ASYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION (BACK TO BACK)



Note: This timing diagram shows two consecutive transmissions.

TABLE 11-7: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	R0IF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
19h	TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for asynchronous transmission.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

11.2.2 USART ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER

The receiver block diagram is shown in Figure 11-4. The data is received on the RC7/RX/DT pin and drives the data recovery block. The data recovery block is actually a high-speed shifter, operating at x16 times the baud rate; whereas, the main receive serial shifter operates at the bit rate or at FOSC.

Once Asynchronous mode is selected, reception is enabled by setting bit, CREN (RCSTA<4>).

The heart of the receiver is the Receive (Serial) Shift Register (RSR). After sampling the Stop bit, the received data in the RSR is transferred to the RCREG register (if it is empty). If the transfer is complete, flag bit, RCIF (PIR1<5>), is set. The actual interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, RCIE (PIE1<5>). Flag bit RCIF is a read-only bit which is cleared by the hardware. It is cleared when the RCREG register has been read and is empty. The RCREG is a double-buffered register (i.e., it is a two-deep FIFO). It is possible for two bytes of data to be received and transferred to the RCREG FIFO and a third byte to begin shifting to the RSR register. On the detection of the Stop bit of the third byte, if the RCREG register is still full, the Overrun Error bit, OERR (RCSTA<1>), will be set. The word in the RSR will be lost. The RCREG register can be read twice to retrieve the two bytes in the FIFO. Overrun bit OERR has to be cleared in software. This is done by resetting the receive logic (CREN is cleared and then set). If bit OERR is set, transfers from the RSR register to the RCREG register are inhibited and no further data will be received. It is, therefore, essential to clear error bit OERR if it is set. Framing Error bit, FERR (RCSTA<2>), is set if a Stop bit is detected as clear. Bit FERR and the 9th receive bit are buffered the same way as the receive data. Reading the RCREG will load bits RX9D and FERR with new values, therefore, it is essential for the user to read the RCSTA register before reading the RCREG register, in order not to lose the old FERR and RX9D information.

FIGURE 11-4: USART RECEIVE BLOCK DIAGRAM

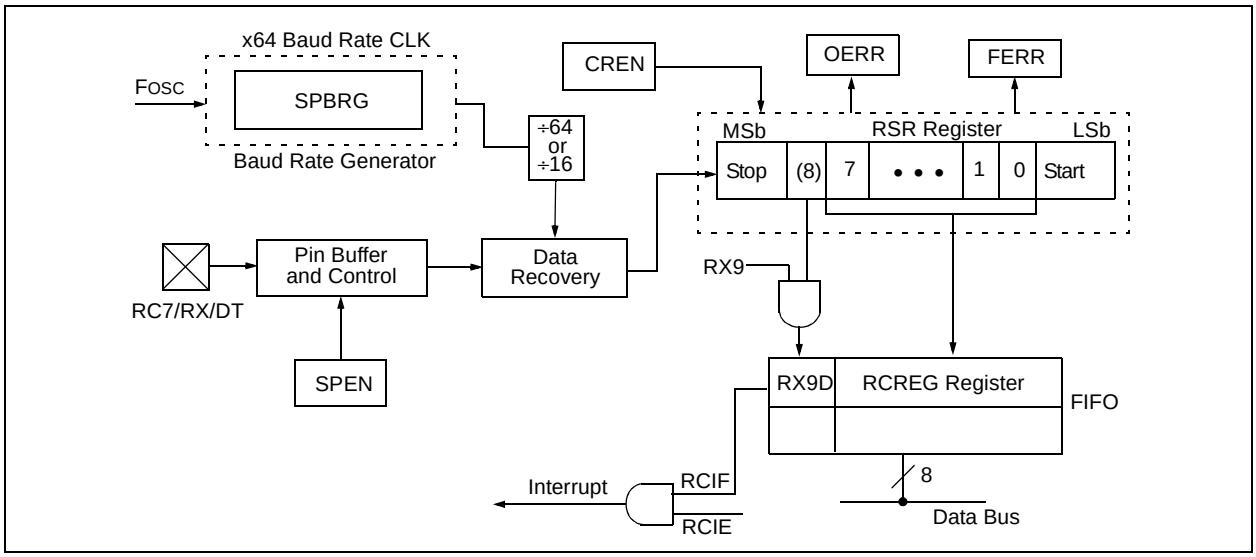
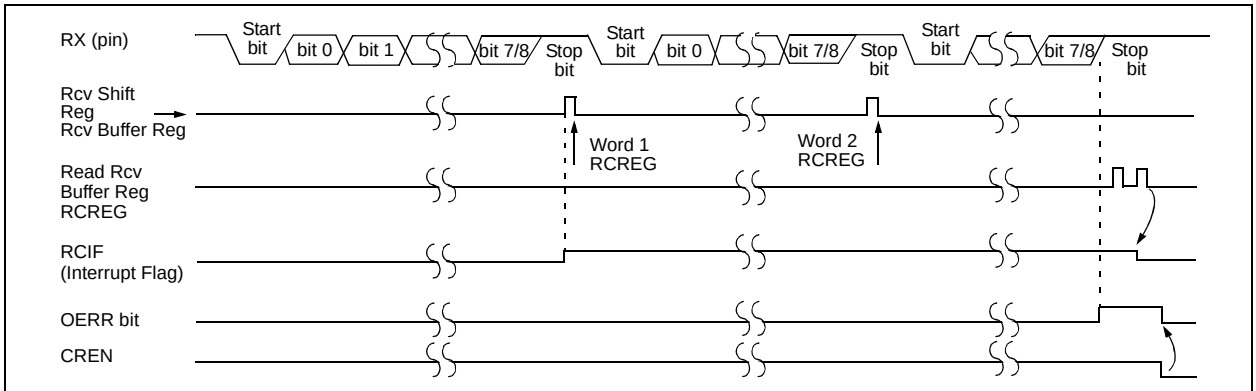


FIGURE 11-5: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION



Note: This timing diagram shows three words appearing on the RX input. The RCREG (receive buffer) is read after the third word, causing the OERR (overrun) bit to be set.

When setting up an Asynchronous Reception, follow these steps:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high-speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH (**Section 11.1 "USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, then set enable bit RCIE.
4. If 9-bit reception is desired, then set bit RX9.
5. Enable the reception by setting bit CREN.
6. Flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCIE is set.
7. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
8. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
9. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing enable bit CREN.
10. If using interrupts, ensure that GIE and PEIE (bits 7 and 6) of the INTCON register are set.

TABLE 11-8: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	R0IF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
1Ah	RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for asynchronous reception.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

11.2.3 SETTING UP 9-BIT MODE WITH ADDRESS DETECT

When setting up an Asynchronous Reception with address detect enabled:

- Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high-speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH.
- Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
- If interrupts are desired, then set enable bit RCIE.
- Set bit RX9 to enable 9-bit reception.
- Set ADDEN to enable address detect.
- Enable the reception by setting enable bit CREN.
- Flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCIE was set.
- Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit and determine if any error occurred during reception.
- Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register to determine if the device is being addressed.
- If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing enable bit CREN.
- If the device has been addressed, clear the ADDEN bit to allow data bytes and address bytes to be read into the receive buffer and interrupt the CPU.

FIGURE 11-6: USART RECEIVE BLOCK DIAGRAM

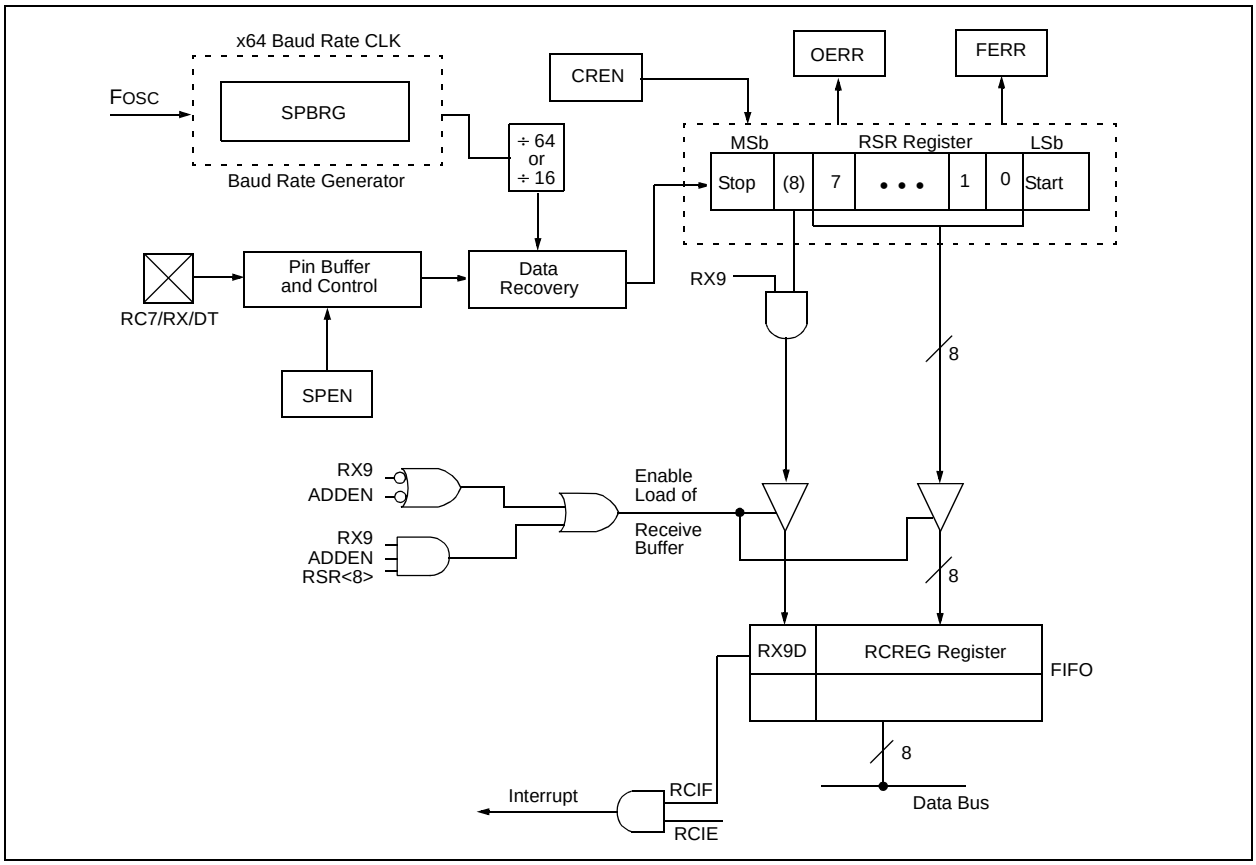
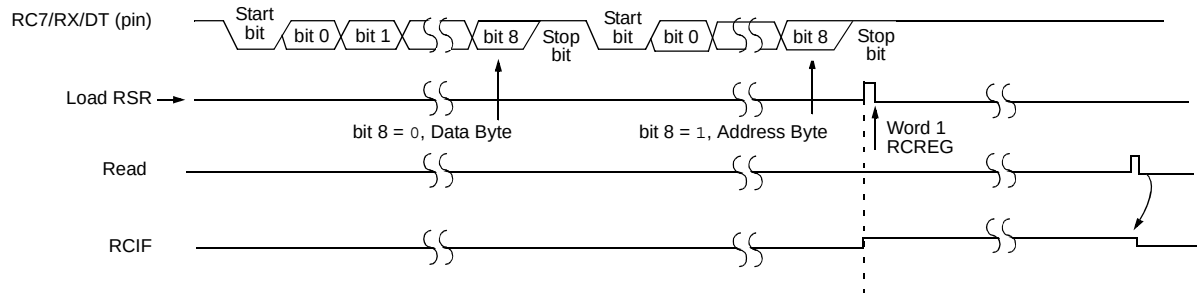
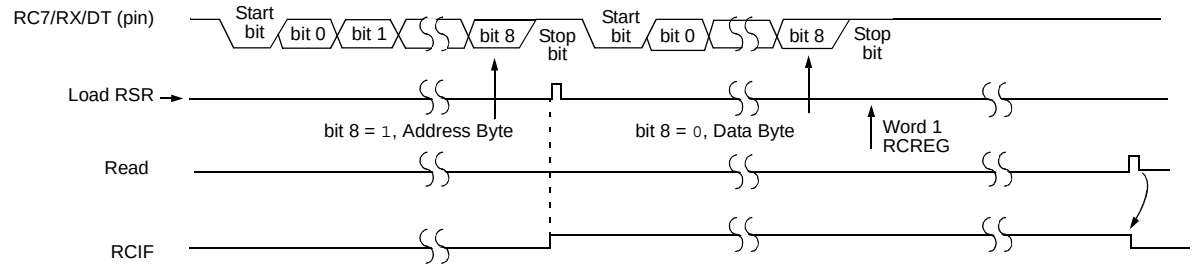


FIGURE 11-7: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION WITH ADDRESS DETECT



Note: This timing diagram shows a data byte followed by an address byte. The data byte is not read into the RCREG (receive buffer) because ADDEN = 1.

FIGURE 11-8: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION WITH ADDRESS BYTE FIRST



Note: This timing diagram shows a data byte followed by an address byte. The data byte is not read into the RCREG (receive buffer) because ADDEN was not updated and still = 0.

TABLE 11-9: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	R0IF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
1Ah	RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for asynchronous reception.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

11.3 USART Synchronous Master Mode

In Synchronous Master mode, the data is transmitted in a half-duplex manner (i.e., transmission and reception do not occur at the same time). When transmitting data, the reception is inhibited and vice versa. Synchronous mode is entered by setting bit, SYNC (TXSTA<4>). In addition, enable bit, SPEN (RCSTA<7>), is set in order to configure the RC6/TX/CK and RC7/RX/DT I/O pins to CK (clock) and DT (data) lines, respectively. The Master mode indicates that the processor transmits the master clock on the CK line. The Master mode is entered by setting bit, CSRC (TXSTA<7>).

11.3.1 USART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

The USART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 11-6. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (Serial) Shift Register (TSR). The Shift register obtains its data from the Read/Write Transmit Buffer register, TXREG. The TXREG register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the last bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the last bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREG (if available). Once the TXREG register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one TCYCLE), the TXREG is empty and interrupt bit, TXIF (PIR1<4>), is set. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, TXIE (PIE1<4>). Flag bit TXIF will be set regardless of the state of enable bit TXIE and cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREG register. While flag bit TXIF indicates the status of the TXREG register, another bit, TRMT (TXSTA<1>), shows the status of the TSR register. TRMT is a read-only bit which is set when the TSR is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty. The TSR is not mapped in data memory so it is not available to the user.

Transmission is enabled by setting enable bit, TXEN (TXSTA<5>). The actual transmission will not occur until the TXREG register has been loaded with data. The first data bit will be shifted out on the next available rising edge of the clock on the CK line. Data out is stable around the falling edge of the synchronous clock (Figure 11-9). The transmission can also be started by first loading the TXREG register and then setting bit TXEN (Figure 11-10). This is advantageous when slow baud rates are selected, since the BRG is kept in Reset when bits TXEN, CREN and SREN are clear. Setting enable bit TXEN will start the BRG, creating a shift clock immediately. Normally, when transmission is first started, the TSR register is empty so a transfer to the TXREG register will result in an immediate transfer to TSR, resulting in an empty TXREG. Back-to-back transfers are possible.

Clearing enable bit TXEN during a transmission will cause the transmission to be aborted and will reset the transmitter. The DT and CK pins will revert to high-impedance. If either bit CREN or bit SREN is set during a transmission, the transmission is aborted and the DT pin reverts to a high-impedance state (for a reception). The CK pin will remain an output if bit CSRC is set (internal clock). The transmitter logic, however, is not reset, although it is disconnected from the pins. In order to reset the transmitter, the user has to clear bit TXEN. If bit SREN is set (to interrupt an on-going transmission and receive a single word), then after the single word is received, bit SREN will be cleared and the serial port will revert back to transmitting since bit TXEN is still set. The DT line will immediately switch from High-Impedance Receive mode to transmit and start driving. To avoid this, bit TXEN should be cleared.

In order to select 9-bit transmission, the TX9 (TXSTA<6>) bit should be set and the ninth bit should be written to bit TX9D (TXSTA<0>). The ninth bit must be written before writing the 8-bit data to the TXREG register. This is because a data write to the TXREG can result in an immediate transfer of the data to the TSR register (if the TSR is empty). If the TSR was empty and the TXREG was written before writing the “new” TX9D, the “present” value of bit TX9D is loaded.

Steps to follow when setting up a Synchronous Master Transmission:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate (**Section 11.1 “USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.
8. If using interrupts, ensure that GIE and PEIE (bits 7 and 6) of the INTCON register are set.

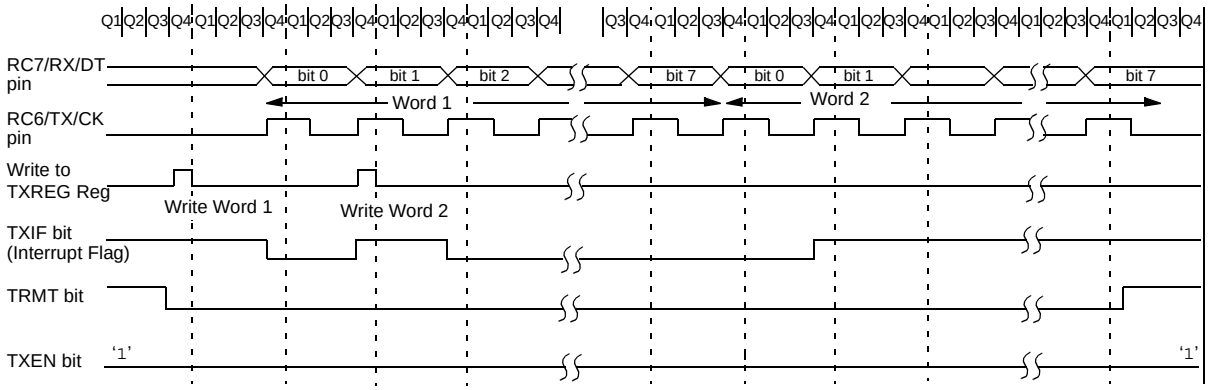
TABLE 11-10: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	R0IF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
19h	TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous master transmission.

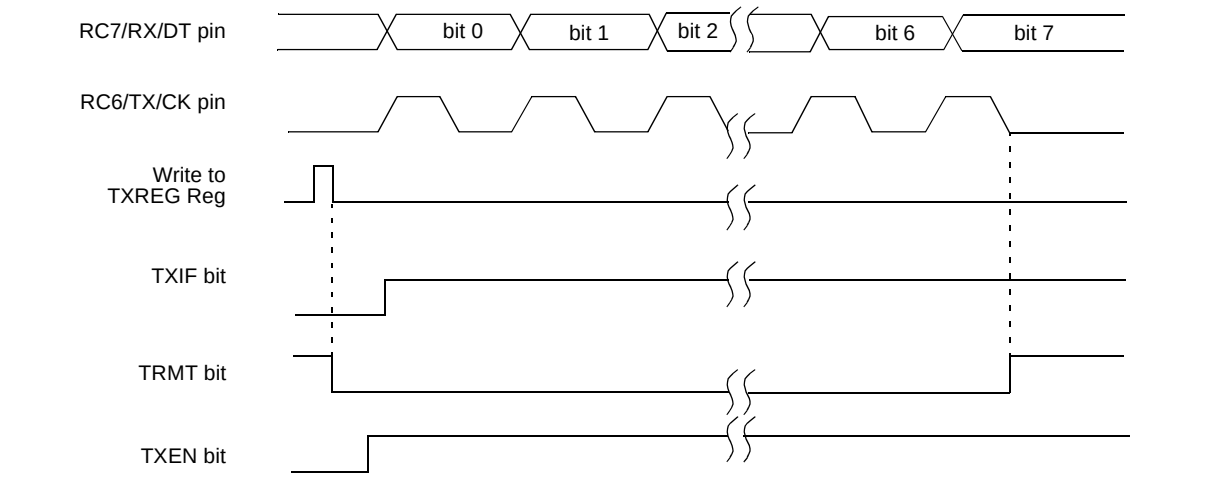
Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

FIGURE 11-9: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION



Note: Sync Master mode, SPBRG = 0. Continuous transmission of two 8-bit words.

FIGURE 11-10: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (THROUGH TXEN)



11.3.2 USART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Once Synchronous mode is selected, reception is enabled by setting either enable bit, SREN (RCSTA<5>) or enable bit, CREN (RCSTA<4>). Data is sampled on the RC7/RX/DT pin on the falling edge of the clock. If enable bit SREN is set, then only a single word is received. If enable bit CREN is set, the reception is continuous until CREN is cleared. If both bits are set, CREN takes precedence. After clocking the last bit, the received data in the Receive Shift Register (RSR) is transferred to the RCREG register (if it is empty). When the transfer is complete, interrupt flag bit, RCIF (PIR1<5>), is set. The actual interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, RCIE (PIE1<5>). Flag bit RCIF is a read-only bit which is reset by the hardware. In this case, it is reset when the RCREG register has been read and is empty. The RCREG is a double-buffered register (i.e., it is a two-deep FIFO). It is possible for two bytes of data to be received and transferred to the RCREG FIFO and a third byte to begin shifting into the RSR register. On the clocking of the last bit of the third byte, if the RCREG register is still full, then Overrun Error bit, OERR (RCSTA<1>), is set. The word in the RSR will be lost. The RCREG register can be read twice to retrieve the two bytes in the FIFO. Bit OERR has to be cleared in software (by clearing bit CREN). If bit OERR is set, transfers from the RSR to the RCREG are inhibited so it is essential to clear bit OERR if it is set. The ninth receive bit is buffered the same way as the receive data. Reading the RCREG register will load bit RX9D with a new value, therefore, it is essential for the user to read the RCSTA register before reading RCREG, in order not to lose the old RX9D information.

When setting up a Synchronous Master Reception:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate (**Section 11.1 “USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. Ensure bits CREN and SREN are clear.
4. If interrupts are desired, then set enable bit RCIE.
5. If 9-bit reception is desired, then set bit RX9.
6. If a single reception is required, set bit SREN. For continuous reception, set bit CREN.
7. Interrupt flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCIE was set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
9. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
10. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.
11. If using interrupts, ensure that GIE and PEIE (bits 7 and 6) of the INTCON register are set.

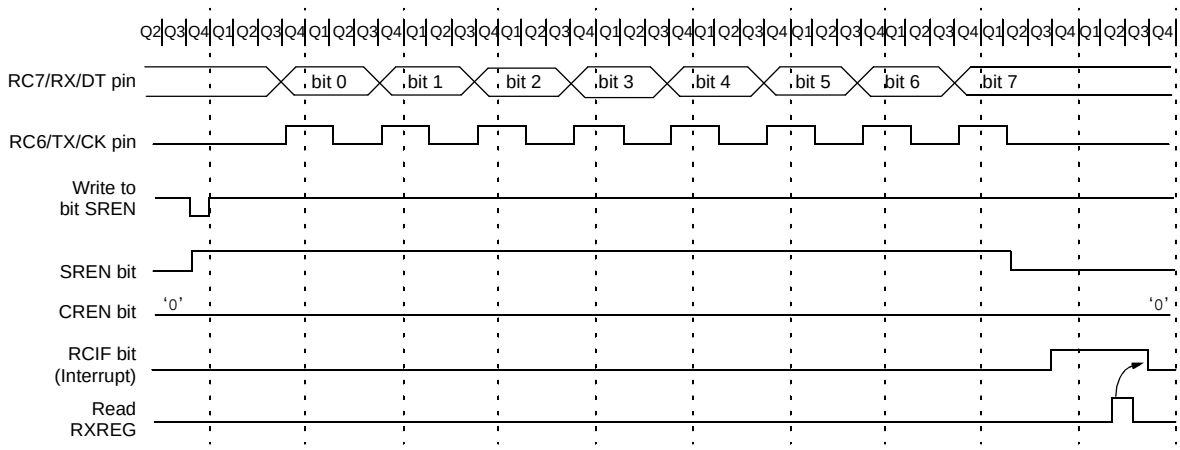
TABLE 11-11: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	R0IF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
1Ah	RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous master reception.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

FIGURE 11-11: SYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION (MASTER MODE, SREN)



Note: Timing diagram demonstrates Sync Master mode with bit SREN = 1 and bit BRG = 0.

11.4 USART Synchronous Slave Mode

Synchronous Slave mode differs from the Master mode in the fact that the shift clock is supplied externally at the RC6/TX/CK pin (instead of being supplied internally in Master mode). This allows the device to transfer or receive data while in Sleep mode. Slave mode is entered by clearing bit, CSRC (TXSTA<7>).

11.4.1 USART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMIT

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical, except in the case of the Sleep mode.

If two words are written to the TXREG and then the SLEEP instruction is executed, the following will occur:

a) The first word will immediately transfer to the TSR register and transmit.
b) The second word will remain in TXREG register.
c) Flag bit TXIF will not be set.
d) When the first word has been shifted out of TSR, the TXREG register will transfer the second word to the TSR and flag bit TXIF will now be set.
e) If enable bit TXIE is set, the interrupt will wake the chip from Sleep and if the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector (0004h).

When setting up a Synchronous Slave Transmission, follow these steps:

1. Enable the synchronous slave serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. Clear bits CREN and SREN.
3. If interrupts are desired, then set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, then set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting enable bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.
8. If using interrupts, ensure that GIE and PEIE (bits 7 and 6) of the INTCON register are set.

TABLE 11-12: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	R0IF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
19h	TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous slave transmission.
Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on 28-pin devices; always maintain these bits clear.

11.4.2 USART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical, except in the case of the Sleep mode. Bit SREN is a “don't care” in Slave mode.

If receive is enabled by setting bit CREN prior to the SLEEP instruction, then a word may be received during Sleep. On completely receiving the word, the RSR register will transfer the data to the RCREG register and if enable bit RCIE bit is set, the interrupt generated will wake the chip from Sleep. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector (0004h).

When setting up a Synchronous Slave Reception, follow these steps:

1. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
3. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
4. To enable reception, set enable bit CREN.
5. Flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCIE was set.
6. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
7. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
8. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.
9. If using interrupts, ensure that GIE and PEIE (bits 7 and 6) of the INTCON register are set.

TABLE 11-13: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	R0IF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
18h	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
1Ah	RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
98h	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
99h	SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous slave reception.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on 28-pin devices, always maintain these bits clear.

NOTES:

12.0 ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER (A/D) MODULE

The Analog-to-Digital (A/D) Converter module has 11 inputs for the PIC16F737 and PIC16F767 devices and 14 for the PIC16F747 AND PIC16F777 devices.

The A/D allows conversion of an analog input signal to a corresponding 10-bit digital number.

A new feature for the A/D converter is the addition of programmable acquisition time. This feature allows the user to select a new channel for conversion and to set the GO/DONE bit immediately. When the GO/DONE bit is set, the selected channel is sampled for the programmed acquisition time before a conversion is actually started. This removes the firmware overhead required to allow for an acquisition (sampling) period (see Register 12-3 and **Section 12.2 "Selecting and Configuring Automatic Acquisition Time"**).

The module has five registers:

- A/D Result High Register (ADRESH)
- A/D Result Low Register (ADRESL)
- A/D Control Register 0 (ADCON0)
- A/D Control Register 1 (ADCON1)
- A/D Control Register 2 (ADCON2)

The ADCON0 register, shown in Register 12-1, controls the operation of the A/D module and clock source. The ADCON1 register, shown in Register 12-2, configures the functions of the port pins, justification and voltage reference sources. The ADCON2, shown in Register 12-3, configures the programmed acquisition time.

Additional information on using the A/D module can be found in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023) and in Application Note *AN546, "Using the Analog-to-Digital (A/D) Converter"* (DS00546).

REGISTER 12-1: ADCON0: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 0 (ADDRESS 1Fh)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ADCS1	ADCS0	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	CHS3	ADON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **ADCS1:ADCS0:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bits

If ADCS2 = 0:
00 = FOSC/2
01 = FOSC/8
10 = FOSC/32
11 = FRC (clock derived from an RC oscillation)

If ADCS2 = 1:
00 = FOSC/4
01 = FOSC/16
10 = FOSC/64
11 = FRC (clock derived from an RC oscillation)

bit 5-3 **CHS<2:0>:** Analog Channel Select bits

0000 = Channel 00 (AN0)
0001 = Channel 01 (AN1)
0010 = Channel 02 (AN2)
0011 = Channel 03 (AN3)
0100 = Channel 04 (AN4)
0101 = Channel 05 (AN5)**(1)**
0110 = Channel 06 (AN6)**(1)**
0111 = Channel 07 (AN7)**(1)**
1000 = Channel 08 (AN8)
1001 = Channel 09 (AN9)
1010 = Channel 10 (AN10)
1011 = Channel 11 (AN11)
1100 = Channel 12 (AN12)
1101 = Channel 13 (AN13)
111x = Unused

Note 1: Selecting AN5 through AN7 on the 28-pin product variant (PIC16F737 and PIC16F767) will result in a full-scale conversion as unimplemented channels are connected to VDD.

bit 2 **GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$:** A/D Conversion Status bit

1 = A/D conversion cycle in progress. Setting this bit starts an A/D conversion cycle. This bit is automatically cleared by hardware when the A/D conversion has completed.
0 = A/D conversion completed/not in progress

bit 1 **CHS<3>:** Analog Channel Select bit (see bit 5-3 for bit settings)

bit 0 **ADON:** A/D Conversion Status bit

1 = A/D converter module is operating
0 = A/D converter is shut-off and consumes no operating current

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 12-2: ADCON1: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 1 (ADDRESS 9Fh)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ADFM	ADCS2	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **ADFM:** A/D Result Format Select bit
1 = Right justified. Six Most Significant bits of ADRESH are read as '0'.
0 = Left justified. Six Least Significant bits of ADRESL are read as '0'.

bit 6 **ADCS2:** A/D Clock Divide by 2 Select bit
1 = A/D clock source is divided by two when system clock is used
0 = Disabled

bit 5 **VCFG1:** Voltage Reference Configuration bit 1
0 = V_{REF-} is connected to V_{SS}
1 = V_{REF-} is connected to external V_{REF-} (RA2)

bit 4 **VCFG0:** Voltage Reference Configuration bit 0
0 = V_{REF+} is connected to V_{DD}
1 = V_{REF+} is connected to external V_{REF+} (RA3)

bit 3-0 **PCFG<3:0>:** A/D Port Configuration bits

	AN13	AN12	AN11	AN10	AN9	AN8	AN7	AN6	AN5	AN4	AN3	AN2	AN1	AN0
0000	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0001	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0010	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0011	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0100	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0101	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0110	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0111	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
1000	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
1001	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A
1010	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A
1011	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A
1100	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A
1101	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A
1110	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A
1111	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D

Legend: A = Analog input, D = Digital I/O

Note: AN5 through AN7 are only available on the 40-pin product variant (PIC16F747 and PIC16F777).

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 12-3: ADCON2: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 2

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	—	ACQT2	ACQT1	ACQT0	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-3 **ACQT<2:0>:** A/D Acquisition Time Select bits

000 = 0(1)
001 = 2 TAD
010 = 4 TAD
011 = 6 TAD
100 = 8 TAD
101 = 12TAD
110 = 16 TAD
111 = 20 TAD

Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

bit 2-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

The analog reference voltage is software selectable to either the device's positive and negative supply voltage (VDD and VSS) or the voltage level on the RA3/AN3/VREF+ and RA2/AN2/VREF-/CVREF pins.

The A/D converter has a unique feature of being able to operate while the device is in Sleep mode. To operate in Sleep, the A/D conversion clock must be derived from the A/D's internal RC oscillator.

The output of the sample and hold is the input into the converter, which generates the result via successive approximation.

A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. This forces the A/D module to be turned off and any conversion in progress is aborted.

Each port pin associated with the A/D converter can be configured as an analog input or as a digital I/O. The ADRESH and ADRESL registers contain the result of the A/D conversion. When the A/D conversion is complete, the result is loaded into the ADRESH/ADRESL registers, the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (ADCON0 register) is cleared and A/D Interrupt Flag bit, ADIF, is set. The block diagram of the A/D module is shown in Figure 12-1.

The value in the ADRESH/ADRESL registers is not modified for a Power-on Reset. The ADRESH/ADRESL registers will contain unknown data after a Power-on Reset.

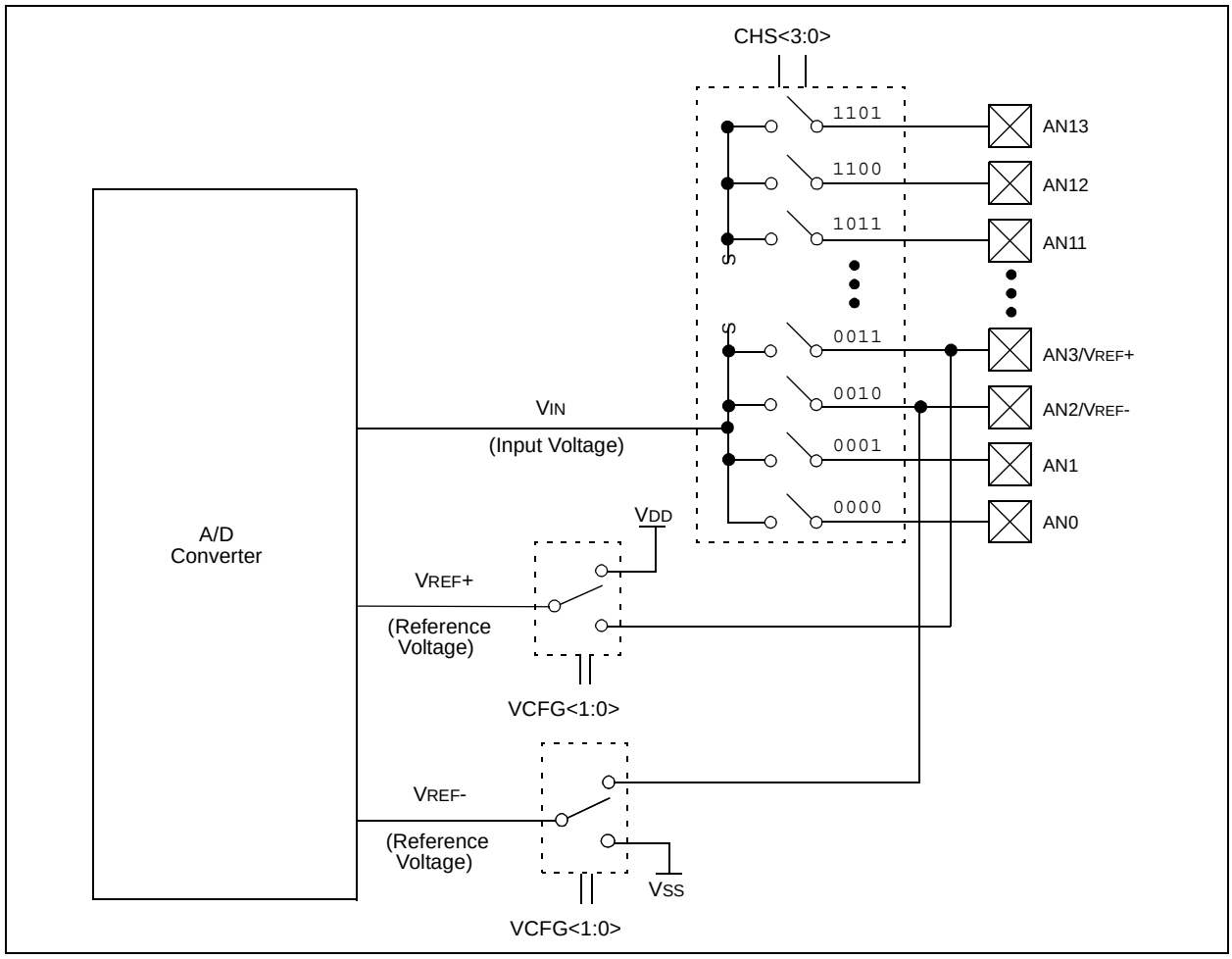
After the A/D module has been configured as desired, the selected channel must be acquired before the conversion is started. The analog input channels must have their corresponding TRIS bits selected as an input. To determine acquisition time, see **Section 12.1 "A/D Acquisition Requirements"**. After this acquisition time has elapsed, the A/D conversion can be started. An acquisition time can be programmed to occur between setting the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit and the actual start of the conversion.

The following steps should be followed to do an A/D conversion:

1. Configure the A/D module:
   - Configure analog pins, voltage reference and digital I/O (ADCON1)
   - Select A/D input channel (ADCON0)
   - Select A/D acquisition time (ADCON2)
   - Select A/D conversion clock (ADCON0)
   - Turn on A/D module (ADCON0)
2. Configure A/D interrupt (if desired):
   - Clear ADIF bit
   - Set ADIE bit
   - Set PEIE bit
   - Set GIE bit
3. Wait the required acquisition time (if required).
4. Start conversion:
   - Set GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (ADCON0 register)
5. Wait for A/D conversion to complete, by either:
   - Polling for the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit to be cleared

   OR
   - Waiting for the A/D interrupt
6. Read A/D Result registers (ADRESH:ADRESL); clear bit ADIF, if required.
7. For next conversion, go to step 1 or step 2, as required. The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. A minimum wait of 2 TAD is required before the next acquisition starts.

FIGURE 12-1: A/D BLOCK DIAGRAM



12.1 A/D Acquisition Requirements

For the A/D converter to meet its specified accuracy, the charge holding capacitor (CHOLD) must be allowed to fully charge to the input channel voltage level. The analog input model is shown in Figure 12-2. The source impedance (RS) and the internal sampling switch (RSS) impedance directly affect the time required to charge the capacitor CHOLD. The sampling switch (RSS) impedance varies over the device voltage (VDD), see Figure 12-2. **The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 2.5 kΩ.** As the impedance is decreased, the acquisition time may be decreased. After the analog input channel is selected (changed), this acquisition must be done before the conversion can be started.

To calculate the minimum acquisition time, Equation 12-1 may be used. This equation assumes that 1/2 LSb error is used (1024 steps for the A/D). The 1/2 LSb error is the maximum error allowed for the A/D to meet its specified resolution.

To calculate the minimum acquisition time, TACQ, see the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023).

EQUATION 12-1: ACQUISITION TIME

TACQ = Amplifier Settling Time + Hold Capacitor Charging Time + Temperature Coefficient

= TAMP + TC + TCOFF
= 2 µs + TC + [(Temperature -25°C)(0.05 µs/°C)]
TC = CHOLD (RIC + RSS + RS) In(1/2047)
= -120 pF (1 kΩ + 7 kΩ + 10 kΩ) In(0.0004885)
= 16.47 µs
TACQ = 2 µs + 16.47 µs + [(50°C – 25°C)(0.05 µs/°C)
= 19.72 µs

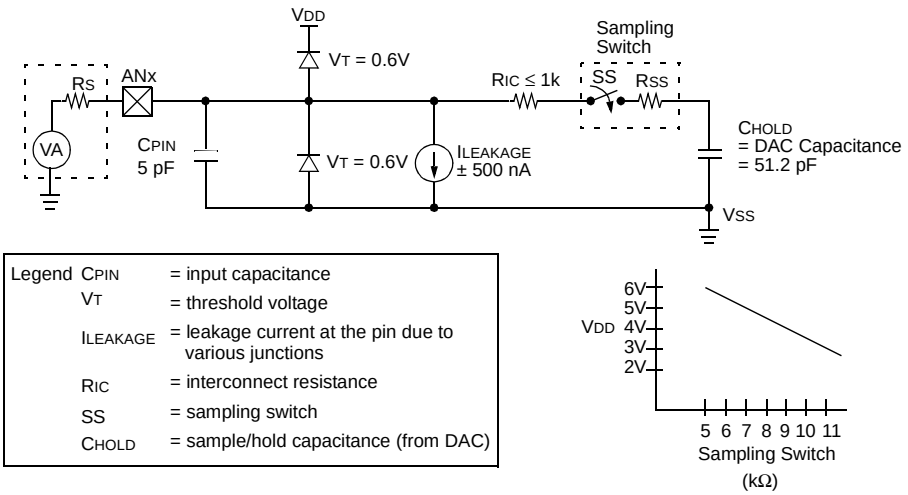
Note 1: The reference voltage (VREF) has no effect on the equation since it cancels itself out.

2: The charge holding capacitor (CHOLD) is not discharged after each conversion.

3: The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 10 kΩ. This is required to meet the pin leakage specification.

4: After a conversion has completed, a 2.0 TAD delay must complete before acquisition can begin again. During this time, the holding capacitor is not connected to the selected A/D input channel.

FIGURE 12-2: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



12.2 Selecting and Configuring Automatic Acquisition Time

The ADCON2 register allows the user to select an acquisition time that occurs each time the GO/DONE bit is set.

When the GO/DONE bit is set, sampling is stopped and a conversion begins. The user is responsible for ensuring the required acquisition time has passed between selecting the desired input channel and setting the GO/DONE bit. This occurs when the ACQT2:ACQT0 bits (ADCON2<5:3>) remain in their Reset state ('000') and is compatible with devices that do not offer programmable acquisition times.

If desired, the ACQT bits can be set to select a programmable acquisition time for the A/D module. When the GO/DONE bit is set, the A/D module continues to sample the input for the selected acquisition time, then automatically begins a conversion. Since the acquisition time is programmed, there may be no need to wait for an acquisition time between selecting a channel and setting the GO/DONE bit.

In either case, when the conversion is completed, the GO/DONE bit is cleared, the ADIF flag is set and the A/D begins sampling the currently selected channel again. If an acquisition time is programmed, there is nothing to indicate if the acquisition time has ended or if the conversion has begun.

12.3 Selecting the A/D Conversion Clock

The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. The A/D conversion requires a minimum 12 TAD per 10-bit conversion. The source of the A/D conversion clock is software selected. The seven possible options for TAD are:

- 2 TOSC
- 4 TOSC
- 8 TOSC
- 16 TOSC
- 32 TOSC
- 64 TOSC
- Internal A/D module, RC oscillator (2-6 µs)

For correct A/D conversions, the A/D conversion clock (TAD) must be selected to ensure a minimum TAD time of 1.6 µs.

Table 12-1 shows the resultant TAD times derived from the device operating frequencies and the A/D clock source selected.

TABLE 12-1: TAD vs. MAXIMUM DEVICE OPERATING FREQUENCIES (STANDARD DEVICES (F))

AD Clock Source (TAD)		Maximum Device Frequency
Operation	**ADCS2:ADCS1:ADCS0**	**Max.**
2 TOSC	000	1.25 MHz
4 TOSC	100	2.5 MHz
8 TOSC	001	5 MHz
16 TOSC	101	10 MHz
32 TOSC	010	20 MHz
64 TOSC	110	20 MHz
RC(1, 2, 3)	x11	**(Note 1)**

Note 1: The RC source has a typical TAD time of 4 µs but can vary between 2-6 µs.

2: When the device frequencies are greater than 1 MHz, the RC A/D conversion clock source is only recommended for Sleep operation.

3: For extended voltage devices (LF), please refer to **Section 18.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**.

12.4 Operation in Power Managed Modes

The selection of the automatic acquisition time and A/D conversion clock is determined in part by the clock source and frequency while in a power managed mode.

If the A/D is expected to operate while the device is in a power managed mode, the ACQT2:ACQT0 and ADCS2:ADCS0 bits in ADCON2 should be updated in accordance with the power managed mode clock that will be used. After the power managed mode is entered (either of the Power Managed Run modes), an A/D acquisition or conversion may be started. Once an acquisition or conversion is started, the device should continue to be clocked by the same power managed mode clock source until the conversion has been completed.

If the power managed mode clock frequency is less than 1 MHz, the A/D RC clock source should be selected.

Operation in Sleep mode requires the A/D RC clock to be selected. If bits ACQT2:ACQT0 are set to '000' and a conversion is started, the conversion will be delayed one instruction cycle to allow execution of the SLEEP instruction and entry to Sleep mode.

12.5 Configuring Analog Port Pins

The ADCON1, TRISA, TRISB and TRISE registers control the operation of the A/D port pins. The port pins that are desired as analog inputs must have their corresponding TRIS bits set (input). If the TRIS bit is cleared (output), the digital output level (V_{OH} or V_{OL}) will be converted.

The A/D operation is independent of the state of the CHS2:CHS0 bits and the TRIS bits.

Note 1: When reading the Port register, all pins configured as analog input channels will read as cleared (a low level). Pins configured as digital inputs will convert an analog input. Analog levels on a digitally configured input will not affect the conversion accuracy.

2: Analog levels on any pin that is defined as a digital input, but not as an analog input, may cause the digital input buffer to consume current that is out of the device's specification.

12.6 A/D Conversions

Figure 12-3 shows the operation of the A/D converter after the GO bit has been set and the ACQT2:ACQT0 bits are cleared. A conversion is started after the following instruction to allow entry into Sleep mode before the conversion begins.

Figure 12-4 shows the operation of the A/D converter after the GO bit has been set, the ACQT2:ACQT0 bits are set to '010' and a 4 TAD acquisition time is selected before the conversion starts.

Clearing the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit during a conversion will abort the current conversion. The A/D Result register pair will NOT be updated with the partially completed A/D conversion sample. This means the ADRESH:ADRESL registers will continue to contain the value of the last completed conversion (or the last value written to the ADRESH:ADRESL registers).

After the A/D conversion is completed or aborted, a 2 TAD wait is required before the next acquisition can be started. After this wait, acquisition on the selected channel is automatically started.

Note: The GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit should **NOT** be set in the same instruction that turns on the A/D.

FIGURE 12-3: A/D CONVERSION TAD CYCLES (ACQT<2:0> = 000, TACQ = 0)

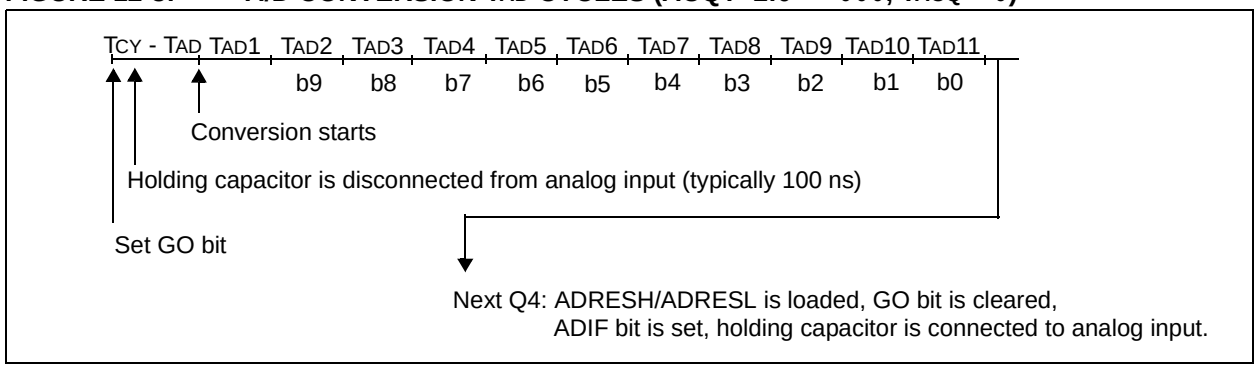
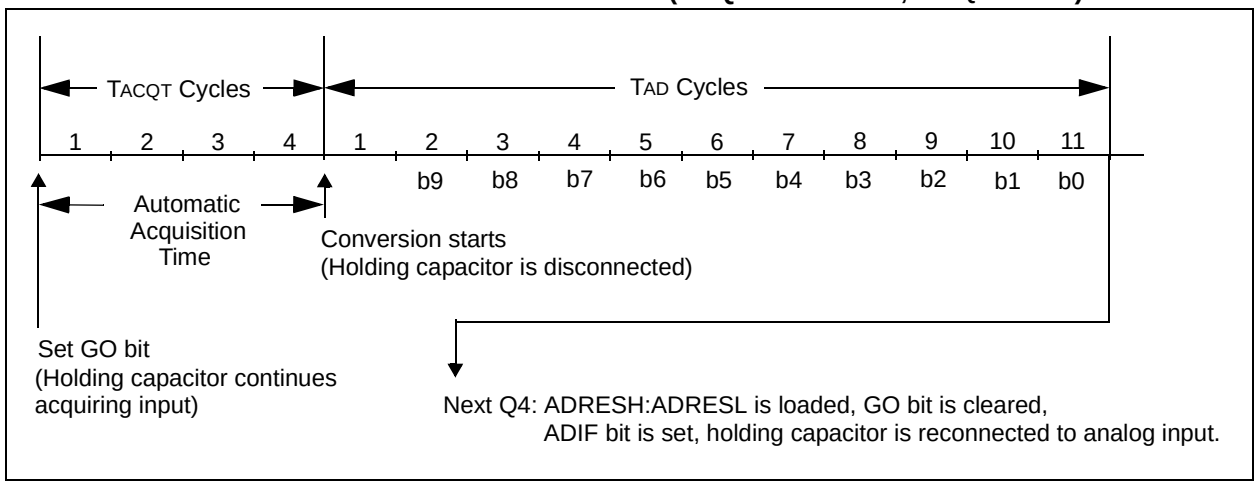


FIGURE 12-4: A/D CONVERSION TAD CYCLES (ACQT<2:0> = 010, TACQ = 4 TAD)



12.7 A/D Operation During Sleep

The A/D module can operate during Sleep mode. This requires that the A/D clock source be set to RC (ADCS1:ADCS0 = 11). When the RC clock source is selected, the A/D module waits one instruction cycle before starting the conversion. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed which eliminates all digital switching noise from the conversion. When the conversion is completed, the GO/DONE bit will be cleared and the result loaded into the ADRES register. If the A/D interrupt is enabled, the device will wake-up from Sleep. If the A/D interrupt is not enabled, the A/D module will then be turned off, although the ADON bit will remain set.

When the A/D clock source is another clock option (not RC), a SLEEP instruction will cause the present conversion to be aborted and the A/D module to be turned off, though the ADON bit will remain set.

Turning off the A/D places the A/D module in its lowest current consumption state.

Note:	For the A/D module to operate in Sleep, the A/D clock source must be set to RC (ADCS1:ADCS0 = 11). To perform an A/D conversion in Sleep, ensure the SLEEP instruction immediately follows the instruction that sets the GO/DONE bit.

12.8 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. The A/D module is disabled and any conversion in progress is aborted. All A/D input pins are configured as analog inputs.

The ADRES register will contain unknown data after a Power-on Reset.

12.9 Use of the CCP Trigger

An A/D conversion can be started by the "special event trigger" of the CCP2 module. This requires that the CCP2M3:CCP2M0 bits (CCP2CON<3:0>) be programmed as '1011' and that the A/D module is enabled (ADON bit is set). When the trigger occurs, the GO/DONE bit will be set, starting the A/D conversion, and the Timer1 counter will be reset to zero. Timer1 is reset to automatically repeat the A/D acquisition period with minimal software overhead (moving the ADRES to the desired location). The appropriate analog input channel must be selected and an appropriate acquisition time should pass before the "special event trigger" sets the GO/DONE bit (starts a conversion).

If the A/D module is not enabled (ADON is cleared), then the "special event trigger" will be ignored by the A/D module but will still reset the Timer1 counter.

TABLE 12-2: SUMMARY OF A/D REGISTERS

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh,8Bh, 10Bh, 18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Ch	PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
0Dh	PIR2	OSFIF	CMIF	LVDIF	—	BCLIF	—	CCP3IF	CCP2IF	000- 0-00	000- 0-00
8Ch	PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
8Dh	PIE2	OSFIE	CMIE	LVDIE	—	BCLIE	—	CCP3IE	CCP2IE	000- 0--0	000- 0--0
1Eh	ADRES	A/D Result Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
1Fh	ADCON0	ADCS1	ADCS0	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/DONE	CHS3	ADON	0000 0000	0000 0000
9Fh	ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	0000 000	0000 0000
05h	PORTA	RA7	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	xx0x 0000	uu0u 0000
85h	TRISA	—	—	PORTA Data Direction Register						--11 1111	--11 1111
09h	PORTE(2)	—	—	—	—	—	RE2	RE1	RE0	---- x000	---- x000
89h	TRISE(2)	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—(3)	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 1111	0000 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for A/D conversion.

Note 1: Bits PSPIE and PSPIF are reserved on the PIC16F737/767 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

2: These registers are reserved on the PIC16F737/767 devices.

3: RE3 is an input only. The state of the TRISE3 bit has no effect and will always read '1'.

13.0 COMPARATOR MODULE

The comparator module contains two analog comparators. The inputs to the comparators are multiplexed with I/O port pins RA0 through RA3, while the outputs are multiplexed to pins RA4 and RA5. The on-chip voltage reference (**Section 14.0 "Comparator Voltage Reference Module"**) can also be an input to the comparators.

The CMCON register (Register 13-1) controls the comparator input and output multiplexers. A block diagram of the various comparator configurations is shown in Figure 13-1.

REGISTER 13-1: CMCON REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **C2OUT**: Comparator 2 Output bit
When C2INV = 0:
1 = C2 VIN+ > C2 VIN-
0 = C2 VIN+ < C2 VIN-
When C2INV = 1:
1 = C2 VIN+ < C2 VIN-
0 = C2 VIN+ > C2 VIN-

bit 6 **C1OUT**: Comparator 1 Output bit
When C1INV = 0:
1 = C1 VIN+ > C1 VIN-
0 = C1 VIN+ < C1 VIN-
When C1INV = 1:
1 = C1 VIN+ < C1 VIN-
0 = C1 VIN+ > C1 VIN-

bit 5 **C2INV**: Comparator 2 Output Inversion bit
1 = C2 output inverted
0 = C2 output not inverted

bit 4 **C1INV**: Comparator 1 Output Inversion bit
1 = C1 output inverted
0 = C1 output not inverted

bit 3 **CIS**: Comparator Input Switch bit
When CM2:CM0 = 110:
1 = C1 VIN- connects to RA3/AN3
C2 VIN- connects to RA2/AN2
0 = C1 VIN- connects to RA0/AN0
C2 VIN- connects to RA1/AN1

bit 2-0 **CM2:CM0**: Comparator Mode bits
Figure 13-1 shows the Comparator modes and CM2:CM0 bit settings.

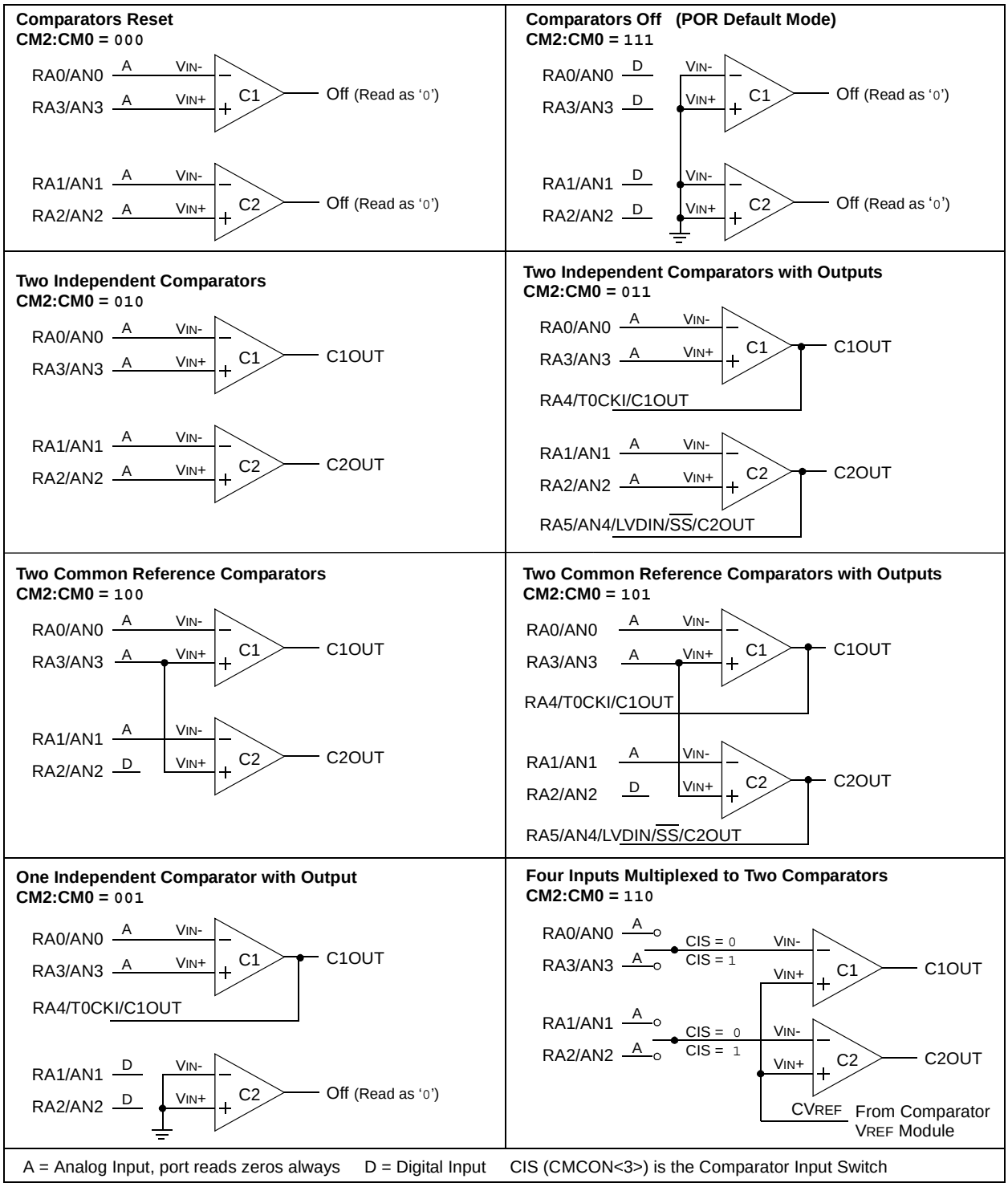
Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

13.1 Comparator Configuration

There are eight modes of operation for the comparators. The CMCON register is used to select these modes. Figure 13-1 shows the eight possible modes. The TRISA register controls the data direction of the comparator pins for each mode. If the Comparator mode is changed, the comparator output level may not be valid for the specified mode change delay shown in the Electrical Specifications (**Section 18.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**).

Note:	Comparator interrupts should be disabled during a Comparator mode change. Otherwise, a false interrupt may occur.

FIGURE 13-1: COMPARATOR I/O OPERATING MODES



A = Analog Input, port reads zeros always D = Digital Input CIS (CMCON<3>) is the Comparator Input Switch

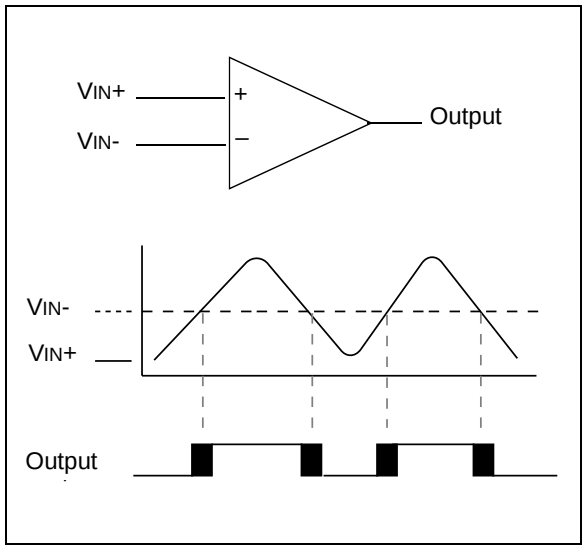
13.2 Comparator Operation

A single comparator is shown in Figure 13-2, along with the relationship between the analog input levels and the digital output. When the analog input at VIN+ is less than the analog input VIN-, the output of the comparator is a digital low level. When the analog input at VIN+ is greater than the analog input VIN-, the output of the comparator is a digital high level. The shaded areas of the output of the comparator in Figure 13-2 represent the uncertainty due to input offsets and response time.

13.3 Comparator Reference

An external or internal reference signal may be used depending on the comparator operating mode. The analog signal present at VIN- is compared to the signal at VIN+ and the digital output of the comparator is adjusted accordingly (Figure 13-2).

FIGURE 13-2: SINGLE COMPARATOR



13.3.1 EXTERNAL REFERENCE SIGNAL

When external voltage references are used, the comparator module can be configured to have the comparators operate from the same or different reference sources. However, threshold detector applications may require the same reference. The reference signal must be between VSS and VDD and can be applied to either pin of the comparator(s).

13.3.2 INTERNAL REFERENCE SIGNAL

The comparator module also allows the selection of an internally generated voltage reference for the comparators. **Section 14.0 "Comparator Voltage Reference Module"** contains a detailed description of the comparator voltage reference module that provides this signal. The internal reference signal is used when comparators are in mode CM<2:0> = 110 (Figure 13-1). In this mode, the internal voltage reference is applied to the VIN+ pin of both comparators.

13.4 Comparator Response Time

Response time is the minimum time after selecting a new reference voltage or input source, before the comparator output has a valid level. If the internal reference is changed, the maximum delay of the internal voltage reference must be considered when using the comparator outputs. Otherwise, the maximum delay of the comparators should be used (**Section 18.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**).

13.5 Comparator Outputs

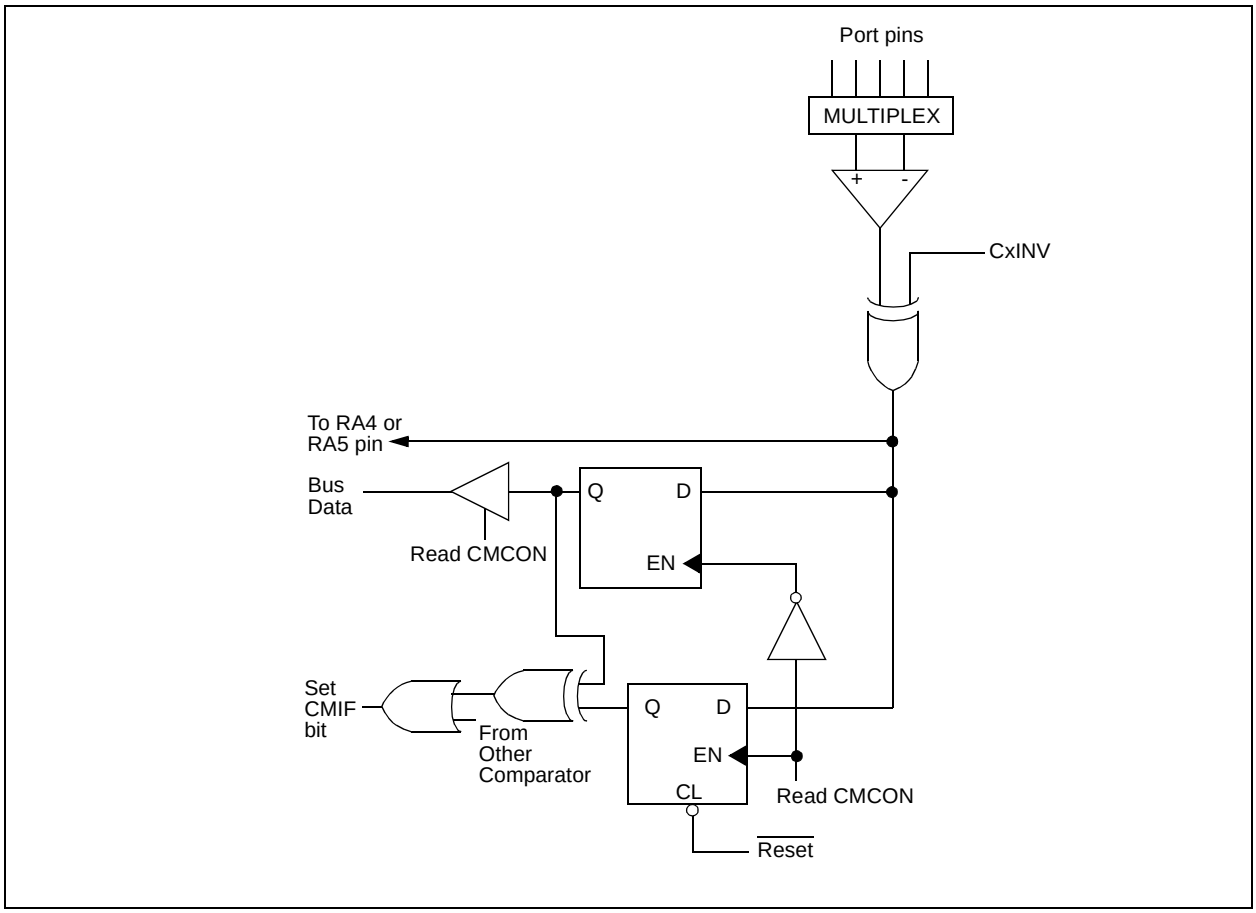
The comparator outputs are read through the CMCON register. These bits are read-only. The comparator outputs may also be directly output to the RA4 and RA5 I/O pins. When enabled, multiplexors in the output path of the RA4 and RA5 pins will switch and the output of each pin will be the unsynchronized output of the comparator. The uncertainty of each of the comparators is related to the input offset voltage and the response time given in the specifications. Figure 13-3 shows the comparator output block diagram.

The TRISA bits will still function as an output enable/ disable for the RA4 and RA5 pins while in this mode.

The polarity of the comparator outputs can be changed using the C2INV and C1INV bits (CMCON<4:5>).

Note 1:	When reading the Port register, all pins configured as analog inputs will read as a '0'. Pins configured as digital inputs will convert an analog input according to the Schmitt Trigger input specification.
2:	Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input may cause the input buffer to consume more current than is specified.
3:	RA4 is an open collector I/O pin. When used as an output, a pull-up resistor is required.

FIGURE 13-3: COMPARATOR OUTPUT BLOCK DIAGRAM



13.6 Comparator Interrupts

The comparator interrupt flag is set whenever there is a change in the output value of either comparator. Software will need to maintain information about the status of the output bits, as read from CMCON<7:6>, to determine the actual change that occurred. The CMIF bit (PIR registers) is the Comparator Interrupt Flag. The CMIF bit must be reset by clearing it ('0'). Since it is also possible to write a '1' to this register, a simulated interrupt may be initiated.

The CMIE bit (PIE registers) and the PEIE bit (INTCON register) must be set to enable the interrupt. In addition, the GIE bit must also be set. If any of these bits are clear, the interrupt is not enabled, though the CMIF bit will still be set if an interrupt condition occurs.

Note:	If a change in the CMCON register (C1OUT or C2OUT) should occur when a read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the CMIF (PIR registers) interrupt flag may not get set.

The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of CMCON will end the mismatch condition.

b) Clear flag bit CMIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit CMIF. Reading CMCON will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit CMIF to be cleared.

13.7 Comparator Operation During Sleep

When a comparator is active and the device is placed in Sleep mode, the comparator remains active and the interrupt is functional if enabled. This interrupt will wake-up the device from Sleep mode when enabled. While the comparator is powered up, higher Sleep currents than shown in the power-down current specification will occur. Each operational comparator will consume additional current as shown in the comparator specifications. To minimize power consumption while in Sleep mode, turn off the comparators (CM<2:0> = 111) before entering Sleep. If the device wakes up from Sleep, the contents of the CMCON register are not affected.

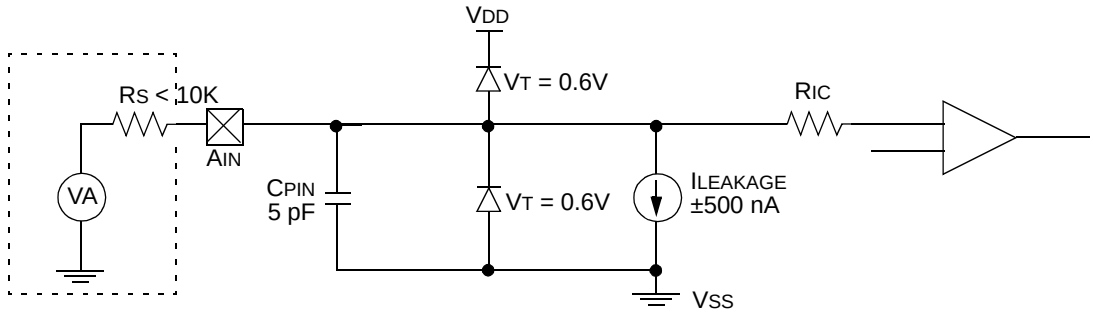
13.8 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces the CMCON register to its Reset state, causing the comparator module to be in the Comparator Off mode, CM<2:0> = 111. This ensures compatibility to the PIC16F87X devices.

13.9 Analog Input Connection Considerations

A simplified circuit for an analog input is shown in Figure 13-4. Since the analog pins are connected to a digital output, they have reverse biased diodes to VDD and VSS. The analog input, therefore, must be between VSS and VDD. If the input voltage deviates from this range by more than 0.6V in either direction, one of the diodes is forward biased and a latch-up condition may occur. A maximum source impedance of 10 kΩ is recommended for the analog sources. Any external component connected to an analog input pin, such as a capacitor or a Zener diode, should have very little leakage current.

FIGURE 13-4: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



Legend:
CPIN = Input Capacitance
VT = Threshold Voltage
ILEAKAGE = Leakage Current at the pin due to various junctions
RIC = Interconnect Resistance
RS = Source Impedance
VA = Analog Voltage

TABLE 13-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR MODULE

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR	Value on all other Resets
9Ch	CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0111	0000 0111
9Dh	CVRCON	CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	—	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	000- 0000	000- 0000
0Bh, 8Bh, 10Bh,18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
0Dh	PIR2	OSFIF	CMIF	LVDIF	—	BCLIF	—	CCP3IF	CCP2IF	000- 0-00	000- 0-00
8Dh	PIE2	OSFIE	CMIE	LVDIE	—	BCLIE	—	CCP3IE	CCP2IE	000- 0-00	000- 0-00
05h	PORTA	RA7	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	xx0x 0000	uu0u 0000
85h	TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	PORTA Data Direction Register						1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are unused by the comparator module.

NOTES:

14.0 COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE MODULE

The comparator voltage reference generator is a 16-tap resistor ladder network that provides a fixed voltage reference when the comparators are in mode '110'. A programmable register controls the function of the reference generator. Register 14-1 lists the bit functions of the CVRCON register.

As shown in Figure 14-1, the resistor ladder is segmented to provide two ranges of CV_{REF} values and has a power-down function to conserve power when the reference is not being used. The comparator reference supply voltage (also referred to as CV_{RSRC}) comes directly from V_{DD}. It should be noted, however, that the voltage at the top of the ladder is $CV_{RSRC} - V_{SAT}$, where V_{SAT} is the saturation voltage of the power switch transistor. This reference will only be as accurate as the values of CV_{RSRC} and V_{SAT}.

The output of the reference generator may be connected to the RA2/AN2/V_{REF}-/CV_{REF} pin. This can be used as a simple D/A function by the user if a very high-impedance load is used. The primary purpose of this function is to provide a test path for testing the reference generator function.

REGISTER 14-1: CVRCON CONTROL REGISTER (ADDRESS 9Dh)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	—	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CVREN**: Comparator Voltage Reference Enable bit
1 = CV_{REF} circuit powered on
0 = CV_{REF} circuit powered down

bit 6 **CVROE:** Comparator V_{REF} Output Enable bit
1 = CV_{REF} voltage level is output on RA2/AN2/V_{REF}-/CV_{REF} pin
0 = CV_{REF} voltage level is disconnected from RA2/AN2/V_{REF}-/CV_{REF} pin

bit 5 **CVRR**: Comparator V_{REF} Range Selection bit
1 = 0 to 0.75 CV_{RSRC}, with CV_{RSRC}/24 step size
0 = 0.25 CV_{RSRC} to 0.75 CV_{RSRC}, with CV_{RSRC}/32 step size

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-0 **CVR3:CVR0:** Comparator V_{REF} Value Selection bits $0 \le VR3:VR0 \le 15$
When CVRR = 1:
$CV_{REF} = (CVR<3:0>/24) \bullet (CV_{RSRC})$
When CVRR = 0:
$CV_{REF} = 1/4 \bullet (CV_{RSRC}) + (CVR3:CVR0/32) \bullet (CV_{RSRC})$

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 14-1: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE BLOCK DIAGRAM

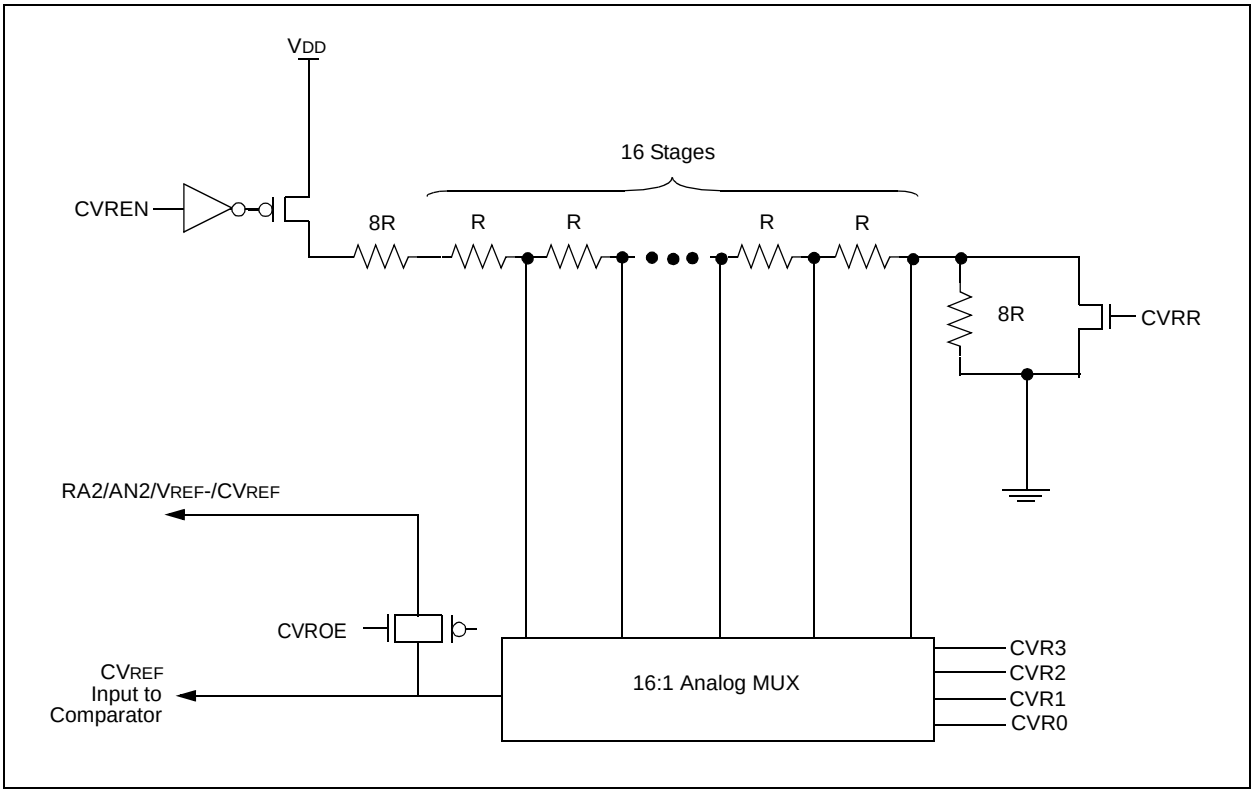


TABLE 14-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR	Value on all other Resets
9Dh	CVRCON	CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	—	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	000- 0000	000- 0000
9Ch	CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0111	0000 0111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used with the comparator voltage reference.

15.0 SPECIAL FEATURES OF THE CPU

These devices have a host of features intended to maximize system reliability, minimize cost through elimination of external components, provide power saving operating modes and offer code protection:

- Reset
  - Power-on Reset (POR)
  - Power-up Timer (PWRT)
  - Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
  - Brown-out Reset (BOR)
  - Low-Voltage Detect (LVD)
- Interrupts
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Two-Speed Start-up
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor
- Sleep
- Code Protection
- ID Locations
- In-Circuit Serial Programming

There are two timers that offer necessary delays on power-up. One is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in Reset until the crystal oscillator is stable. The other is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which provides a fixed delay of 72 ms (nominal) on power-up only. It is designed to keep the part in Reset while the power supply stabilizes and is enabled or disabled using a configuration bit. With these two timers on-chip, most applications need no external Reset circuitry.

Sleep mode is designed to offer a very low current power-down mode. The user can wake-up from Sleep through external Reset, Watchdog Timer Wake-up or through an interrupt.

Several oscillator options are also made available to allow the part to fit the application. The RC oscillator option saves system cost while the LP crystal option saves power. Configuration bits are used to select the desired oscillator mode.

Additional information on special features is available in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023).

15.1 Configuration Bits

The configuration bits can be programmed (read as '0') or left unprogrammed (read as '1') to select various device configurations. These bits are mapped in program memory locations 2007h and 2008h.

The user will note that address 2007h is beyond the user program memory space which can be accessed only during programming.

REGISTER 15-1: CONFIGURATION WORD REGISTER 1 (ADDRESS 2007h)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	U-1	U-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
CP	CCPMX	DEBUG	—	—	BORV1	BORV0	BOREN	MCLRE	FOSC2	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$	WDTEN	FOSC1	FOSC0
bit 13													bit 0

bit 13 **CP:** Flash Program Memory Code Protection bits
1 = Code protection off
0 = 0000h to 1FFFh code-protected for PIC16F767/777 and 0000h to 0FFFh for PIC16F737/747 (all protected)

bit 12 **CCPMX:** CCP2 Multiplex bit
1 = CCP2 is on RC1
0 = CCP2 is on RB3

bit 11 **DEBUG:** In-Circuit Debugger Mode bit
1 = In-circuit debugger disabled, RB6 and RB7 are general purpose I/O pins
0 = In-circuit debugger enabled, RB6 and RB7 are dedicated to the debugger

bit 10-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'

bit 8-7 **BORV<1:0>:** Brown-out Reset Voltage bits
11 = VBOR set to 2.0V
10 = VBOR set to 2.7V
01 = VBOR set to 4.2V
00 = VBOR set to 4.5V

bit 6 **BOREN:** Brown-out Reset Enable bit
BOREN combines with BORSEN to control when BOR is enabled and how it is controlled.
BOREN:BORSEN:
11 = BOR enabled and always on
10 = BOR enabled during operation and disabled during Sleep by hardware
01 = BOR controlled by software bit SBOREN (refer to PCON register (Register 2-8), bit 2)
00 = BOR disabled

bit 5 **MCLRE:** $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP/RE3 Pin Function Select bit
1 = $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP/RE3 pin function is $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$
0 = $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP/RE3 pin function is digital input only, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ gated to '1'

bit 3 **$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$:** Power-up Timer Enable bit
1 = PWRT disabled
0 = PWRT enabled

bit 2 **WDTEN:** Watchdog Timer Enable bit
1 = WDT enabled
0 = WDT disabled

bit 4, 1-0 **Fosc2:Fosc0:** Oscillator Selection bits
111 = EXTRC oscillator; CLKO function on OSC2/CLKO/RA6
110 = EXTRC oscillator; port I/O function on OSC2/CLKO/RA6
101 = INTRC oscillator; CLKO function on OSC2/CLKO/RA6 and port I/O function on OSC1/CLKI/RA7
100 = INTRC oscillator; port I/O function on OSC1/CLKI/RA7 and OSC2/CLKO/RA6
011 = EXTCLK; port I/O function on OSC2/CLKO/RA6
010 = HS oscillator
001 = XT oscillator
000 = LP oscillator

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 15-2: CONFIGURATION WORD REGISTER 2 (ADDRESS 2008h)

U-1	U-1	U-1	U-1	U-1	U-1	U-1	R/P-1	U-1	U-1	U-1	U-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BORSEN	—	—	—	—	IESO	FCMEN
bit 13													bit 0

bit 13-7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'

bit 6 **BORSEN:** Brown-out Reset Software Enable bit
Refer to Configuration Word Register 1, bit 6 for the function of this bit.

bit 5-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'

bit 1 **IESO:** Internal External Switch Over bit
1 = Internal External Switch Over mode enabled
0 = Internal External Switch Over mode disabled

bit 0 **FCMEN:** Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Enable bit
1 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor enabled
0 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor disabled

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

15.2 Reset

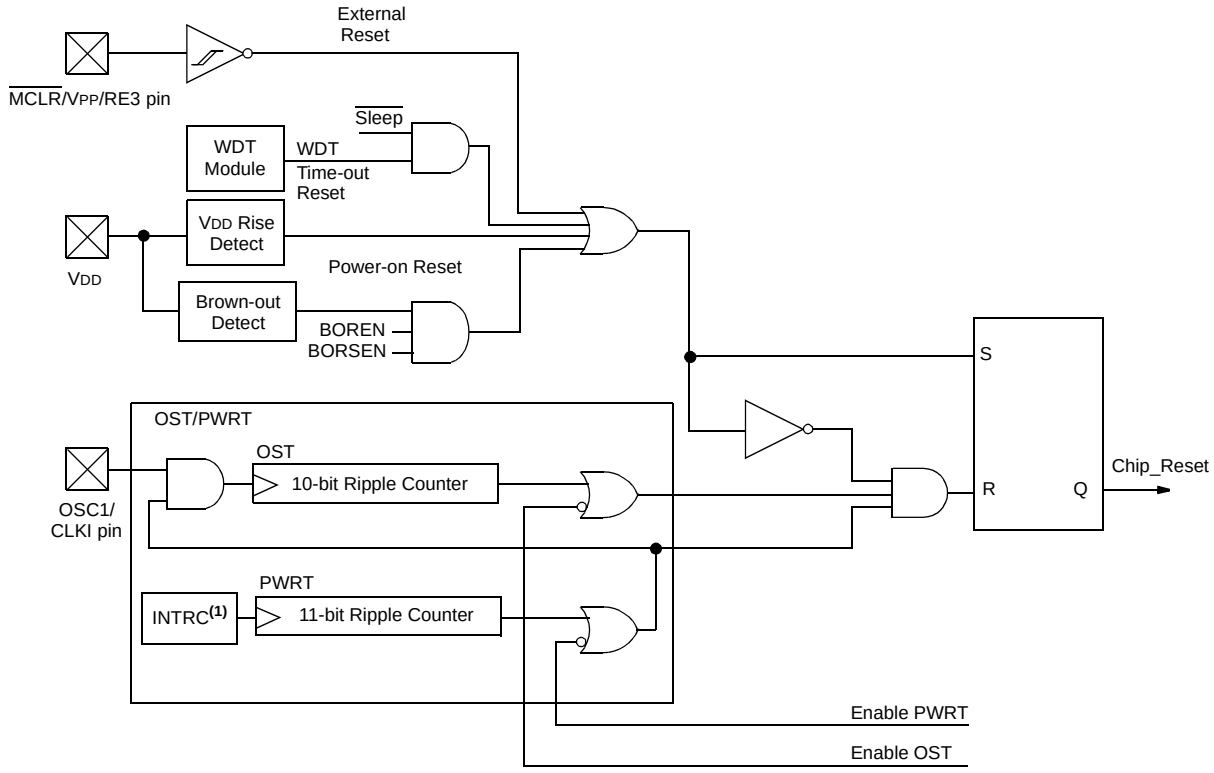
The PIC16F7X7 differentiates between various kinds of Reset:

- Power-on Reset (POR)
- $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during normal operation
- $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during Sleep
- WDT Reset during normal operation
- WDT Wake-up during Sleep
- Brown-out Reset (BOR)

Some registers are not affected in any Reset condition. Their status is unknown on POR and unchanged in any other Reset. Most other registers are reset to a "Reset state" on Power-on Reset (POR), on the $\overline{MCLR}$ and WDT Reset, on $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during Sleep and Brown-out Reset (BOR). They are not affected by a WDT wake-up which is viewed as the resumption of normal operation. The $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ bits are set or cleared differently in different Reset situations, as indicated in Table 15-3. These bits are used in software to determine the nature of the Reset. Upon a POR, BOR or wake-up from Sleep, the CPU requires approximately 5-10 µs to become ready for code execution. This delay runs in parallel with any other timers. See Table 15-4 for a full description of Reset states of all registers.

A simplified block diagram of the on-chip Reset circuit is shown in Figure 15-1.

FIGURE 15-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ON-CHIP RESET CIRCUIT



Note 1: This is the 32 kHz INTRC oscillator. See **Section 4.0 "Oscillator Configurations"** for more information.

15.3 MCLR

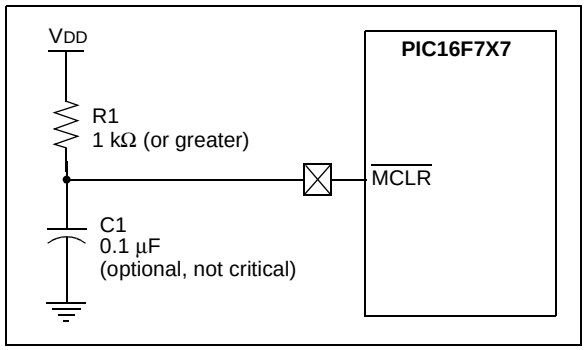
PIC16F7X7 devices have a noise filter in the MCLR Reset path. The filter will detect and ignore small pulses.

It should be noted that a WDT Reset does not drive MCLR pin low.

The behavior of the ESD protection on the MCLR pin has been altered from previous devices of this family. Voltages applied to the pin that exceed its specification can result in both MCLR and excessive current beyond the device specification during the ESD event. For this reason, Microchip recommends that the MCLR pin no longer be tied directly to VDD. The use of an RC network, as shown in Figure 15-2, is suggested.

The MCLR/VPP/RE3 pin can be configured for MCLR (default) or as an input pin (RE3). This is configured through the MCLRE bit in Configuration Word Register 1.

FIGURE 15-2: RECOMMENDED MCLR CIRCUIT



15.4 Power-on Reset (POR)

A Power-on Reset pulse is generated on-chip when VDD rise is detected (in the range of 1.2V-1.7V). To take advantage of the POR, tie the MCLR pin to VDD, as described in **Section 15.3 "MCLR"**. A maximum rise time for VDD is specified. See **Section 18.0 "Electrical Characteristics"** for details.

When the device starts normal operation (exits the Reset condition), device operating parameters (voltage, frequency, temperature,...) must be met to ensure operation. If these conditions are not met, the device must be held in Reset until the operating conditions are met. For more information, see Application Note *AN607, "Power-up Trouble Shooting"* (DS00607).

15.5 Power-up Timer (PWRT)

The Power-up Timer (PWRT) of the PIC16F7X7 is a counter that uses the INTRC oscillator as the clock input. This yields a count of 72 ms. While the PWRT is counting, the device is held in Reset.

The power-up time delay depends on the INTRC and will vary from chip-to-chip due to temperature and process variation. See DC parameter #33 for details.

The PWRT is enabled by clearing configuration bit PWRTEN.

15.6 Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)

The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) provides 1024 oscillator cycles (from OSC1 input) delay after the PWRT delay is over (if enabled). This helps to ensure that the crystal oscillator or resonator has started and stabilized.

The OST time-out is invoked only for XT, LP and HS modes and only on Power-on Reset or wake-up from Sleep.

15.7 Brown-out Reset (BOR)

Three configuration bits (BOREN – Configuration Word Register 1, bit 6; BORSEN – Configuration Word Register 2, bit 6; SBOREN – PCON, bit 2) together disable or enable the Brown-out Reset circuit in one of its three operating modes.

If VDD falls below VBOR (defined by BORV<1:0> bits in Configuration Word Register 1) for longer than TBOR (parameter #35, about 100 µs), the brown-out situation will reset the device. If VDD falls below VBOR for less than TBOR, a Reset may not occur.

Once the brown-out occurs, the device will remain in Brown-out Reset until VDD rises above VBOR. The Power-up Timer (if enabled) will keep the device in Reset for TPWRT (parameter #33, about 72 ms). If VDD should fall below VBOR during TPWRT, the Brown-out Reset process will restart when VDD rises above VBOR with the Power-up Timer Reset. Unlike previous PIC16 devices, the PWRT is no longer automatically enabled when the Brown-out Reset circuit is enabled. The PWRTEN and BOREN configuration bits are independent of each other.

15.8 Low-Voltage Detect

In many applications, the ability to determine if the device voltage (V_{DD}) is below a specified voltage level is a desirable feature. A window of operation for the application can be created, where the application software can do “housekeeping tasks” before the device voltage exits the valid operating range. This can be done using the Low-Voltage Detect module.

This module is a software programmable circuitry, where a device voltage trip point can be specified. When the voltage of the device becomes lower then the specified point, an interrupt flag is set. If the interrupt is enabled, the program execution will branch to the interrupt vector address and the software can then respond to that interrupt source.

The Low-Voltage Detect circuitry is completely under software control. This allows the circuitry to be turned off by the software which minimizes the current consumption for the device.

Figure 15-3 shows a possible application voltage curve (typically for batteries). Over time, the device voltage decreases. When the device voltage equals voltage V_A, the LVD logic generates an interrupt. This occurs at time T_A. The application software then has the time, until the device voltage is no longer in valid operating range, to shut down the system. Voltage point V_B is the minimum valid operating voltage specification. This occurs at time T_B. The difference, $T_B - T_A$, is the total time for shutdown.

The block diagram for the LVD module is shown in Figure 15-4. A comparator uses an internally generated reference voltage as the set point. When the selected tap output of the device voltage crosses the set point (is lower than), the LVDIF bit is set.

Each node in the resistor divider represents a “trip point” voltage. The “trip point” voltage is the minimum supply voltage level at which the device can operate before the LVD module asserts an interrupt. When the supply voltage is equal to the trip point, the voltage tapped off of the resistor array is equal to the 1.2V internal reference voltage generated by the voltage reference module. The comparator then generates an interrupt signal setting the LVDIF bit. This voltage is software programmable to any one of 16 values (see Figure 15-4). The trip point is selected by programming the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON<3:0>).

FIGURE 15-3: TYPICAL LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT APPLICATION

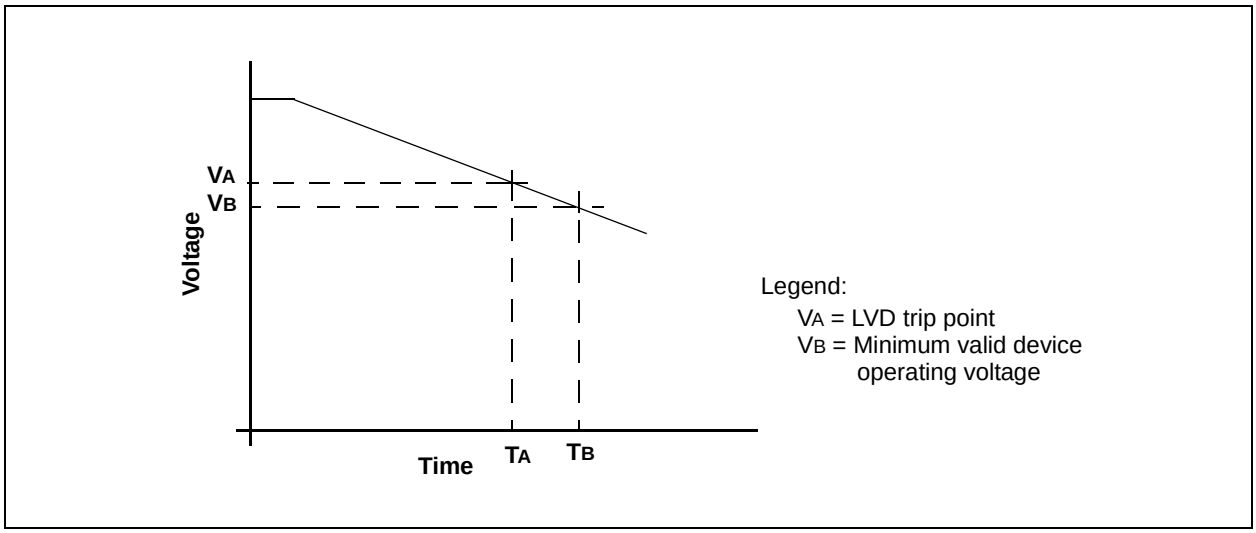
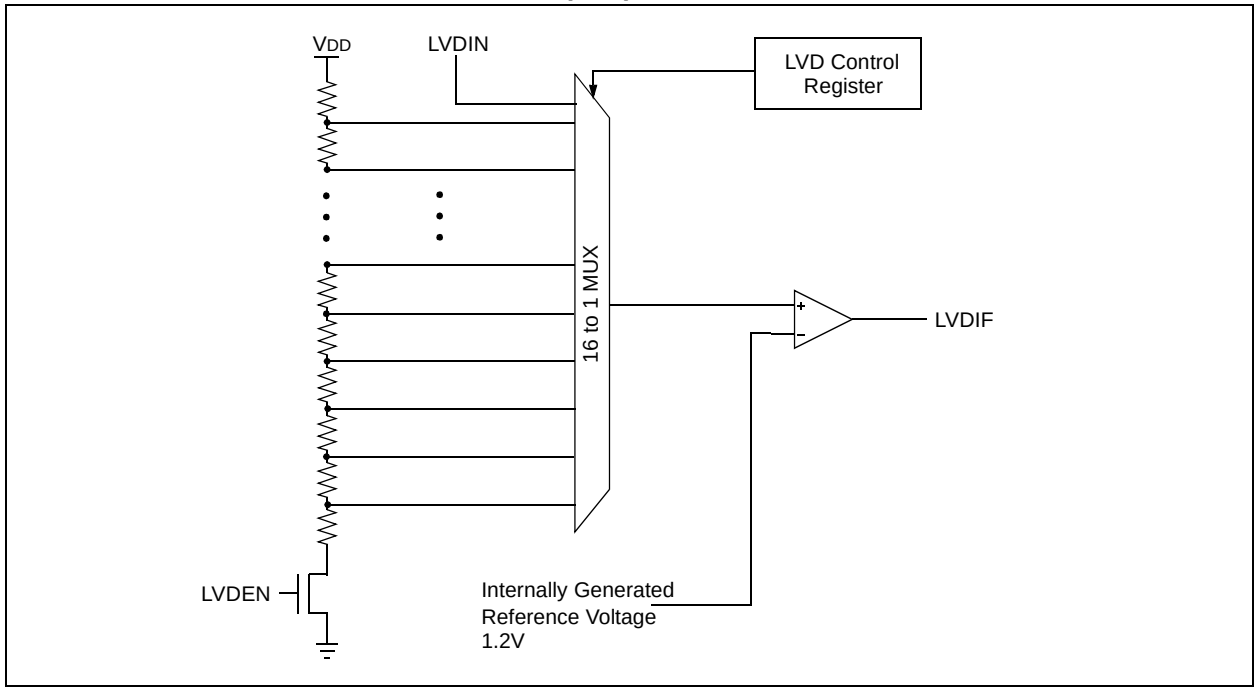
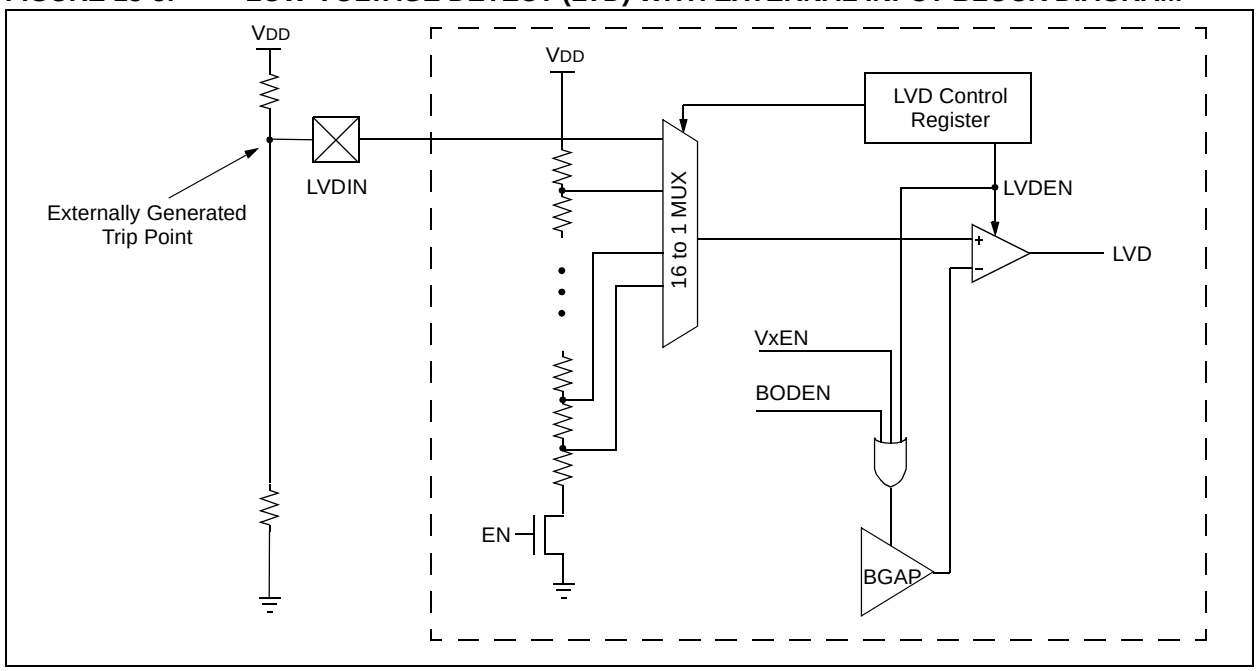


FIGURE 15-4: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT (LVD) BLOCK DIAGRAM



The LVD module has an additional feature that allows the user to supply the sense voltage to the module from an external source. This mode is enabled when bits LVDL3:LVDL0 are set to '1111'. In this state, the comparator input is multiplexed from the external input pin, LVDIN (Figure 15-5). This gives users flexibility because it allows them to configure the Low-Voltage Detect interrupt to occur at any voltage in the valid operating range.

FIGURE 15-5: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT (LVD) WITH EXTERNAL INPUT BLOCK DIAGRAM



15.9 Control Register

The Low-Voltage Detect Control register controls the operation of the Low-Voltage Detect circuitry.

REGISTER 15-3: LVDCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-1
—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **IRVST:** Internal Reference Voltage Stable Flag bit

1 = Indicates that the Low-Voltage Detect logic will generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range

0 = Indicates that the Low-Voltage Detect logic will not generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range and the LVD interrupt should not be enabled

bit 4 **LVDEN:** Low-Voltage Detect Power Enable bit

1 = Enables LVD, powers up LVD circuit

0 = Disables LVD, powers down LVD circuit

bit 3-0 **LVDL3:LVDL0:** Low-Voltage Detection Limit bits

1111 = External analog input is used (input comes from the LVDIN pin)
1110 = 4.50V-4.78V
1101 = 4.20V-4.46V
1100 = 4.00V-4.26V
1011 = 3.80V-4.04V
1010 = 3.60V-3.84V
1001 = 3.50V-3.72V
1000 = 3.30V-3.52V
0111 = 3.00V-3.20V
0110 = 2.80V-2.98V
0101 = 2.70V-2.86V
0100 = 2.50V-2.66V
0011 = 2.40V-2.55V
0010 = 2.20V-2.34V
0001 = Reserved
0000 = Reserved

Note: LVDL3:LVDL0 modes which result in a trip point below the valid operating voltage of the device are not tested.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

15.10 Operation

Depending on the power source for the device voltage, the voltage normally decreases relatively slowly. This means that the LVD module does not need to be constantly operating. To decrease the current requirements, the LVD circuitry only needs to be enabled for short periods where the voltage is checked. After doing the check, the LVD module may be disabled.

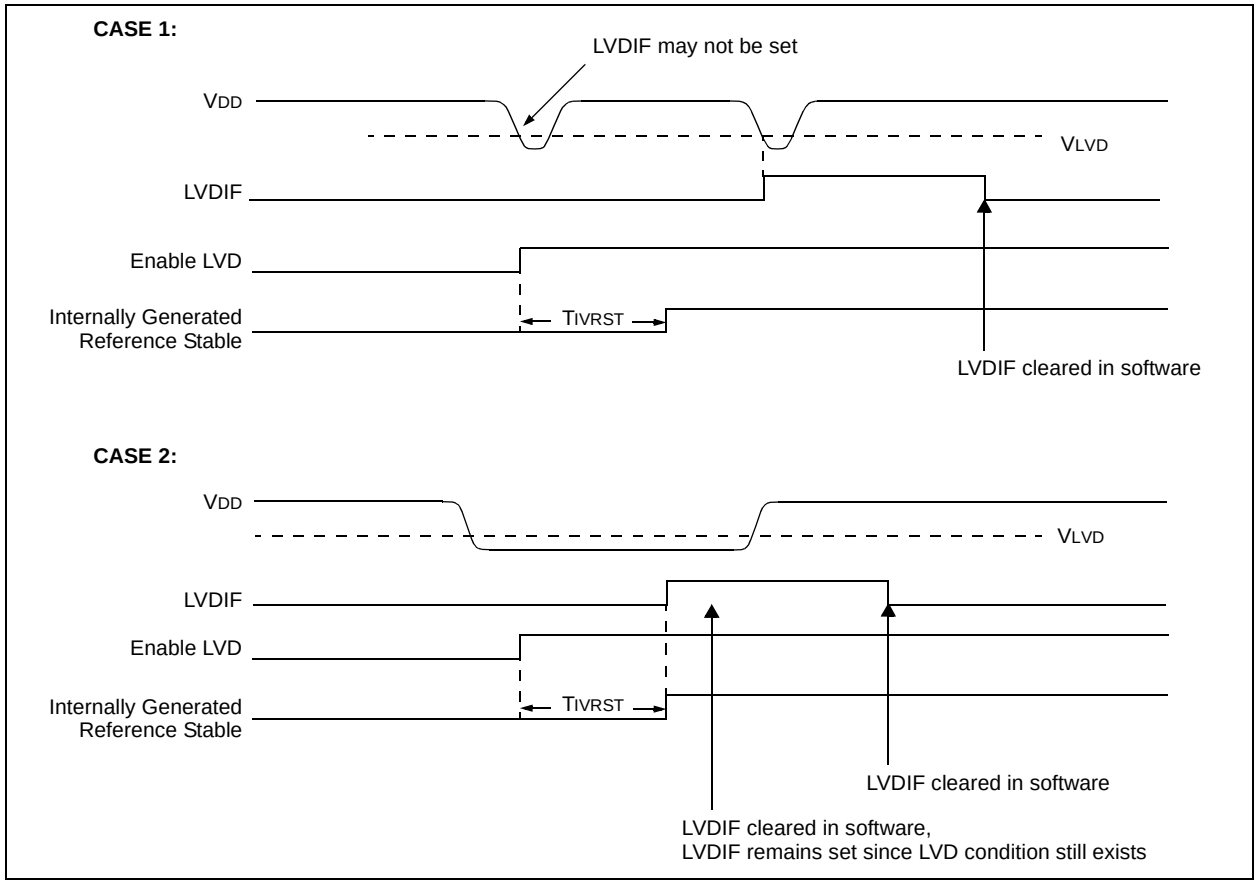
Each time that the LVD module is enabled, the circuitry requires some time to stabilize. After the circuitry has stabilized, all status flags may be cleared. The module will then indicate the proper state of the system.

The following steps are needed to set up the LVD module:

1. Write the value to the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON register) which selects the desired LVD trip point.
2. Ensure that LVD interrupts are disabled (the LVDIE bit is cleared or the GIE bit is cleared).
3. Enable the LVD module (set the LVDEN bit in the LVDCON register).
4. Wait for the LVD module to stabilize (the IRVST bit to become set).
5. Clear the LVD interrupt flag, which may have falsely become set, until the LVD module has stabilized (clear the LVDIF bit).
6. Enable the LVD interrupt (set the LVDIE and the GIE bits).

Figure 15-6 shows typical waveforms that the LVD module may be used to detect.

FIGURE 15-6: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT WAVEFORMS



15.10.1 REFERENCE VOLTAGE SET POINT

The internal reference voltage of the LVD module may be used by other internal circuitry (the Programmable Brown-out Reset). If these circuits are disabled (lower current consumption), the reference voltage circuit requires a time to become stable before a low-voltage condition can be reliably detected. This time is invariant of system clock speed. This start-up time is specified in electrical specification parameter #36. The low-voltage interrupt flag will not be enabled until a stable reference voltage is reached. Refer to the waveform in Figure 15-6.

15.10.2 CURRENT CONSUMPTION

When the module is enabled, the LVD comparator and voltage divider are enabled and will consume static current. The voltage divider can be tapped from multiple places in the resistor array. Total current consumption, when enabled, is specified in electrical specification parameter #D022B.

15.11 Operation During Sleep

When enabled, the LVD circuitry continues to operate during Sleep. If the device voltage crosses the trip point, the LVDIF bit will be set and the device will wake-up from Sleep. Device execution will continue from the interrupt vector address if interrupts have been globally enabled.

15.12 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. This forces the LVD module to be turned off.

Note:	If the LVD is enabled and the BOR module is not enabled, the band gap will require a start-up time of no more than 50 μs before the band gap reference is stable. Before enabling the LVD interrupt, the user should ensure that the band gap reference voltage is stable by monitoring the IRVST bit in the LVDCON register. The LVD could cause erroneous interrupts before the band gap is stable.

15.13 Time-out Sequence

On power-up, the time-out sequence is as follows: the PWRT delay starts (if enabled) when a POR occurs. Then, OST starts counting 1024 oscillator cycles when PWRT ends (LP, XT, HS). When the OST ends, the device comes out of Reset.

If $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is kept low long enough, all delays will expire. Bringing $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ high will begin execution immediately. This is useful for testing purposes or to synchronize more than one PIC16F7X7 device operating in parallel.

Table 15-3 shows the Reset conditions for the Status, PCON and PC registers, while Table 15-4 shows the Reset conditions for all the registers.

15.14 Power Control/Status Register (PCON)

The Power Control/Status register, PCON, has two bits to indicate the type of Reset that last occurred.

Bit 0 is Brown-out Reset Status bit, $\overline{\text{BOR}}$. Bit $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ is unknown on a Power-on Reset. It must then be set by the user and checked on subsequent Resets to see if bit $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ cleared, indicating a Brown-out Reset occurred. When the Brown-out Reset is disabled, the state of the $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ bit is unpredictable.

Bit 1 is Power-on Reset Status bit, $\overline{\text{POR}}$. It is cleared on a Power-on Reset and unaffected otherwise. The user must set this bit following a Power-on Reset.

TABLE 15-1: TIME-OUT IN VARIOUS SITUATIONS

Oscillator Configuration	Power-up		Brown-out Reset		Wake-up from Sleep
	$\overline{PWRTE}$ = 0	$\overline{PWRTE}$ = 1	$\overline{PWRTE}$ = 0	$\overline{PWRTE}$ = 1	
XT, HS, LP	TPWRT + 1024 • TOSC	1024 • TOSC	TPWRT + 1024 • TOSC	1024 • TOSC	1024 • TOSC
EXTRC, INTRC	TPWRT	5-10 µs(1)	TPWRT	5-10 µs(1)	5-10 µs(1)
T1OSC	—	—	—	—	5-10 µs(1)

Note 1: CPU start-up is always invoked on POR, BOR and wake-up from Sleep. The 5 µs-10 µs delay is based on a 1 MHz system clock.

TABLE 15-2: STATUS BITS AND THEIR SIGNIFICANCE

$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	
0	x	1	1	Power-on Reset
0	x	0	x	Illegal, $\overline{TO}$ is set on $\overline{POR}$
0	x	x	0	Illegal, $\overline{PD}$ is set on $\overline{POR}$
1	0	1	1	Brown-out Reset
1	1	0	1	WDT Reset
1	1	0	0	WDT Wake-up
1	1	u	u	$\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during normal operation
1	1	1	0	$\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during Sleep or Interrupt Wake-up from Sleep

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown

TABLE 15-3: RESET CONDITION FOR SPECIAL REGISTERS

Condition	Program Counter	Status Register	PCON Register
Power-on Reset	000h	0001 1xxx	---- --0x
$\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during normal operation	000h	000u uuuu	---- --uu
$\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during Sleep	000h	0001 0uuu	---- --uu
WDT Reset	000h	0000 1uuu	---- --uu
WDT Wake-up	PC + 1	uuu0 0uuu	---- --uu
Brown-out Reset	000h	0001 1uuu	---- --u0
Interrupt Wake-up from Sleep	PC + 1(1)	uuu1 0uuu	---- --uu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0'

Note 1: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

TABLE 15-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS

Register	Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, WDT Reset	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
W	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INDF	N/A	N/A	N/A
TMR0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PCL	0000h	0000h	PC + 1(2)
STATUS	0001 1xxx	000q quuu(3)	uuuq quuu(3)
FSR	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTA	xx0x 0000	uu0u 0000	uuuu uuuu
PORTB	xx00 0000	uu00 0000	uuuu uuuu
PORTC	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTD	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTE (PIC16F737/767) PORTE (PIC16F747/777)	---- x--- ---- x000	---- u--- ---- u000	---- u--- ---- uuuu
PCLATH	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
INTCON	0000 000x	0000 000u	uuuu uuuu(1)
PIR1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(1)
PIR2	000- 0-00	000- 0-00	uuu- u-uu
TMR1L	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR1H	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu	-uuu uuuu
TMR2	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
T2CON	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
SSPBUF	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON2	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1L	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1H	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
CCP2CON	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
CCP3CON	--00 0000	--00 0000	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2L	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2H	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR3L	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR3H	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RCSTA	0000 000x	0000 000x	uuuu uuuu
TXREG	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RCREG	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ADRESH	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
OPTION	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition, r = reserved, maintain clear

Note 1: One or more bits in INTCON, PIR1 and PR2 will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

3: See Table 15-3 for Reset value for specific condition.

TABLE 15-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, WDT Reset	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
TRISA	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISB	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISC	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISD	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISE (PIC16F737/767) TRISE (PIC16F747/777)	---- 1--- 0000 1111	---- u--- 0000 1111	---- 1--- uuuu uuuu
PIE1	0000 0000	0000 0000	-uuu uuuu
PIE2	000- 0-00	000- 0-00	uuu- u-uu
PCON	---- -1qq	---- -uuu	---- -uuu
OSCCON	-000 1000	-000 1000	-uuu uuuu
OSCTUNE	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PR2	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111
SSPADD	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPSTAT	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXSTA	0000 -010	0000 -010	uuuu -u1u
SPBRG	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CMCON	0000 0111	0000 0111	uuuu uuuu
CVRCON	000- 0000	000- 0000	uuu- uuuu
WDTCON	---0 1000	---0 1000	---u uuuu
ADRESL	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADCON1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ADCON2	--00 0---	--00 0---	uuuu uuuu
PMDATA	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PMADR	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PMDATH	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu	--uu uuuu
PMADRH	---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
PMCON1	---- ---0	---- ---u	---- ---u
LVDCON	--00 0101	--00 0101	--uu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition, r = reserved, maintain clear

Note 1: One or more bits in INTCON, PIR1 and PR2 will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

3: See Table 15-3 for Reset value for specific condition.

FIGURE 15-7: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO V_{DD} THROUGH PULL-UP RESISTOR)

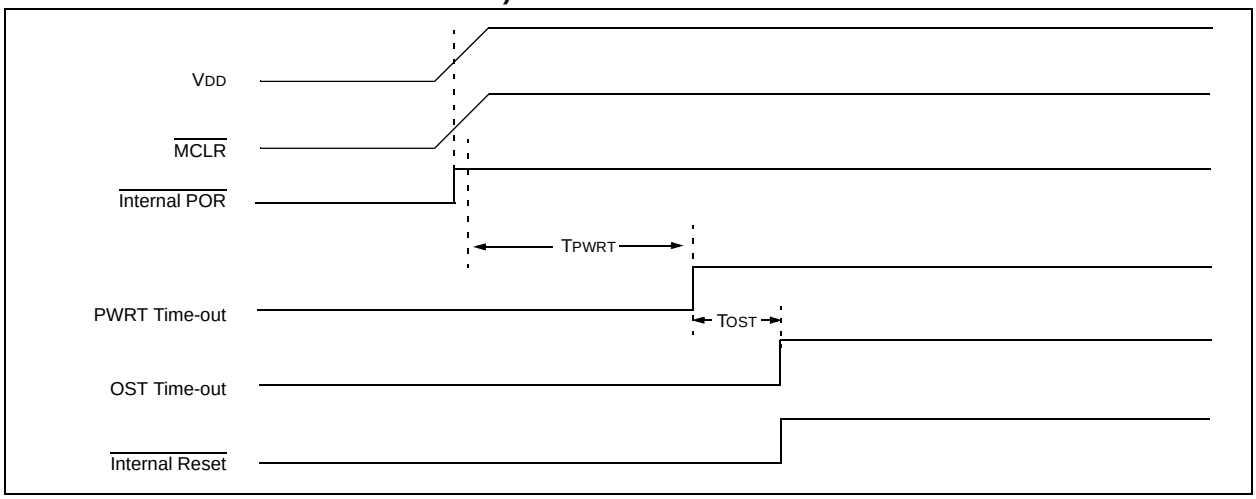


FIGURE 15-8: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO V_{DD} THROUGH RC NETWORK): CASE 1

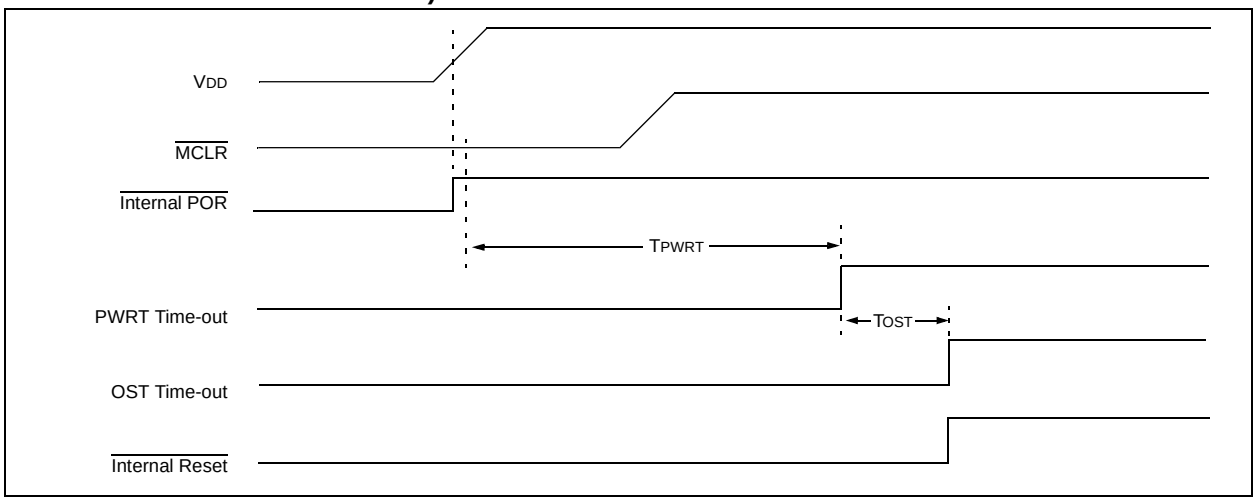


FIGURE 15-9: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO V_{DD} THROUGH RC NETWORK): CASE 2

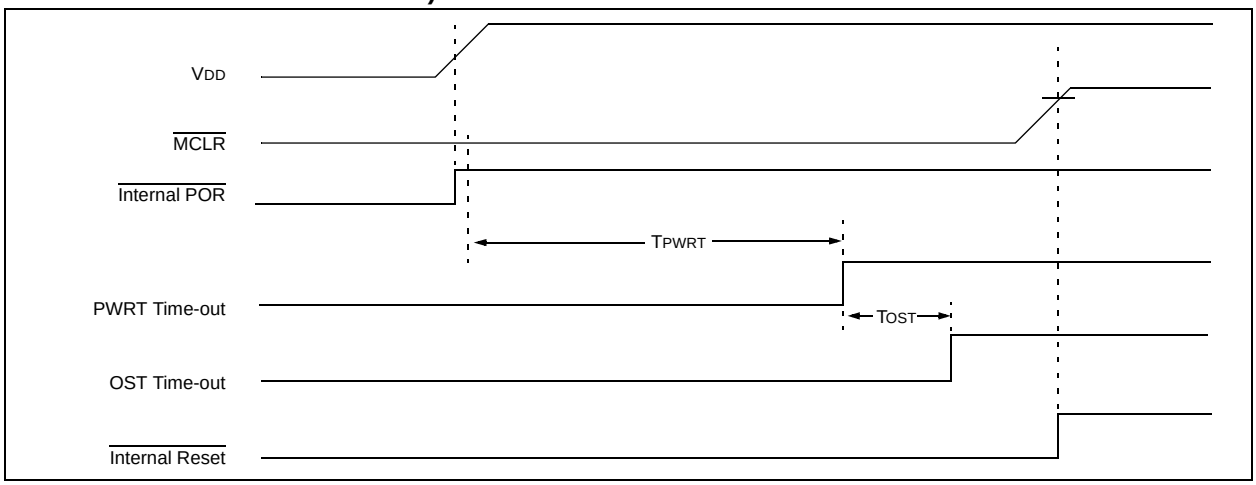
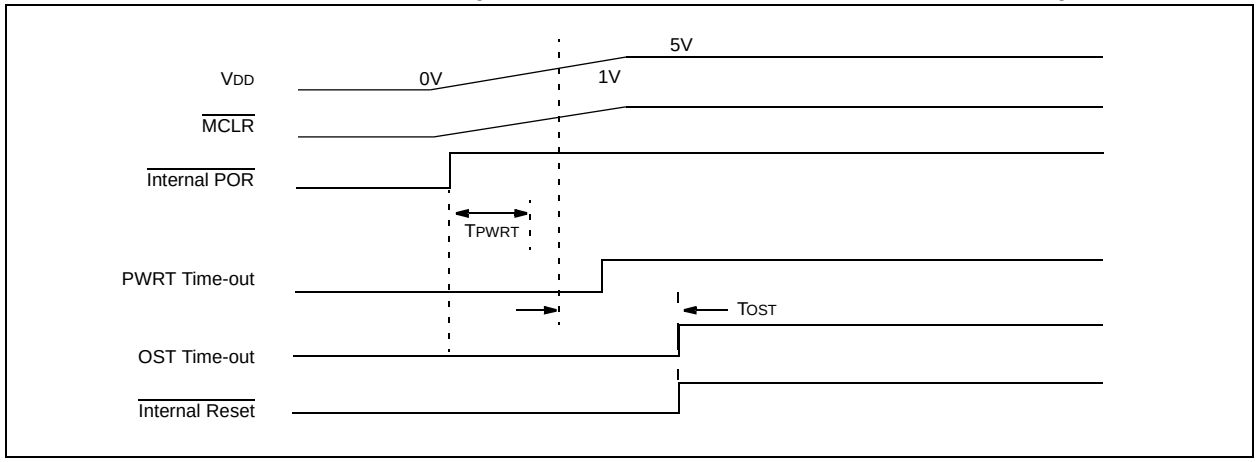


FIGURE 15-10: SLOW RISE TIME ($\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ TIED TO V_{DD} THROUGH RC NETWORK)



15.15 Interrupts

The PIC16F7X7 has up to 17 sources of interrupt. The Interrupt Control register (INTCON) records individual interrupt requests in flag bits. It also has individual and global interrupt enable bits.

Note:	Individual interrupt flag bits are set regardless of the status of their corresponding mask bit or the GIE bit.

A global interrupt enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>), enables (if set) all unmasked interrupts or disables (if cleared) all interrupts. When bit GIE is enabled and an interrupt's flag bit and mask bit are set, the interrupt will vector immediately. Individual interrupts can be disabled through their corresponding enable bits in various registers. Individual interrupt bits are set regardless of the status of the GIE bit. The GIE bit is cleared on Reset.

The "return from interrupt" instruction, `RETFIE`, exits the interrupt routine, as well as sets the GIE bit which re-enables interrupts.

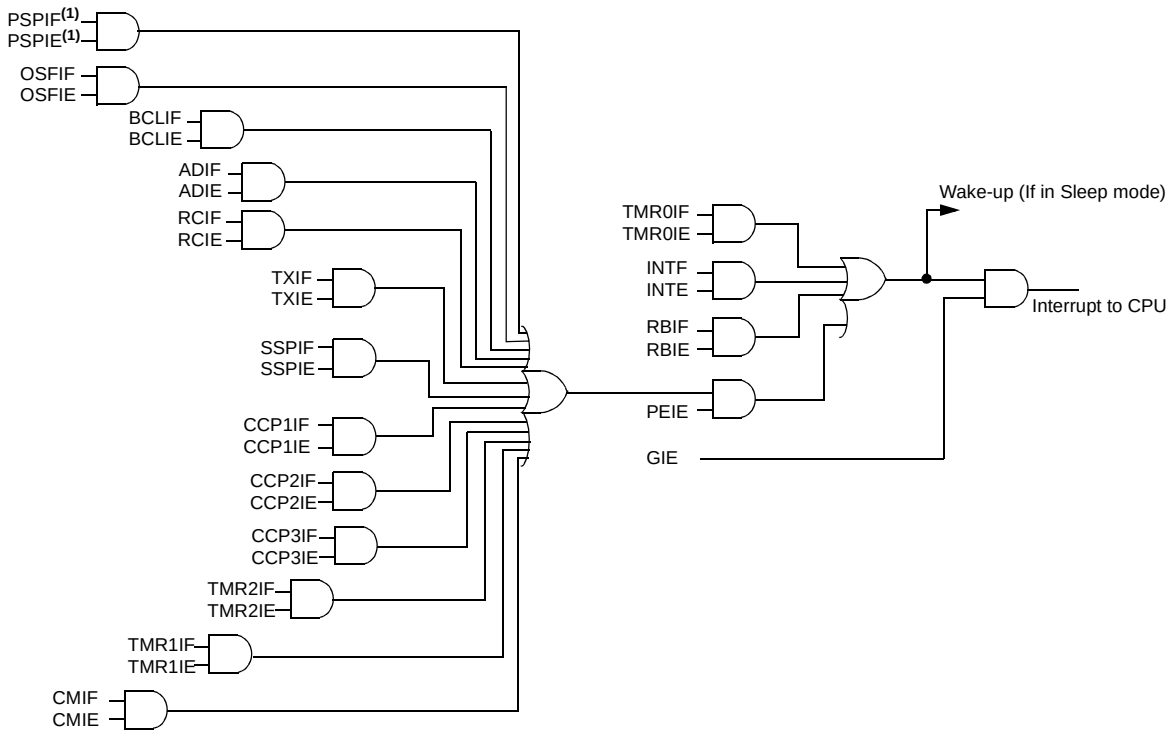
The RB0/INT pin interrupt, the RB port change interrupt and the TMR0 overflow interrupt flags are contained in the INTCON register.

The peripheral interrupt flags are contained in the Special Function Register, PIR1. The corresponding interrupt enable bits are contained in Special Function Register, PIE1 and the peripheral interrupt enable bit is contained in Special Function Register, INTCON.

When an interrupt is serviced, the GIE bit is cleared to disable any further interrupt, the return address is pushed onto the stack and the PC is loaded with 0004h. Once in the Interrupt Service Routine, the source(s) of the interrupt can be determined by polling the interrupt flag bits. The interrupt flag bit(s) must be cleared in software before re-enabling interrupts to avoid recursive interrupts.

For external interrupt events, such as the INT pin or PORTB change interrupt, the interrupt latency will be three or four instruction cycles. The exact latency depends on when the interrupt event occurs relative to the current Q cycle. The latency is the same for one or two-cycle instructions. Individual interrupt flag bits are set regardless of the status of their corresponding mask bit, PEIE bit or the GIE bit.

FIGURE 15-11: INTERRUPT LOGIC



Note 1: PSP interrupt is implemented only on PIC16F747/777 devices.

15.15.1 INT INTERRUPT

External interrupt on the RB0/INT pin is edge-triggered, either rising if bit INTEDG (OPTION<6>) is set or falling if the INTEDG bit is clear. When a valid edge appears on the RB0/INT pin, flag bit INTF (INTCON<1>) is set. This interrupt can be disabled by clearing enable bit, INTE (INTCON<4>). Flag bit INTF must be cleared in software in the Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling this interrupt. The INT interrupt can wake-up the processor from Sleep if bit INTE was set prior to going into Sleep. The status of global interrupt enable bit, GIE, decides whether or not the processor branches to the interrupt vector following wake-up. See **Section 15.18 "Power-down Mode (Sleep)"** for details on Sleep mode.

15.15.2 TMR0 INTERRUPT

An overflow (FFh → 00h) in the TMR0 register will set flag bit, TMR0IF (INTCON<2>). The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, TMR0IE (INTCON<5>), see **Section 6.0 "Timer0 Module"**.

15.15.3 PORTB INTCON CHANGE

An input change on PORTB<7:4> sets flag bit, RBIF (INTCON<0>). The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, RBIE (INTCON<4>), see **Section 2.2 "Data Memory Organization"**.

15.16 Context Saving During Interrupts

During an interrupt, only the return PC value is saved on the stack. Typically, users may wish to save key registers during an interrupt (i.e., W, Status registers).

Since the upper 16 bytes of each bank are common in the PIC16F7X7 devices, temporary holding registers W_TEMP, STATUS_TEMP and PCLATH_TEMP should be placed in here. These 16 locations don't require banking and therefore, make it easier for context save and restore. The same code shown in Example 15-1 can be used.

EXAMPLE 15-1: SAVING STATUS AND W REGISTERS IN RAM

```
    MOVWF   W_TEMP              ;Copy W to TEMP register
    SWAPF   STATUS, W           ;Swap status to be saved into W
    CLRF    STATUS              ;bank 0, regardless of current bank, Clears IRP,RP1,RP0
    MOVWF   STATUS_TEMP         ;Save status to bank zero STATUS_TEMP register
    :
    :(ISR)                      ;Insert user code here
    :
    SWAPF   STATUS_TEMP, W      ;Swap STATUS_TEMP register into W
                                ;(sets bank to original state)
    MOVWF   STATUS              ;Move W into STATUS register
    SWAPF   W_TEMP, F           ;Swap W_TEMP
    SWAPF   W_TEMP, W           ;Swap W_TEMP into W
```

15.17 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

For PIC16F7X7 devices, the WDT has been modified from previous PIC16 devices. The new WDT is code and functionally backward compatible with previous PIC16 WDT modules, and allows the user to have a scaler value for the WDT and TMR0 at the same time. In addition, the WDT time-out value can be extended to 268 seconds, using the prescaler with the postscaler when PSA is set to '1'.

15.17.1 WDT OSCILLATOR

The WDT derives its time base from the 31.25 kHz INTRC; therefore, the accuracy of the 31.25 kHz will be the same accuracy for the WDT time-out period.

The value of WDTCON is '---0 1000' on all Resets. This gives a nominal time base of 16.38 ms, which is compatible with the time base generated with previous PIC16 microcontroller versions.

Note:	When the OST is invoked, the WDT is held in Reset because the WDT ripple counter is used by the OST to perform the oscillator delay count. When the OST count has expired, the WDT will begin counting (if enabled).

A new prescaler has been added to the path between the internal RC and the multiplexors used to select the path for the WDT. This prescaler is 16 bits and can be programmed to divide the internal RC by 128 to 65536, giving the time base used for the WDT a nominal range of 1 ms to 2.097s.

15.17.2 WDT CONTROL

The WDTEN bit is located in Configuration Word Register 1 and when this bit is set, the WDT runs continuously.

The SWDTEN bit is in the WDTCON register. When the WDTEN bit in the Configuration Word Register 1 is set, the SWDTEN bit has no effect. If WDTEN is clear, then the SWDTEN bit can be used to enable and disable the WDT. Setting the bit will enable it and clearing the bit will disable it.

The PSA and PS<2:0> bits (OPTION_REG) have the same function as in previous versions of the PIC16 family of microcontrollers.

FIGURE 15-12: WATCHDOG TIMER BLOCK DIAGRAM

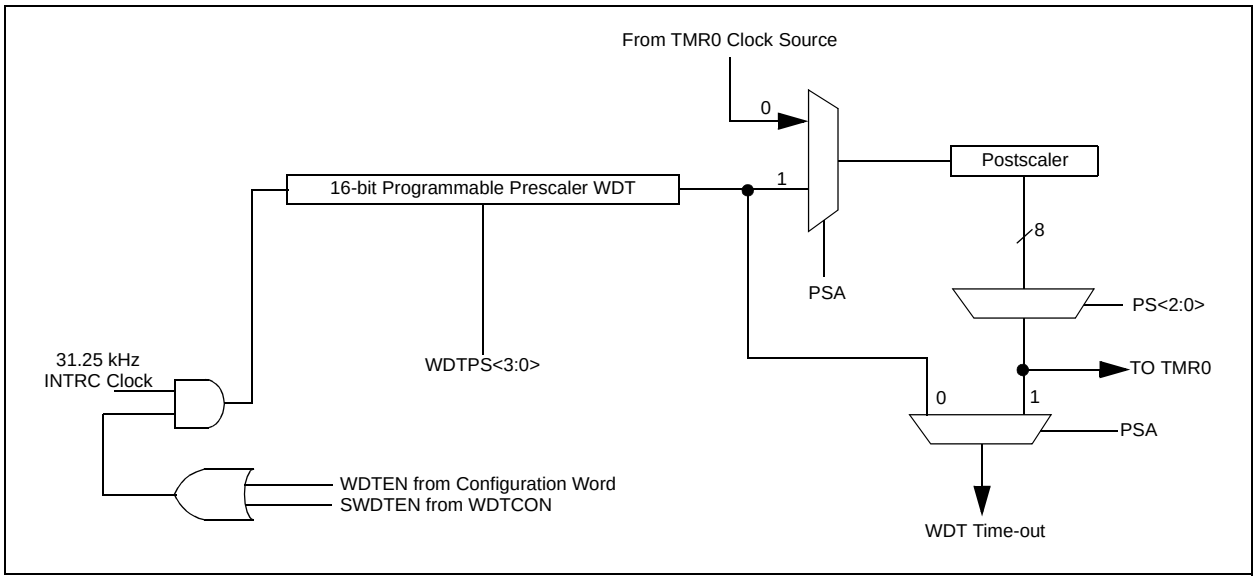


TABLE 15-5: PRESCALER/POSTSCALER BIT STATUS

Conditions	Prescaler	Postscaler (PSA = 1)
WDTEN = 0	Cleared	Cleared
CLRWDT command		
Osc Fail detected		
Exit Sleep + System Clock = T1OSC, EXTRC, INTRC, EXTCLK		
Exit Sleep + System Clock = XT, HS, LP	Cleared at end of OST	Cleared at end of OST

REGISTER 15-4: WDTCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	WDTPS3	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	SWDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-1 **WDTPS<3:0>:** Watchdog Timer Period Select bits

0000 = 1:32 prescale rate
0001 = 1:64 prescale rate
0010 = 1:128 prescale rate
0011 = 1:256 prescale rate
0100 = 1:512 prescale rate
0101 = 1:1024 prescale rate
0110 = 1:2048 prescale rate
0111 = 1:4096 prescale rate
1000 = 1:8192 prescale rate
1001 = 1:16394 prescale rate
1010 = 1:32768 prescale rate
1011 = 1:65536 prescale rate
1100 = 1:1 prescale rate

bit 0 **SWDTEN:** Software Enable/Disable for Watchdog Timer bit**(1)**

1 = WDT is turned on
0 = WDT is turned off

Note 1: If WDTEN configuration bit = 1, then WDT is always enabled irrespective of this control bit. If WDTEN configuration bit = 0, then it is possible to turn WDT on/off with this control bit.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

TABLE 15-6: SUMMARY OF WATCHDOG TIMER REGISTERS

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
81h, 181h	OPTION_REG	$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
2007h	Configuration bits	BORV0	BOREN	MCLRE	FOSC2	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$	WDTEN	FOSC1	FOSC0	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
105h	WDTCON	—	—	—	WDTPS3	WDTPS2	WSTPS1	WDTPS0	SWDTEN	---0 1000	---0 1000

Legend: Shaded cells are not used by the Watchdog Timer.

Note 1: See Register 15-1 for operation of these bits.

15.17.3 TWO-SPEED CLOCK START-UP MODE

Two-Speed Start-up minimizes the latency between oscillator start-up and code execution that may be selected with the IESO (Internal/External Switch Over) bit in Configuration Word Register 2. This mode is achieved by initially using the INTRC for code execution until the primary oscillator is stable.

If this mode is enabled and any of the following conditions exist, the system will begin execution with the INTRC oscillator. This results in almost immediate code execution with a minimum of delay.

- POR and after the Power-up Timer has expired (if $\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$ = 0)
- or following a wake-up from Sleep
- or a Reset, when running from T1OSC or INTRC (after a Reset, SCS<1:0> are always set to '00').

Note:	Following any Reset, the IRCF bits are zeroed and the frequency selection is forced to 31.25 kHz. The user can modify the IRCF bits to select a higher internal oscillator frequency.

If the primary oscillator is configured to be anything other than XT, LP or HS, then Two-Speed Start-up is disabled because the primary oscillator will not require any time to become stable after POR or an exit from Sleep.

If the IRCF bits of the OSCCON register are configured to a non-zero value prior to entering Sleep mode, the secondary system clock frequency will come from the output of the INTOSC. The IOFS bit in the OSCCON register will be clear until the INTOSC is stable. This will allow the user to determine when the internal oscillator can be used for time critical applications.

Checking the state of the OSTS bit will confirm whether the primary clock configuration is engaged. If not, the OSTS bit will remain clear.

When the device is auto-configured in INTRC mode following a POR or wake-up from Sleep, the rules for entering other oscillator modes still apply, meaning the SCS<1:0> bits in OSCCON can be modified before the OST time-out has occurred. This would allow the application to wake-up from Sleep, perform a few instructions using the INTRC as the clock source and go back to Sleep without waiting for the primary oscillator to become stable.

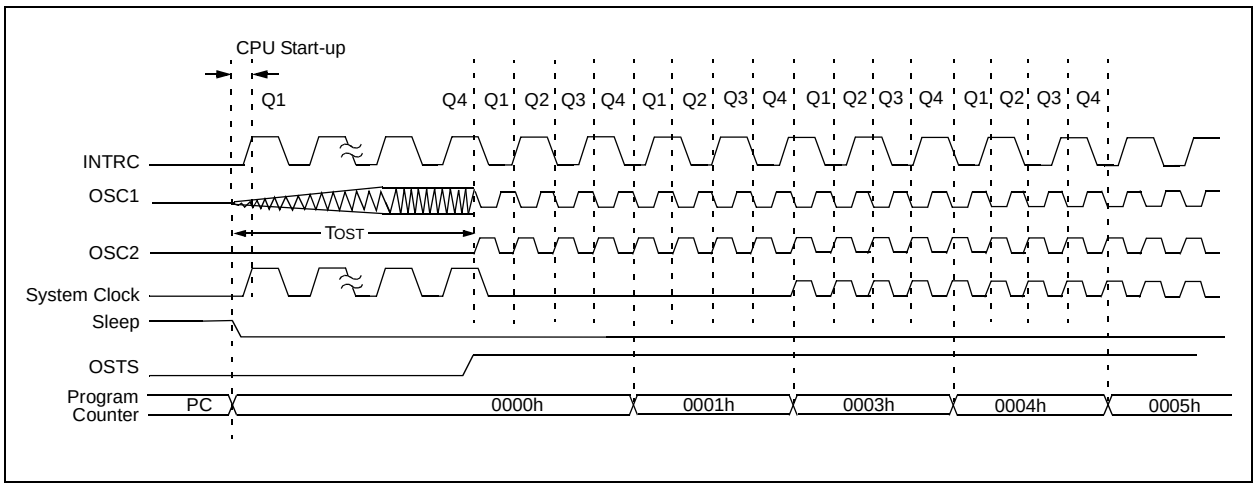
Note:	Executing a SLEEP instruction will abort the oscillator start-up time and will cause the OSTS bit to remain clear.

15.17.3.1 Two-Speed Start-up Sequence

1. Wake-up from Sleep, Reset or POR.
2. OSCON bits configured to run from INTRC (31.25 kHz).
3. Instructions begin execution by INTRC (31.25 kHz).
4. OST enabled to count 1024 clock cycles.
5. OST timed out, wait for falling edge of INTRC.
6. OSTS is set.
7. System clock held low for eight falling edges of new clock (LP, XT or HS).
8. System clock is switched to primary source (LP, XT or HS).

The software may read the OSTS bit to determine when the switch over takes place so that any software timing edges can be adjusted.

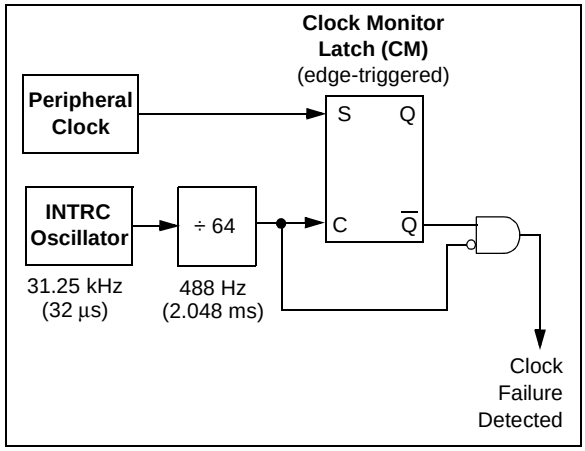
FIGURE 15-13: TWO-SPEED START-UP



15.17.4 FAIL-SAFE OPTION

The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) is designed to allow the device to continue to operate even in the event of an oscillator failure.

FIGURE 15-14: FSCM BLOCK DIAGRAM



The FSCM function is enabled by setting the FCMEN bit in Configuration Word Register 2.

In the event of an oscillator failure, the FSCM will generate an oscillator fail interrupt and will switch the system clock over to the internal oscillator. The system will continue to come from the internal oscillator until the Fail-Safe condition is exited. The Fail-Safe condition is exited with either a Reset, the execution of a SLEEP instruction or a write to the SCS bits of a different value.

The frequency of the internal oscillator will depend upon the value contained in the IRCF bits. Another clock source can be selected via the IRCF and the SCS bits of the OSCCON register.

The FSCM sample clock is generated by dividing the INTRC clock by 64. This will allow enough time between FSCM sample clocks for a system clock edge to occur.

On the rising edge of the postscaled clock, the monitoring latch (CM = 0) will be cleared. On a falling edge of the primary or secondary system clock, the monitoring latch will be set (CM = 1). In the event that a falling edge of the postscaled clock occurs and the monitoring latch is not set, a clock failure has been detected.

While in Fail-Safe mode, a Reset will exit the Fail-Safe condition. If the primary clock source is configured for a crystal, the OST timer will wait for the 1024 clock cycles for the OST time-out and the device will continue running from the internal oscillator until the OST is complete. A SLEEP instruction, or a write to the SCS bits (where SCS bits do not = 00), can be performed to put the device into a low-power mode.

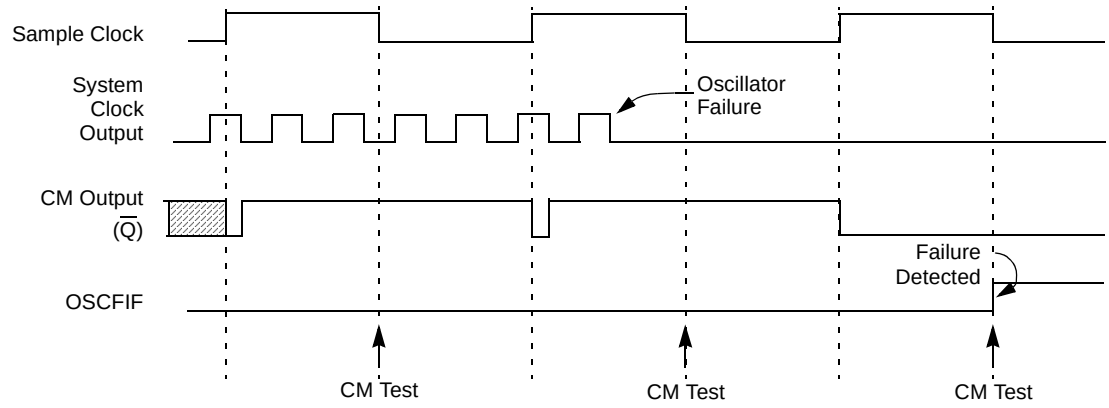
If Reset occurs while in Fail-Safe mode and the primary clock source is EC or RC, then the device will immediately switch back to EC or RC mode.

Note:	Two-Speed Start-up is automatically enabled when the Fail-Safe option is enabled.

15.17.4.1 Fail-Safe in Low-Power Mode

A change of SCS<1:0> or the SLEEP instruction will end the Fail-Safe condition. The system clock will default to the source selected by the SCS bits, which is either T1OSC, INTRC or none (Sleep mode). However, the FSCM will continue to monitor the system clock. If the secondary clock fails, the device will immediately switch to the internal oscillator clock. If OSFIE is set, an interrupt will be generated.

FIGURE 15-15: FSCM TIMING DIAGRAM



Note: The system clock is normally at a much higher frequency than the sample clock. The relative frequencies in this example have been chosen for clarity.

15.17.4.2 FSCM and the Watchdog Timer

When a clock failure is detected, SCS<1:0> will be forced to '10' which will reset the WDT (if enabled).

15.17.4.3 POR or Wake from Sleep

The FSCM is designed to detect oscillator failure at any point after the device has exited Power-on Reset (POR) or low-power Sleep mode. When the primary system clock is EC, RC or INTRC modes, monitoring can begin immediately following these events.

For oscillator modes involving a crystal or resonator (HS, LP or XT), the situation is somewhat different. Since the oscillator may require a start-up time considerably longer than the FSCM sample clock time, a false clock failure may be detected. To prevent this, the internal oscillator block is automatically configured as the system clock and functions until the primary clock is stable (the OST and PLL timers have timed out). This is identical to Two-Speed Start-up mode. Once the primary clock is stable, the INTR returns to its role as the FSCM source.

Note:	The same logic that prevents false oscillator failure interrupts on POR or wake from Sleep, will also prevent the detection of the oscillator's failure to start at all following these events. This can be avoided by monitoring the OSTS bit and using a timing routine to determine if the oscillator is taking too long to start. Even so, no oscillator failure interrupt will be flagged.

15.18 Power-down Mode (Sleep)

Power-down mode is entered by executing a SLEEP instruction.

If enabled, the Watchdog Timer will be cleared but keeps running, the $\overline{PD}$ bit (Status<3>) is cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ (Status<4>) bit is set and the oscillator driver is turned off. The I/O ports maintain the status they had before the SLEEP instruction was executed (driving high, low or high-impedance).

For lowest current consumption in this mode, place all I/O pins at either V_{DD} or V_{SS}, ensure no external circuitry is drawing current from the I/O pin, power-down the A/D and disable external clocks. Pull all I/O pins that are high-impedance inputs, high or low externally, to avoid switching currents caused by floating inputs. The T0CKI input should also be at V_{DD} or V_{SS} for lowest current consumption. The contribution from on-chip pull-ups on PORTB should also be considered.

The $\overline{MCLR}$ pin must be at a logic high level (V_{IHMC}).

15.18.1 WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The device can wake-up from Sleep through one of the following events:

1. External Reset input on $\overline{MCLR}$ pin.
2. Watchdog Timer wake-up (if WDT was enabled).
3. Interrupt from INT pin, RB port change or a peripheral interrupt.

External $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset will cause a device Reset. All other events are considered a continuation of program execution and cause a "wake-up". The $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ bits in the Status register can be used to determine the cause of the device Reset. The $\overline{PD}$ bit, which is set on power-up, is cleared when Sleep is invoked. The $\overline{TO}$ bit is cleared if a WDT time-out occurred and caused wake-up.

The following peripheral interrupts can wake the device from Sleep:

1. TMR1 interrupt. Timer1 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
2. CCP Capture mode interrupt.
3. Special event trigger (Timer1 in Asynchronous mode using an external clock).
4. SSP (Start/Stop) bit detect interrupt.
5. SSP transmit or receive in Slave mode (SPI/I^2C).
6. A/D conversion (when A/D clock source is RC).
7. EEPROM write operation completion.
8. Comparator output changes state.
9. USART RX or TX (Synchronous Slave mode).

Other peripherals cannot generate interrupts since during Sleep, no on-chip clocks are present.

When the SLEEP instruction is being executed, the next instruction (PC + 1) is prefetched. For the device to wake-up through an interrupt event, the corresponding interrupt enable bit must be set (enabled). Wake-up occurs regardless of the state of the GIE bit. If the GIE bit is clear (disabled), the device continues execution at the instruction after the SLEEP instruction. If the GIE bit is set (enabled), the device executes the instruction after the SLEEP instruction and then branches to the interrupt address (0004h). In cases where the execution of the instruction following SLEEP is not desirable, the user should have a NOP after the SLEEP instruction.

15.18.2 WAKE-UP USING INTERRUPTS

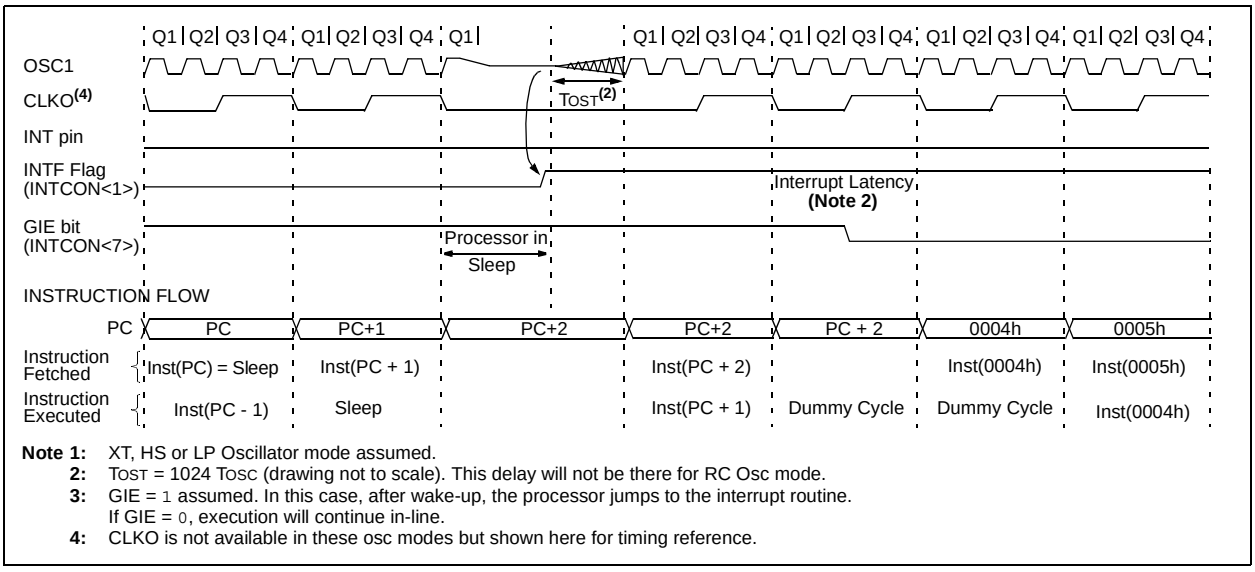
When global interrupts are disabled (GIE cleared) and any interrupt source has both its interrupt enable bit and interrupt flag bit set, one of the following will occur:

- If the interrupt occurs **before** the execution of a SLEEP instruction, the SLEEP instruction will complete as a NOP. Therefore, the WDT and WDT prescaler and postscaler (if enabled) will not be cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ bit will not be set and the $\overline{PD}$ bit will not be cleared.
- If the interrupt occurs **during or after** the execution of a SLEEP instruction, the device will immediately wake-up from Sleep. The SLEEP instruction will be completely executed before the wake-up. Therefore, the WDT and WDT prescaler and postscaler (if enabled) will be cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ bit will be set and the $\overline{PD}$ bit will be cleared.

Even if the flag bits were checked before executing a SLEEP instruction, it may be possible for flag bits to become set before the SLEEP instruction completes. To determine whether a SLEEP instruction executed, test the $\overline{PD}$ bit. If the $\overline{PD}$ bit is set, the SLEEP instruction was executed as a *NOP*.

To ensure that the WDT is cleared, a CLRWDT instruction should be executed before a SLEEP instruction.

FIGURE 15-16: WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP THROUGH INTERRUPT



Note 1: XT, HS or LP Oscillator mode assumed.
2: TOST = 1024 TOSC (drawing not to scale). This delay will not be there for RC Osc mode.
3: GIE = 1 assumed. In this case, after wake-up, the processor jumps to the interrupt routine. If GIE = 0, execution will continue in-line.
4: CLKO is not available in these osc modes but shown here for timing reference.

15.19 In-Circuit Debugger

When the DEBUG bit in the Configuration Word is programmed to a '0', the in-circuit debugger functionality is enabled. This function allows simple debugging functions when used with MPLAB® ICD. When the microcontroller has this feature enabled, some of the resources are not available for general use. Table 15-7 shows which features are consumed by the background debugger.

TABLE 15-7: DEBUGGER RESOURCES

I/O pins	RB6, RB7
Stack	1 level
Program Memory	Address 0000h must be NOP
	Last 100h words
Data Memory	0x070 (0x0F0, 0x170, 0x1F0) 0x1EB-0x1EF

To use the in-circuit debugger function of the microcontroller, the design must implement In-Circuit Serial Programming connections to $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$, V_{DD}, GND, RB7 and RB6. This will interface to the in-circuit debugger module available from Microchip, or one of the third party development tool companies.

15.20 Program Verification/Code Protection

If the code protection bit(s) have not been programmed, the on-chip program memory can be read out for verification purposes.

15.21 ID Locations

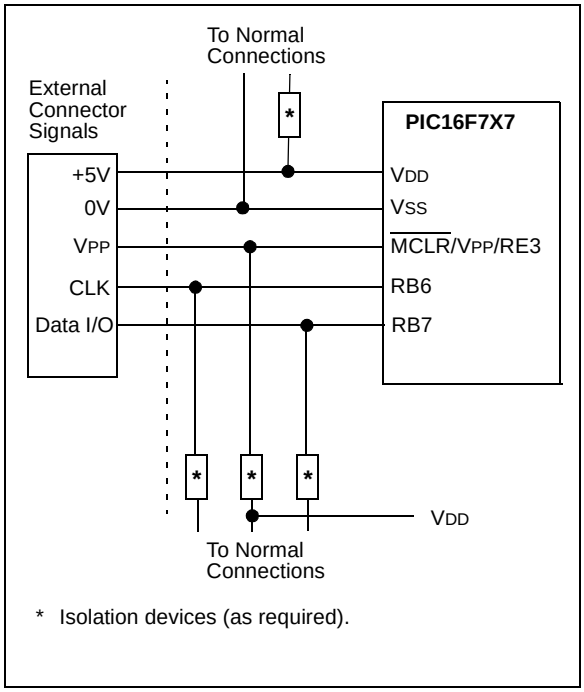
Four memory locations (2000h-2003h) are designated as ID locations, where the user can store checksum or other code identification numbers. These locations are not accessible during normal execution, but are readable and writable during program/verify. It is recommended that only the four Least Significant bits of the ID location are used.

15.22 In-Circuit Serial Programming

PIC16F7X7 microcontrollers can be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for clock and data and three other lines for power, ground and the programming voltage (see Figure 15-17 for an example). This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices and then program the microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

For general information of serial programming, please refer to the In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) Guide (DS30277).

FIGURE 15-17: TYPICAL IN-CIRCUIT SERIAL PROGRAMMING CONNECTION



16.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

The PIC16 instruction set is highly orthogonal and is comprised of three basic categories:

- **Byte-oriented** operations
- **Bit-oriented** operations
- **Literal and control** operations

Each PIC16 instruction is a 14-bit word divided into an **opcode,** which specifies the instruction type and one or more **operands,** which further specify the operation of the instruction. The formats for each of the categories are presented in Figure 16-1, while the various opcode fields are summarized in Table 16-1.

Table 13-2 lists the instructions recognized by the MPASM™ Assembler. A complete description of each instruction is also available in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023).

For **byte-oriented** instructions, 'f' represents a file register designator and 'd' represents a destination designator. The file register designator specifies which file register is to be used by the instruction.

The destination designator specifies where the result of the operation is to be placed. If 'd' is zero, the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is one, the result is placed in the file register specified in the instruction.

For **bit-oriented** instructions, 'b' represents a bit field designator which selects the bit affected by the operation, while 'f' represents the address of the file in which the bit is located.

For **literal and control** operations, 'k' represents an eight or eleven-bit constant or literal value

One instruction cycle consists of four oscillator periods; for an oscillator frequency of 4 MHz, this gives a normal instruction execution time of 1 µs. All instructions are executed within a single instruction cycle, unless a conditional test is true, or the program counter is changed as a result of an instruction. When this occurs, the execution takes two instruction cycles, with the second cycle executed as a NOP.

Note:	To maintain upward compatibility with future PIC16F7X7 products, do not use the OPTION and TRIS instructions.

All instruction examples use the format '0xhh' to represent a hexadecimal number, where 'h' signifies a hexadecimal digit.

16.1 Read-Modify-Write Operations

Any instruction that specifies a file register as part of the instruction performs a Read-Modify-Write (R-M-W) operation. The register is read, the data is modified, and the result is stored according to either the instruction, or the destination designator 'd'. A read operation is performed on a register even if the instruction writes to that register.

For example, a "CLRF PORTB" instruction will read PORTB, clear all the data bits, then write the result back to PORTB. This example would have the unintended result that the condition that sets the RBIF flag would be cleared for pins configured as inputs and using the PORTB interrupt-on-change feature.

TABLE 16-1: OPCODE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Field	Description
f	Register file address (0x00 to 0x7F)
W	Working register (accumulator)
b	Bit address within an 8-bit file register
k	Literal field, constant data or label
x	Don't care location (= 0 or 1). The assembler will generate code with x = 0. It is the recommended form of use for compatibility with all Microchip software tools.
d	Destination select; d = 0: store result in W, d = 1: store result in file register f. Default is d = 1.
PC	Program Counter
TO	Time-out bit
PD	Power-down bit

FIGURE 16-1: GENERAL FORMAT FOR INSTRUCTIONS

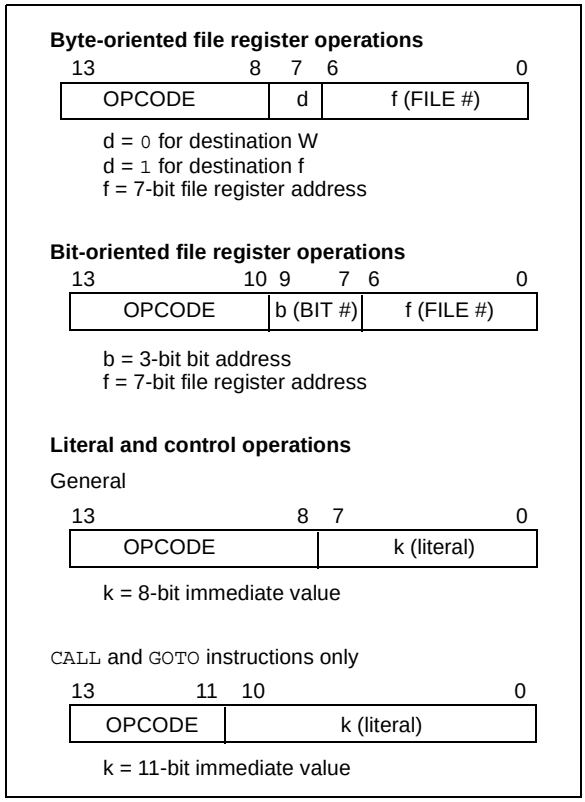


TABLE 16-2: PIC16F7X7 INSTRUCTION SET

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	14-Bit Opcode MSb			LSb	Status Affected	Notes
BYTE-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
ADDWF	f, d	Add W and f	1	00	0111	dfff	ffff	C, DC, Z	1, 2
ANDWF	f, d	AND W with f	1	00	0101	dfff	ffff	Z	1, 2
CLRF	f	Clear f	1	00	0001	lfff	ffff	Z	2
CLRW	-	Clear W	1	00	0001	0xxx	xxxx	Z	
COMF	f, d	Complement f	1	00	1001	dfff	ffff	Z	1, 2
DECF	f, d	Decrement f	1	00	0011	dfff	ffff	Z	1, 2
DECFSZ	f, d	Decrement f, Skip if 0	1(2)	00	1011	dfff	ffff		1, 2, 3
INCF	f, d	Increment f	1	00	1010	dfff	ffff	Z	1, 2
INCFSZ	f, d	Increment f, Skip if 0	1(2)	00	1111	dfff	ffff		1, 2, 3
IORWF	f, d	Inclusive OR W with f	1	00	0100	dfff	ffff	Z	1, 2
MOVF	f, d	Move f	1	00	1000	dfff	ffff	Z	1, 2
MOVWF	f	Move W to f	1	00	0000	lfff	ffff		
NOP	-	No Operation	1	00	0000	0xx0	0000		
RLF	f, d	Rotate Left f through Carry	1	00	1101	dfff	ffff	C	1,2
RRF	f, d	Rotate Right f through Carry	1	00	1100	dfff	ffff	C	1, 2
SUBWF	f, d	Subtract W from f	1	00	0010	dfff	ffff	C, DC, Z	1, 2
SWAPF	f, d	Swap nibbles in f	1	00	1110	dfff	ffff		1, 2
XORWF	f, d	Exclusive OR W with f	1	00	0110	dfff	ffff	Z	1, 2
BIT-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
BCF	f, b	Bit Clear f	1	01	00bb	bfff	ffff		1, 2
BSF	f, b	Bit Set f	1	01	01bb	bfff	ffff		1, 2
BTFSC	f, b	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear	1 (2)	01	10bb	bfff	ffff		3
BTFSS	f, b	Bit Test f, Skip if Set	1 (2)	01	11bb	bfff	ffff		3
LITERAL AND CONTROL OPERATIONS									
ADDLW	k	Add literal and W	1	11	111x	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z	
ANDLW	k	AND literal with W	1	11	1001	kkkk	kkkk	Z	
CALL	k	Call subroutine	2	10	0kkk	kkkk	kkkk		
CLRWDT	-	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	00	0000	0110	0100	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	
GOTO	k	Go to address	2	10	1kkk	kkkk	kkkk		
IORLW	k	Inclusive OR literal with W	1	11	1000	kkkk	kkkk	Z	
MOVLW	k	Move literal to W	1	11	00xx	kkkk	kkkk		
RETFIE	-	Return from interrupt	2	00	0000	0000	1001		
RETLW	k	Return with literal in W	2	11	01xx	kkkk	kkkk		
RETURN	-	Return from Subroutine	2	00	0000	0000	1000		
SLEEP	-	Go into Standby mode	1	00	0000	0110	0011	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	
SUBLW	k	Subtract W from literal	1	11	110x	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z	
XORLW	k	Exclusive OR literal with W	1	11	1010	kkkk	kkkk	Z	

Note 1: When an I/O register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned to the Timer0 module.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

Note: Additional information on the mid-range instruction set is available in the PICmicro® Mid-Range MCU Family Reference Manual (DS33023).

16.2 Instruction Descriptions

ADDLW	Add Literal and W
Syntax:	[*label*] ADDLW k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 255
Operation:	(W) + k → (W)
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z
Description:	The contents of the W register are added to the eight-bit literal 'k' and the result is placed in the W register.

ADDWF	Add W and f
Syntax:	[*label*] ADDWF f,d
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(W) + (f) → (destination)
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z
Description:	Add the contents of the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

ANDLW	AND Literal with W
Syntax:	[*label*] ANDLW k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 255
Operation:	(W) .AND. (k) → (W)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of W register are AND'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

ANDWF	AND W with f
Syntax:	[*label*] ANDWF f,d
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(W) .AND. (f) → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	AND the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

BCF	Bit Clear f
Syntax:	[*label*] BCF f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	0 → (f<b>)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Bit 'b' in register 'f' is cleared.

BSF	Bit Set f
Syntax:	[*label*] BSF f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	1 → (f<b>)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Bit 'b' in register 'f' is set.

BTFSS	Bit Test f, Skip if Set
Syntax:	[*label*] BTFSS f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b < 7
Operation:	skip if (f<b>) = 1
Status Affected:	None
Description:	If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '0', the next instruction is executed. If bit 'b' is '1', then the next instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a 2 TCY instruction.

BTFSC	Bit Test, Skip if Clear
Syntax:	[*label*] BTFSC f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	skip if (f<b>) = 0
Status Affected:	None
Description:	If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '1', the next instruction is executed. If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '0', the next instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a 2 TCY instruction.

CALL	Call Subroutine
Syntax:	[*label*] CALL k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 2047
Operation:	(PC)+ 1→ TOS, k → PC<10:0>, (PCLATH<4:3>) → PC<12:11>
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Call Subroutine. First, return address (PC+1) is pushed onto the stack. The eleven-bit immediate address is loaded into PC bits<10:0>. The upper bits of the PC are loaded from PCLATH. CALL is a two-cycle instruction.

CLRF	Clear f
Syntax:	[*label*] CLRF f
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127
Operation:	00h → (f) 1 → Z
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are cleared and the Z bit is set.

CLRW	Clear W
Syntax:	[*label*] CLRW
Operands:	None
Operation:	00h → (W) 1 → Z
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	W register is cleared. Zero bit (Z) is set.

CLRWDT	Clear Watchdog Timer
Syntax:	[*label*] CLRWDT
Operands:	None
Operation:	00h → WDT 0 → WDT prescaler, 1 → $\overline{TO}$ 1 → $\overline{PD}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$
Description:	CLRWDT instruction resets the Watchdog Timer. It also resets the prescaler of the WDT. Status bits, $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$, are set.

COMF	Complement f
Syntax:	[*label*] COMF f,d
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	($\bar{f}$) → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are complemented. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

DECF	Decrement f
Syntax:	[*label*] DECF f,d
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f) - 1 → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Decrement register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

DECFSZ **Decrement f, Skip if 0**

Syntax:	[*label*] DECFSZ f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) - 1 → (destination); skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'. If the result is '1', the next instruction is executed. If the result is '0', then a NOP is executed instead, making it a 2 TCY instruction.

GOTO **Unconditional Branch**

Syntax:	[*label*] GOTO k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 2047$
Operation:	k → PC<10:0> PCLATH<4:3> → PC<12:11>
Status Affected:	None
Description:	GOTO is an unconditional branch. The eleven-bit immediate value is loaded into PC bits<10:0>. The upper bits of PC are loaded from PCLATH<4:3>. GOTO is a two-cycle instruction.

INCF **Increment f**

Syntax:	[*label*] INCF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.

INCFSZ **Increment f, Skip if 0**

Syntax:	[*label*] INCFSZ f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → (destination), skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'. If the result is '1', the next instruction is executed. If the result is '0', a NOP is executed instead, making it a 2 TCY instruction.

IORLW **Inclusive OR Literal with W**

Syntax:	[*label*] IORLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) .OR. k → (W)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of the W register are OR'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

IORWF **Inclusive OR W with f**

Syntax:	[*label*] IORWF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .OR. (f) → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Inclusive OR the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.

MOVF	Move f
Syntax:	[*label*] MOVF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are moved to a destination dependant upon the status of 'd'. If d = 0, the destination is W register. If d = 1, the destination is file register 'f' itself. d = 1 is useful to test a file register since status flag Z is affected.

MOVLW	Move Literal to W
Syntax:	[*label*] MOVLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	k → (W)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The eight-bit literal 'k' is loaded into W register. The don't cares will assemble as '0's.

MOVWF	Move W to f
Syntax:	[*label*] MOVWF f
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$
Operation:	(W) → (f)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Move data from W register to register 'f'.

NOP	No Operation
Syntax:	[*label*] NOP
Operands:	None
Operation:	No operation
Status Affected:	None
Description:	No operation.

RETFIE	Return from Interrupt
Syntax:	[*label*] RETFIE
Operands:	None
Operation:	TOS → PC, 1 → GIE
Status Affected:	None

RETLW	Return with Literal in W
Syntax:	[*label*] RETLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	k → (W); TOS → PC
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The W register is loaded with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The program counter is loaded from the top of the stack (the return address). This is a two-cycle instruction.

RLF **Rotate Left f through Carry**

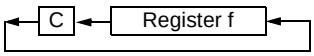
Syntax: [*label*] RLF f,d

Operands: $0 \le f \le 127$
$d \in [0,1]$

Operation: See description below

Status Affected: C

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.



RETURN **Return from Subroutine**

Syntax: [*label*] RETURN

Operands: None

Operation: TOS → PC

Status Affected: None

Description: Return from subroutine. The stack is POPed and the top of the stack (TOS) is loaded into the program counter. This is a two-cycle instruction.

RRF **Rotate Right f through Carry**

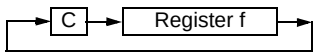
Syntax: [*label*] RRF f,d

Operands: $0 \le f \le 127$
$d \in [0,1]$

Operation: See description below

Status Affected: C

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.



SLEEP

Syntax: [*label*] SLEEP

Operands: None

Operation: 00h → WDT,
0 → WDT prescaler,
1 → $\overline{TO}$,
0 → $\overline{PD}$

Status Affected: $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$

Description: The power-down status bit, $\overline{PD}$, is cleared. Time-out status bit, $\overline{TO}$, is set. Watchdog Timer and its prescaler are cleared.
The processor is put into Sleep mode with the oscillator stopped.

SUBLW **Subtract W from Literal**

Syntax: [*label*] SUBLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: k - (W) → (W)

Status Affected: C, DC, Z

Description: The W register is subtracted (2's complement method) from the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

SUBWF **Subtract W from f**

Syntax: [*label*] SUBWF f,d

Operands: $0 \le f \le 127$
$d \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) - (W) → (destination)

Status Affected: C, DC, Z

Description: Subtract (2's complement method) W register from register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

SWAPF	Swap Nibbles in f
Syntax:	[*label*] SWAPF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f<3:0>) → (destination<7:4>), (f<7:4>) → (destination<3:0>)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The upper and lower nibbles of register 'f' are exchanged. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed in register 'f'.

XORLW	Exclusive OR Literal with W
Syntax:	[*label*] XORLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) .XOR. k → (W)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of the W register are XOR'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

XORWF	Exclusive OR W with f
Syntax:	[*label*] XORWF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .XOR. (f) → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Exclusive OR the contents of the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

17.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PICmicro® microcontrollers are supported with a full range of hardware and software development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
  - MPLAB® IDE Software
- Assemblers/Compilers/Linkers
  - MPASM™ Assembler
  - MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers
  - MPLINK™ Object Linker/ MPLIB™ Object Librarian
  - MPLAB C30 C Compiler
  - MPLAB ASM30 Assembler/Linker/Library
- Simulators
  - MPLAB SIM Software Simulator
  - MPLAB dsPIC30 Software Simulator
- Emulators
  - MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator
  - MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debugger
  - MPLAB ICD 2
- Device Programmers
  - PRO MATE® II Universal Device Programmer
  - PICSTART® Plus Development Programmer
- Low-Cost Demonstration Boards
  - PICDEM™ 1 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM.net™ Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 2 Plus Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 3 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 4 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 18R Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM LIN Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM USB Demonstration Board
- Evaluation Kits
  - KEELOQ®
  - PICDEM MSC
  - microID®
  - CAN
  - PowerSmart®
  - Analog

17.1 MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB IDE software brings an ease of software development previously unseen in the 8/16-bit microcontroller market. The MPLAB IDE is a Windows® based application that contains:

- An interface to debugging tools
  - simulator
  - programmer (sold separately)
  - emulator (sold separately)
  - in-circuit debugger (sold separately)
- A full-featured editor with color coded context
- A multiple project manager
- Customizable data windows with direct edit of contents
- High-level source code debugging
- Mouse over variable inspection
- Extensive on-line help

The MPLAB IDE allows you to:

- Edit your source files (either assembly or C)
- One touch assemble (or compile) and download to PICmicro emulator and simulator tools (automatically updates all project information)
- Debug using:
  - source files (assembly or C)
  - absolute listing file (mixed assembly and C)
  - machine code

MPLAB IDE supports multiple debugging tools in a single development paradigm, from the cost effective simulators, through low-cost in-circuit debuggers, to full-featured emulators. This eliminates the learning curve when upgrading to tools with increasing flexibility and power.

17.2 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM assembler is a full-featured, universal macro assembler for all PICmicro MCUs.

The MPASM assembler generates relocatable object files for the MPLINK object linker, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, absolute LST files that contain source lines and generated machine code and COFF files for debugging.

The MPASM assembler features include:

- Integration into MPLAB IDE projects
- User defined macros to streamline assembly code
- Conditional assembly for multi-purpose source files
- Directives that allow complete control over the assembly process

17.3 MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers

The MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 Code Development Systems are complete ANSI C compilers for Microchip's PIC17CXXX and PIC18CXXX family of microcontrollers. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities, superior code optimization and ease of use not found with other compilers.

For easy source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is optimized to the MPLAB IDE debugger.

17.4 MPLINK Object Linker/ MPLIB Object Librarian

The MPLINK object linker combines relocatable objects created by the MPASM assembler and the MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C compilers. It can link relocatable objects from precompiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB object librarian manages the creation and modification of library files of precompiled code. When a routine from a library is called from a source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications.

The object linker/library features include:

- Efficient linking of single libraries instead of many smaller files
- Enhanced code maintainability by grouping related modules together
- Flexible creation of libraries with easy module listing, replacement, deletion and extraction

17.5 MPLAB C30 C Compiler

The MPLAB C30 C compiler is a full-featured, ANSI compliant, optimizing compiler that translates standard ANSI C programs into dsPIC30F assembly language source. The compiler also supports many command-line options and language extensions to take full advantage of the dsPIC30F device hardware capabilities and afford fine control of the compiler code generator.

MPLAB C30 is distributed with a complete ANSI C standard library. All library functions have been validated and conform to the ANSI C library standard. The library includes functions for string manipulation, dynamic memory allocation, data conversion, time-keeping and math functions (trigonometric, exponential and hyperbolic). The compiler provides symbolic information for high-level source debugging with the MPLAB IDE.

17.6 MPLAB ASM30 Assembler, Linker and Librarian

MPLAB ASM30 assembler produces relocatable machine code from symbolic assembly language for dsPIC30F devices. MPLAB C30 compiler uses the assembler to produce it's object file. The assembler generates relocatable object files that can then be archived or linked with other relocatable object files and archives to create an executable file. Notable features of the assembler include:

- Support for the entire dsPIC30F instruction set
- Support for fixed-point and floating-point data
- Command line interface
- Rich directive set
- Flexible macro language
- MPLAB IDE compatibility

17.7 MPLAB SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM software simulator allows code development in a PC hosted environment by simulating the PICmicro series microcontrollers on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a file, or user defined key press, to any pin. The execution can be performed in Single-Step, Execute Until Break or Trace mode.

The MPLAB SIM simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers, as well as the MPASM assembler. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the laboratory environment, making it an excellent, economical software development tool.

17.8 MPLAB SIM30 Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM30 software simulator allows code development in a PC hosted environment by simulating the dsPIC30F series microcontrollers on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a file, or user defined key press, to any of the pins.

The MPLAB SIM30 simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C30 C Compiler and MPLAB ASM30 assembler. The simulator runs in either a Command Line mode for automated tasks, or from MPLAB IDE. This high-speed simulator is designed to debug, analyze and optimize time intensive DSP routines.

17.9 MPLAB ICE 2000 High-Performance Universal In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 2000 universal in-circuit emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for PICmicro microcontrollers. Software control of the MPLAB ICE 2000 in-circuit emulator is advanced by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 is a full-featured emulator system with enhanced trace, trigger and data monitoring features. Interchangeable processor modules allow the system to be easily reconfigured for emulation of different processors. The universal architecture of the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator allows expansion to support new PICmicro microcontrollers.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 in-circuit emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft® Windows 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

17.10 MPLAB ICE 4000 High-Performance Universal In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 4000 universal in-circuit emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for high-end PICmicro microcontrollers. Software control of the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator is provided by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICD 4000 is a premium emulator system, providing the features of MPLAB ICE 2000, but with increased emulation memory and high-speed performance for dsPIC30F and PIC18XXXX devices. Its advanced emulator features include complex triggering and timing, up to 2 Mb of emulation memory and the ability to view variables in real-time.

The MPLAB ICE 4000 in-circuit emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft Windows 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

17.11 MPLAB ICD 2 In-Circuit Debugger

Microchip's In-Circuit Debugger, MPLAB ICD 2, is a powerful, low-cost, run-time development tool, connecting to the host PC via an RS-232 or high-speed USB interface. This tool is based on the Flash PICmicro MCUs and can be used to develop for these and other PICmicro microcontrollers. The MPLAB ICD 2 utilizes the in-circuit debugging capability built into the Flash devices. This feature, along with Microchip's In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) protocol, offers cost effective in-circuit Flash debugging from the graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment. This enables a designer to develop and debug source code by setting breakpoints, single-stepping and watching variables, CPU status and peripheral registers. Running at full speed enables testing hardware and applications in real-time. MPLAB ICD 2 also serves as a development programmer for selected PICmicro devices.

17.12 PRO MATE II Universal Device Programmer

The PRO MATE II is a universal, CE compliant device programmer with programmable voltage verification at V_{DDMIN} and V_{DDMAX} for maximum reliability. It features an LCD display for instructions and error messages and a modular detachable socket assembly to support various package types. In Stand-Alone mode, the PRO MATE II device programmer can read, verify and program PICmicro devices without a PC connection. It can also set code protection in this mode.

17.13 PICSTART Plus Development Programmer

The PICSTART Plus development programmer is an easy-to-use, low-cost, prototype programmer. It connects to the PC via a COM (RS-232) port. MPLAB Integrated Development Environment software makes using the programmer simple and efficient. The PICSTART Plus development programmer supports most PICmicro devices up to 40 pins. Larger pin count devices, such as the PIC16C92X and PIC17C76X, may be supported with an adapter socket. The PICSTART Plus development programmer is CE compliant.

17.14 PICDEM 1 PICmicro Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 1 demonstration board demonstrates the capabilities of the PIC16C5X (PIC16C54 to PIC16C58A), PIC16C61, PIC16C62X, PIC16C71, PIC16C8X, PIC17C42, PIC17C43 and PIC17C44. All necessary hardware and software is included to run basic demo programs. The sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 1 demonstration board can be programmed with a PRO MATE II device programmer or a PICSTART Plus development programmer. The PICDEM 1 demonstration board can be connected to the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator for testing. A prototype area extends the circuitry for additional application components. Features include an RS-232 interface, a potentiometer for simulated analog input, push button switches and eight LEDs.

17.15 PICDEM.net Internet/Ethernet Demonstration Board

The PICDEM.net demonstration board is an Internet/ Ethernet demonstration board using the PIC18F452 microcontroller and TCP/IP firmware. The board supports any 40-pin DIP device that conforms to the standard pinout used by the PIC16F877 or PIC18C452. This kit features a user friendly TCP/IP stack, web server with HTML, a 24L256 Serial EEPROM for Xmodem download to web pages into Serial EEPROM, ICSP/MPLAB ICD 2 interface connector, an Ethernet interface, RS-232 interface and a 16 x 2 LCD display. Also included is the book and CD-ROM *"TCP/IP Lean, Web Servers for Embedded Systems,"* by Jeremy Bentham

17.16 PICDEM 2 Plus Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 2 Plus demonstration board supports many 18, 28 and 40-pin microcontrollers, including PIC16F87X and PIC18FXX2 devices. All the necessary hardware and software is included to run the demonstration programs. The sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 2 demonstration board can be programmed with a PRO MATE II device programmer, PICSTART Plus development programmer, or MPLAB ICD 2 with a Universal Programmer Adapter. The MPLAB ICD 2 and MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulators may also be used with the PICDEM 2 demonstration board to test firmware. A prototype area extends the circuitry for additional application components. Some of the features include an RS-232 interface, a 2 x 16 LCD display, a piezo speaker, an on-board temperature sensor, four LEDs and sample PIC18F452 and PIC16F877 Flash microcontrollers.

17.17 PICDEM 3 PIC16C92X Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 3 demonstration board supports the PIC16C923 and PIC16C924 in the PLCC package. All the necessary hardware and software is included to run the demonstration programs.

17.18 PICDEM 4 8/14/18-Pin Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 4 can be used to demonstrate the capabilities of the 8, 14 and 18-pin PIC16XXXX and PIC18XXXX MCUs, including the PIC16F818/819, PIC16F87/88, PIC16F62XA and the PIC18F1320 family of microcontrollers. PICDEM 4 is intended to showcase the many features of these low pin count parts, including LIN and Motor Control using ECCP. Special provisions are made for low-power operation with the supercapacitor circuit and jumpers allow on-board hardware to be disabled to eliminate current draw in this mode. Included on the demo board are provisions for Crystal, RC or Canned Oscillator modes, a five volt regulator for use with a nine volt wall adapter or battery, DB-9 RS-232 interface, ICD connector for programming via ICSP and development with MPLAB ICD 2, 2x16 liquid crystal display, PCB footprints for H-Bridge motor driver, LIN transceiver and EEPROM. Also included are: header for expansion, eight LEDs, four potentiometers, three push buttons and a prototyping area. Included with the kit is a PIC16F627A and a PIC18F1320. Tutorial firmware is included along with the User's Guide.

17.19 PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 17 demonstration board is an evaluation board that demonstrates the capabilities of several Microchip microcontrollers, including PIC17C752, PIC17C756A, PIC17C762 and PIC17C766. A programmed sample is included. The PRO MATE II device programmer, or the PICSTART Plus development programmer, can be used to reprogram the device for user tailored application development. The PICDEM 17 demonstration board supports program download and execution from external on-board Flash memory. A generous prototype area is available for user hardware expansion.

17.20 PICDEM 18R PIC18C601/801 Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 18R demonstration board serves to assist development of the PIC18C601/801 family of Microchip microcontrollers. It provides hardware implementation of both 8-bit Multiplexed/Demultiplexed and 16-bit Memory modes. The board includes 2 Mb external Flash memory and 128 Kb SRAM memory, as well as serial EEPROM, allowing access to the wide range of memory types supported by the PIC18C601/801.

17.21 PICDEM LIN PIC16C43X Demonstration Board

The powerful LIN hardware and software kit includes a series of boards and three PICmicro microcontrollers. The small footprint PIC16C432 and PIC16C433 are used as slaves in the LIN communication and feature on-board LIN transceivers. A PIC16F874 Flash microcontroller serves as the master. All three microcontrollers are programmed with firmware to provide LIN bus communication.

17.22 PICkit™ 1 Flash Starter Kit

A complete “development system in a box”, the PICkit Flash Starter Kit includes a convenient multi-section board for programming, evaluation and development of 8/14-pin Flash PIC® microcontrollers. Powered via USB, the board operates under a simple Windows GUI. The PICkit 1 Starter Kit includes the user's guide (on CD ROM), PICkit 1 tutorial software and code for various applications. Also included are MPLAB® IDE (Integrated Development Environment) software, software and hardware “Tips 'n Tricks for 8-pin Flash PIC® Microcontrollers” Handbook and a USB Interface Cable. Supports all current 8/14-pin Flash PIC microcontrollers, as well as many future planned devices.

17.23 PICDEM USB PIC16C7X5 Demonstration Board

The PICDEM USB Demonstration Board shows off the capabilities of the PIC16C745 and PIC16C765 USB microcontrollers. This board provides the basis for future USB products.

17.24 Evaluation and Programming Tools

In addition to the PICDEM series of circuits, Microchip has a line of evaluation kits and demonstration software for these products.

- KEELOQ evaluation and programming tools for Microchip’s HCS Secure Data Products
- CAN developers kit for automotive network applications
- Analog design boards and filter design software
- PowerSmart battery charging evaluation/ calibration kits
- IrDA® development kit
- microID development and rfLab™ development software
- SEEVAL® designer kit for memory evaluation and endurance calculations
- PICDEM MSC demo boards for Switching mode power supply, high-power IR driver, delta sigma ADC and flow rate sensor

Check the Microchip web page and the latest Product Line Card for the complete list of demonstration and evaluation kits.

NOTES:

18.0 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Absolute Maximum Ratings †

Ambient temperature under bias ..... -55 to +125°C

Storage temperature ..... -65°C to +150°C

Voltage on any pin with respect to V_{SS} (except V_{DD}, $\overline{MCLR}$. and RA4) ..... -0.3V to (V_{DD} + 0.3V)

Voltage on V_{DD} with respect to V_{SS} ..... -0.3 to +6.5V

Voltage on $\overline{MCLR}$ with respect to V_{SS} **(Note 2)** ..... 0 to +13.5V

Voltage on RA4 with respect to Vss ..... 0 to +12V

Total power dissipation **(Note 1)** 1.0W

Maximum current out of V_{SS} pin ..... 300 mA

Maximum current into V_{DD} pin ..... 250 mA

Input clamp current, I_{IK} (V_I < 0 or V_I > V_{DD}) ..... ± 20 mA

Output clamp current, I_{OK} (V_O < 0 or V_O > V_{DD}) ..... ± 20 mA

Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin ..... 25 mA

Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin ..... 25 mA

Maximum current sunk by PORTA, PORTB and PORTE (combined) **(Note 3)** ..... 200 mA

Maximum current sourced by PORTA, PORTB and PORTE (combined) **(Note 3)** ..... 200 mA

Maximum current sunk by PORTC and PORTD (combined) **(Note 3)** ..... 200 mA

Maximum current sourced by PORTC and PORTD (combined) **(Note 3)** ..... 200 mA

Note 1: Power dissipation is calculated as follows: Pdis = V_{DD} x {I_{DD} - $\sum I_{OH}$} + $\sum$ {(V_{DD} - V_{OH}) x I_{OH}} + $\sum$(Vol x I_{OL})

2: Voltage spikes at the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin may cause latchup. A series resistor of greater than 1 kΩ should be used to pull $\overline{MCLR}$ to V_{DD}, rather than tying the pin directly to V_{DD}.

3: PORTD and PORTE are not implemented on the PIC16F737/767 devices.

† NOTICE: Stresses above those listed under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

FIGURE 18-1: PIC16F7X7 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH

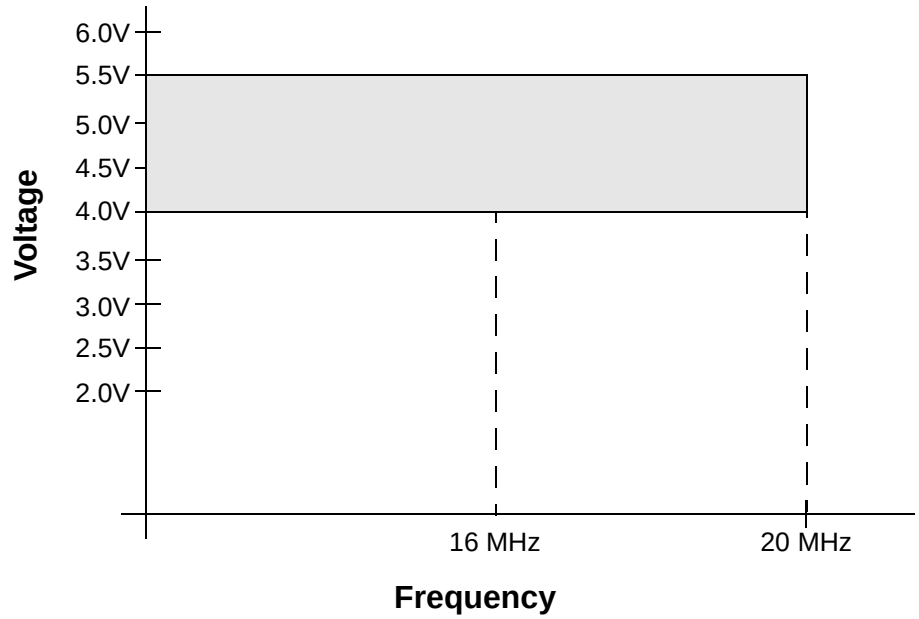
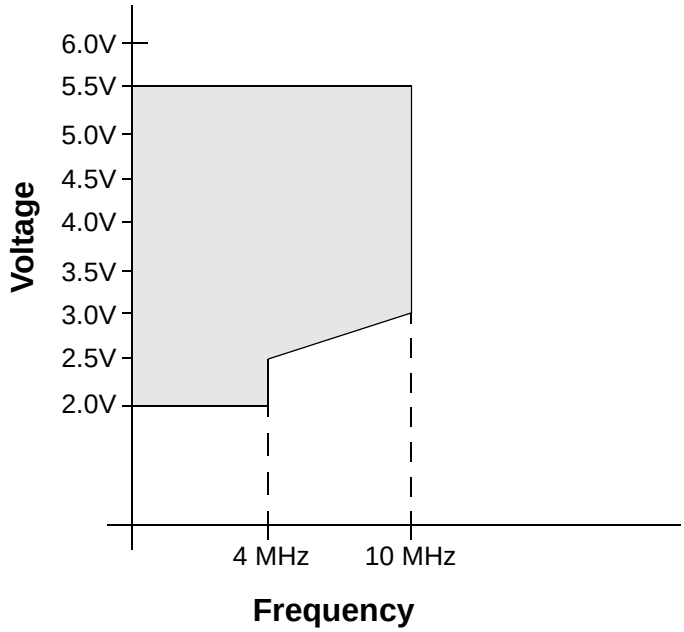


FIGURE 18-2: PIC16LF7X7 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH



FMAX = (12 MHz/V) (VDDAPPMIN - 2.5V) + 4 MHz

Note 1: VDDAPPMIN is the minimum voltage of the PICmicro® device in the application.

2: FMAX has a maximum frequency of 10 MHz.

18.1 DC Characteristics: PIC16F737/747/767/777 (Industrial, Extended) PIC16LF737/747/767/777 (Industrial)

PIC16LF737/747/767/777 (Industrial)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC16F737/747/767/777 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ†**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VDD	**Supply Voltage**					
D001		PIC16LF7X7	2.5 2.2 2.0	— — —	5.5 5.5 5.5	V V V	A/D in use, -40°C to +85°C A/D in use, 0°C to +85°C A/D not used, -40°C to +85°C
D001 D001A		PIC16F7X7	4.0 VBOR*	— —	5.5 5.5	V V	All configurations BOR enabled **(Note 7)**
D002*	VDR	**RAM Data Retention Voltage (Note 1)**	—	1.5	—	V	
D003	VPOR	**VDD Start Voltage** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	—	VSS	—	V	See section on Power-on Reset for details
D004*	SVDD	**VDD Rise Rate** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	0.05	—	—	V/ms	See section on Power-on Reset for details
	VBOR	**Brown-out Reset Voltage**					
		PIC16LF7X7	Industrial Low Voltage				
D005		BORV1:BORV0 = 11	NA	—	NA	V	Reserved
		BORV1:BORV0 = 10	2.50	2.72	2.94	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 01	3.88	4.22	4.56	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 00	4.18	4.54	4.90	V	
D005		PIC16F7X7	Industrial				
		BORV1:BORV0 = 1x	NA	—	NA	V	Not in operating voltage range of device
		BORV1:BORV0 = 01	3.88	4.22	4.56	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 00	4.18	4.54	4.90	V	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of of the table.

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered without losing RAM data.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature also have an impact on the current consumption.

The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from-rail to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD
$\overline{MCLR}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD and VSS.

4: For RC osc configuration, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

5: Timer1 oscillator (when enabled) adds approximately 20 μA to the specification. This value is from characterization and is for design guidance only. This is not tested.

6: The Δ current is the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. This current should be added to the base IDD or IPD measurement.

7: When BOR is enabled, the device will operate correctly until the VBOR voltage trip point is reached.

18.2 DC Characteristics: Power-down and Supply Current PIC16F7X7 (Industrial) PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)

PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC16F7X7 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**		
	Power-down Current (IPD)(1)						
	PIC16LF7X7	0.1	0.4	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	
		0.1	0.4	µA	+25°C		
		0.4	1.5	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	0.3	0.5	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		0.3	0.5	µA	+25°C		
		0.7	1.7	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	0.6	1.0	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		0.6	1.0	µA	+25°C		
		1.2	5.0	µA	+85°C		

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.

The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:

OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;

$\overline{MCLR}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

18.2 DC Characteristics: Power-down and Supply Current PIC16F7X7 (Industrial) PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)	Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC16F7X7 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2,3)						
	PIC16LF7X7	9	20	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 32 kHz (LP Oscillator)
		7	15	µA	+25°C		
		7	15	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	16	30	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		14	25	µA	+25°C		
		14	25	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	32	40	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		26	35	µA	+25°C		
		26	35	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	72	95	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 1 MHz (RC Oscillator)(3)
		76	90	µA	+25°C		
		76	90	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	138	175	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		136	170	µA	+25°C		
		136	170	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	310	380	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		290	360	µA	+25°C		
		280	360	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	270	315	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 4 MHz (RC Oscillator)(3)
		280	310	µA	+25°C		
		285	310	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	460	610	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		450	600	µA	+25°C		
		450	600	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	900	1060	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		890	1050	µA	+25°C		
		890	1050	µA	+85°C		

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.

The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:

OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

18.2 DC Characteristics: Power-down and Supply Current PIC16F7X7 (Industrial) PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC16F7X7 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2,3)						
	All devices	1.8	2.3	mA	-40°C	VDD = 4.0V	FOSC = 20 MHz (HS Oscillator)
		1.6	2.2	mA	+25°C		
		1.3	2.2	mA	+85°C		
	All devices	3.0	4.2	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		2.5	4.0	mA	+25°C		
		2.5	4.0	mA	+85°C		

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.

The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:

OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;

MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

18.2 DC Characteristics: Power-down and Supply Current PIC16F7X7 (Industrial) PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC16F7X7 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2,3)						
	PIC16LF7X7	8	20	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 31.25 kHz (**RC_RUN** mode, Internal RC Oscillator)
		7	15	µA	+25°C		
		7	15	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	16	30	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		14	25	µA	+25°C		
		14	25	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	32	40	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		29	35	µA	+25°C		
		29	35	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	132	160	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 1 MHz (**RC_RUN** mode, Internal RC Oscillator)
		126	155	µA	+25°C		
		126	155	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	260	310	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		230	300	µA	+25°C		
		230	300	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	560	690	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		500	650	µA	+25°C		
		500	650	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	310	420	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 4 MHz (**RC_RUN** mode, Internal RC Oscillator)
		300	410	µA	+25°C		
		300	410	µA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	550	650	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		530	620	µA	+25°C		
		530	620	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	1.2	1.5	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		1.1	1.4	mA	+25°C		
		1.1	1.4	mA	+85°C		

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.

The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:

OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

18.2 DC Characteristics: Power-down and Supply Current PIC16F7X7 (Industrial) PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC16F7X7 (Industrial)		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**		
	Supply Current (I_{DD})(2,3)						
	PIC16LF7X7	.950	1.3	mA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	FOSC = 8 MHz (**RC_RUN** mode, Internal RC Oscillator)
		.930	1.2	mA	+25°C		
		.930	1.2	mA	+85°C		
	All devices	1.8	3.0	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		1.7	2.8	mA	+25°C		
		1.7	2.8	mA	+85°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	9	13	µA	-10°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 32 kHz (**SEC_RUN** mode, Timer1 as Clock)
		9	14	µA	+25°C		
		11	16	µA	+70°C		
	PIC16LF7X7	12	34	µA	-10°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		12	31	µA	+25°C		
		14	28	µA	+70°C		
	All devices	20	72	µA	-10°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		20	65	µA	+25°C		
		25	59	µA	+70°C		

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.

The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:

OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;

$\overline{MCLR}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

18.2 DC Characteristics: Power-down and Supply Current PIC16F7X7 (Industrial) PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC16F7X7 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**		
	Module Differential Currents (ΔIWDT, ΔIBOR, ΔILVD, ΔIOSCB, ΔIAD)						
D022 (ΔIWDT)	**Watchdog Timer**	1.5	3.8	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	
		2.2	3.8	µA	+25°C		
		2.7	4.0	µA	+85°C		
		2.3	4.6	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		2.7	4.6	µA	+25°C		
		3.1	4.8	µA	+85°C		
		3.0	10.0	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		3.3	10.0	µA	+25°C		
		3.9	13.0	µA	+85°C		
D022A (ΔIBOR)	**Brown-out Reset**	17	35	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		47	45	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		0	0	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V VDD = 3.0V VDD = 5.0V	BOREN:BORSEN = 10 in Sleep mode
D022B (ΔILVD)	**Low-Voltage Detect**	14	25	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V	
		18	35	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		21	45	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	
D025 (ΔIOSCB)	**Timer1 Oscillator**	1.7	2.3	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	32 kHz on Timer1
		1.8	2.3	µA	+25°C		
		2.0	2.3	µA	+85°C		
		2.2	3.8	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		2.6	3.8	µA	+25°C		
		2.9	3.8	µA	+85°C		
		3.0	6.0	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		3.2	6.0	µA	+25°C		
		3.4	7.0	µA	+85°C		
D026 (ΔIAD)	**A/D Converter**	0.001	2.0	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V	A/D on, not converting
		0.001	2.0	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		0.003	2.0	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

18.3 DC Characteristics: Internal RC Accuracy PIC16F7X7 (Industrial, Extended) PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)

PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC16F7X7 (Industrial, Extended)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
Param No.	**Device**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**	
	INTOSC Accuracy @ Freq = 8 MHz, 4 MHz, 2 MHz, 1 MHz, 500 kHz, 250 kHz, 125 kHz(1)						
	PIC16LF7X7	-2	±1	2	%	+25°C	VDD = 2.7V-3.3V
		-5	—	5	%	-10°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.7V-3.3V
		-10	—	10	%	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.7V-3.3V
	PIC16F7X7	-2	±1	2	%	+25°C	VDD = 4.5V-5.5V
		-5	—	5	%	-10°C to +85°C	VDD = 4.5V-5.5V
		-10	—	10	%	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 4.5V-5.5V
	INTRC Accuracy @ Freq = 31 kHz(2)						
	PIC16LF7X7	26.562	—	35.938	kHz	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.7V-3.3V
	PIC16F7X7	26.562	—	35.938	kHz	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 4.5V-5.5V

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: Frequency calibrated at 25°C. OSCTUNE register can be used to compensate for temperature drift.

2: INTRC is used to calibrate INTOSC.

18.4 DC Characteristics: PIC16F737/747/767/777 (Industrial, Extended) PIC16LF737/747/767/777 (Industrial)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended Operating voltage VDD range as described in **Section 18.1 "DC Characteristics"**.				
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ†**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VIL	**Input Low Voltage**					
		I/O ports:					
D030		with TTL buffer	VSS	—	0.15 VDD	V	For entire VDD range
D030A			VSS	—	0.8V	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D031		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	VSS	—	0.2 VDD	V	
D032		$\overline{MCLR}$, OSC1 (in RC mode)	VSS	—	0.2 VDD	V	**(Note 1)**
D033		OSC1 (in XT and LP mode)	VSS	—	0.3V	V	
		OSC1 (in HS mode)	VSS	—	0.3 VDD	V	
	VIH	**Input High Voltage**					
		I/O ports:					
D040		with TTL buffer	2.0	—	VDD	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D040A			0.25 VDD + 0.8 V	—	VDD	V	For entire VDD range
D041		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	0.8 VDD	—	VDD	V	For entire VDD range
D042		$\overline{MCLR}$	0.8 VDD	—	VDD	V	
D042A		OSC1 (in XT and LP mode)	1.6V	—	VDD	V	
		OSC1 (in HS mode)	0.7 VDD	—	VDD	V	
D043		OSC1 (in RC mode)	0.9 VDD	—	VDD	V	**(Note 1)**
D070	IPURB	**PORTB Weak Pull-up Current**	50	250	400	µA	VDD = 5V, VPIN = VSS
	IIL	**Input Leakage Current (Notes 2, 3)**					
D060		I/O ports	—	—	±1	µA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD, pin at high-impedance
D061		$\overline{MCLR}$, RE3/T0CKI	—	—	±5	µA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD
D063		OSC1	—	—	±5	µA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD, XT, HS and LP osc configuration

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PIC16F7X7 be driven with external clock in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

18.4 DC Characteristics: PIC16F737/747/767/777 (Industrial, Extended) PIC16LF737/747/767/777 (Industrial) (Continued)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended Operating voltage VDD range as described in **Section 18.1 "DC Characteristics"**.				
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ†**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VOL	**Output Low Voltage**					
D080		I/O ports	—	—	0.6	V	IOL = 8.5 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D083		OSC2/CLKO (RC osc config)	—	—	0.6	V	IOL = 1.6 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
			—	—	0.6	V	IOL = 1.2 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
	VOH	**Output High Voltage**					
D090		I/O ports **(Note 3)**	VDD – 0.7	—	—	V	IOH = -3.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D092		OSC2/CLKO (RC osc config)	VDD – 0.7	—	—	V	IOH = -1.3 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
			VDD – 0.7	—	—	V	IOH = -1.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D150*	VOD	**Open-Drain High Voltage**	—	—	12	V	RA4 pin
		Capacitive Loading Specs on Output Pins					
D100	COSC2	OSC2 pin	—	—	15	pF	In XT, HS and LP modes when external clock is used to drive OSC1
D101	CIO	All I/O pins and OSC2 (in RC mode)	—	—	50	pF	
D102	CB	SCL, SDA in I^2C mode	—	—	400	pF	
		Program Flash Memory					
D130	EP	Endurance	100	1000	—	E/W	25°C at 5V
D131	VPR	VDD for Read	2.0	—	5.5	V	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PIC16F7X7 be driven with external clock in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

TABLE 18-1: COMPARATOR SPECIFICATIONS

Operating Conditions: 3.0V < V_{DD} < 5.5V, -40°C < T_A < +85°C (unless otherwise stated).							
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristics**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Comments**
D300	V_{IOFF}	Input Offset Voltage	—	± 5.0	± 10	mV	
D301	V_{ICM}	Input Common Mode Voltage*	0	-	V_{DD} – 1.5	V	
D302	CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio*	55	-	—	dB	
300 300A	T_{RESP}	Response Time(1)*	—	150	400 600	ns ns	PIC16F7X7 PIC16LF7X7
301	T_{MC2OV}	Comparator Mode Change to Output Valid*	—	—	10	µs	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Note 1: Response time measured with one comparator input at (V_{DD} – 1.5)/2, while the other input transitions from V_{SS} to V_{DD}.

TABLE 18-2: VOLTAGE REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS

Operating Conditions: 3.0V < V_{DD} < 5.5V, -40°C < T_A < +85°C (unless otherwise stated).							
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristics**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Comments**
D310	V_{RES}	Resolution	V_{DD}/24	—	V_{DD}/32	LSb	
D311	VR_{AA}	Absolute Accuracy	— —	— —	1/4 1/2	LSb LSb	Low Range (VRR = 1) High Range (VRR = 0)
D312	VR_{UR}	Unit Resistor Value (R)*	—	2 k	—	Ω	
310	T_{SET}	Settling Time(1)*	—	—	10	µs	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Note 1: Settling time measured while VRR = 1 and VR<3:0> transitions from '0000' to '1111'.

FIGURE 18-3: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

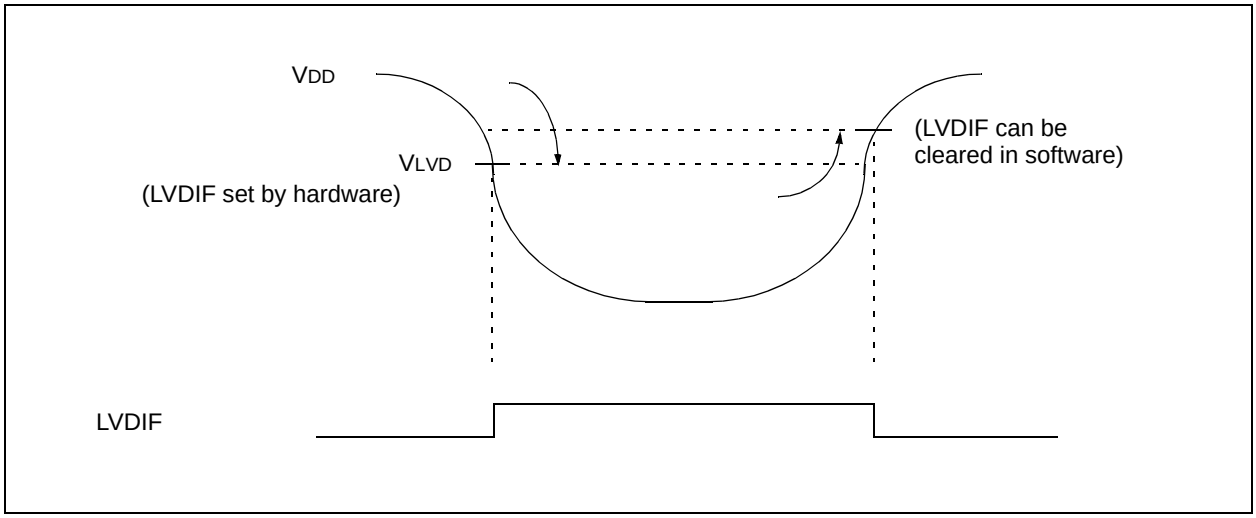


TABLE 18-3: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

PIC16LF7X7 (Industrial)				**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC16F7X7 (Industrial, Extended)				**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**		**Min**	**Typ†**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D420		LVD Voltage on VDD Transition High to Low		Industrial				
		PIC16LF7X7	LVDL<3:0> = 0000	N/A	N/A	N/A	V	Reserved
			LVDL<3:0> = 0001	N/A	N/A	N/A	V	Reserved
			LVDL<3:0> = 0010	2.15	2.26	2.37	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0011	2.33	2.45	2.58	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0100	2.43	2.55	2.68	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0101	2.63	2.77	2.91	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0110	2.73	2.87	3.01	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0111	2.91	3.07	3.22	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1000	3.20	3.36	3.53	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1001	3.39	3.57	3.75	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1010	3.49	3.67	3.85	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1011	3.68	3.87	4.07	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1100	3.87	4.07	4.28	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1101	4.06	4.28	4.49	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1110	4.37	4.60	4.82	V	
D420		LVD Voltage on VDD Transition High to Low		Industrial				
		PIC16F7X7	LVDL<3:0> = 1011	3.68	3.87	4.07	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1100	3.87	4.07	4.28	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1101	4.06	4.28	4.49	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1110	4.37	4.60	4.82	V	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

† Production tested at TAMB = 25°C. Specifications over temperature limits ensured by characterization.

18.5 Timing Parameter Symbology

The timing parameter symbols have been created using one of the following formats:

1. TppS2ppS
2. TppS
3. TCC:ST (I^2C specifications only)
4. Ts (I^2C specifications only)

T			
F	Frequency	T	Time

Lowercase letters (pp) and their meanings:

pp			
cc	CCP1	osc	OSC1
ck	CLKO	rd	$\overline{RD}$
cs	$\overline{CS}$	rw	$\overline{RD}$ or $\overline{WR}$
di	SDI	sc	SCK
do	SDO	ss	$\overline{SS}$
dt	Data in	t0	T0CKI
io	I/O port	t1	T1CKI
mc	$\overline{MCLR}$	wr	$\overline{WR}$

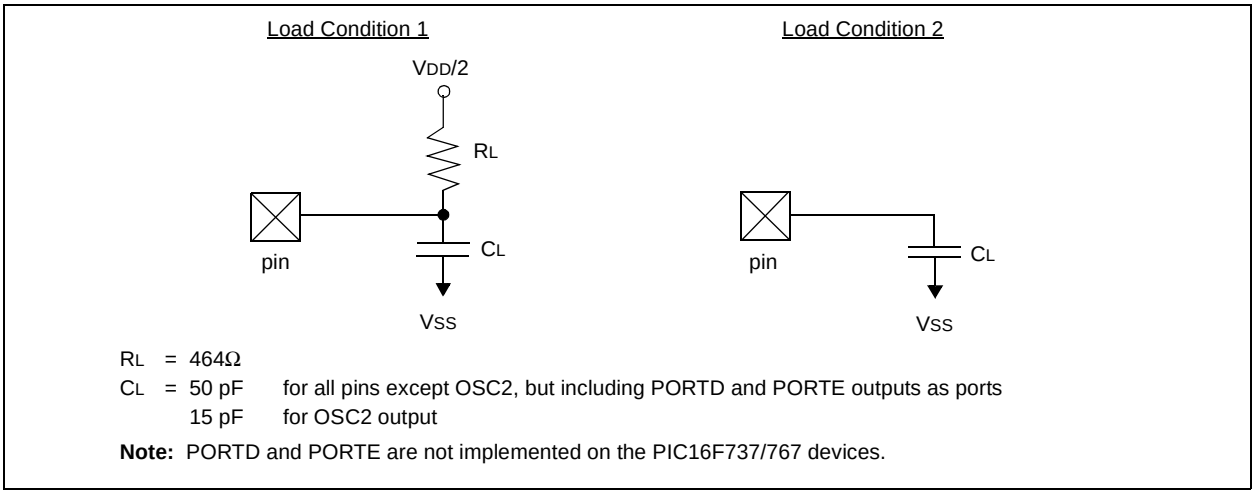
Uppercase letters and their meanings:

S			
F	Fall	P	Period
H	High	R	Rise
I	Invalid (Hi-impedance)	V	Valid
L	Low	Z	High-impedance
I^2C only			
AA	output access	High	High
BUF	Bus free	Low	Low

TCC:ST (I^2C specifications only)

CC			
HD	Hold	SU	Setup
ST			
DAT	DATA input hold	STO	Stop condition
STA	Start condition		

FIGURE 18-4: LOAD CONDITIONS



RL = 464Ω
CL = 50 pF for all pins except OSC2, but including PORTD and PORTE outputs as ports
15 pF for OSC2 output

Note: PORTD and PORTE are not implemented on the PIC16F737/767 devices.

FIGURE 18-5: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING

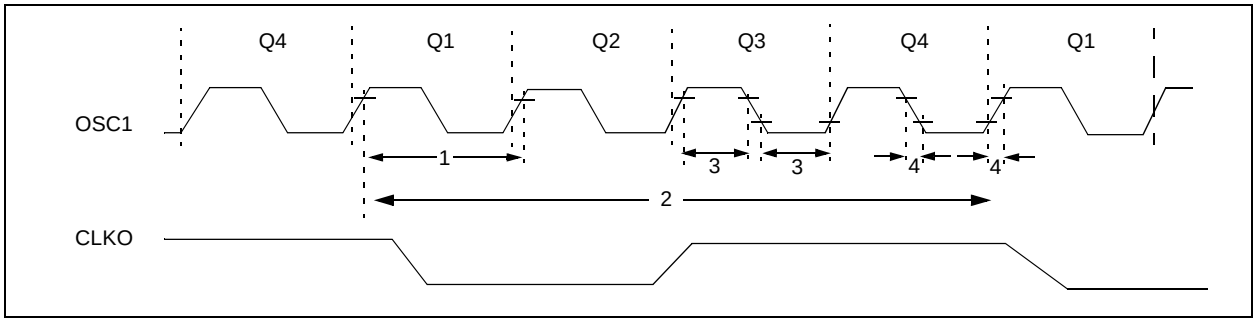


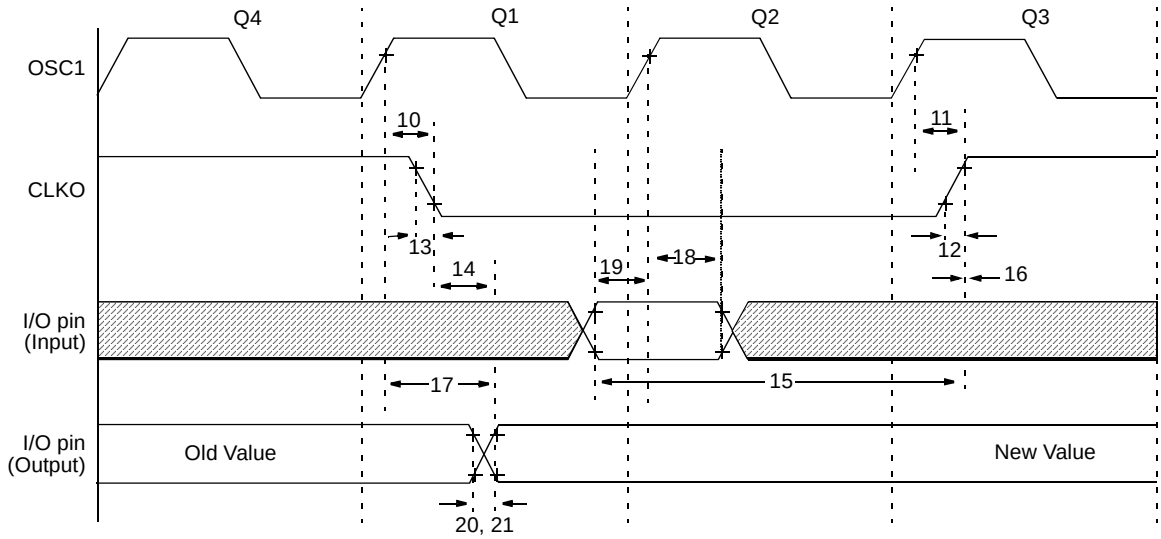
TABLE 18-4: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
	FOSC	**External CLKI Frequency (Note 1)**	DC	—	1	MHz	XT Osc mode
			DC	—	20	MHz	HS Osc mode
			DC	—	32	kHz	LP Osc mode
		Oscillator Frequency (Note 1)	DC	—	4	MHz	RC Osc mode
			0.1	—	4	MHz	XT Osc mode
			4	—	20	MHz	HS Osc mode
			5	—	200	kHz	LP Osc mode
1	TOSC	**External CLKI Period (Note 1)**	1000	—	—	ns	XT Osc mode
			50	—	—	ns	HS Osc mode
			5	—	—	ms	LP Osc mode
		Oscillator Period (Note 1)	250	—	—	ns	RC Osc mode
			250	—	10,000	ns	XT Osc mode
			50	—	250	ns	HS Osc mode
			5	—	—	ms	LP Osc mode
2	TCY	**Instruction Cycle Time (Note 1)**	200	TCY	DC	ns	TCY = 4/FOSC
3	TOSL, TOSH	**External Clock in (OSC1) High or Low Time**	500	—	—	ns	XT oscillator
			2.5	—	—	ms	LP oscillator
			15	—	—	ns	HS oscillator
4	TOSR, TOSF	**External Clock in (OSC1) Rise or Fall Time**	—	—	25	ns	XT oscillator
			—	—	50	ns	LP oscillator
			—	—	15	ns	HS oscillator

† Data in “Typ” column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type, under standard operating conditions, with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at “min.” values with an external clock applied to the OSC1/CLKI pin. When an external clock input is used, the “max.” cycle time limit is “DC” (no clock) for all devices.

FIGURE 18-6: CLKO AND I/O TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 18-5: CLKO AND I/O TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
10*	TosH2ckL	OSC1 ↑ to CLKO ↓		—	75	200	ns	**(Note 1)**
11*	TosH2ckH	OSC1 ↑ to CLKO ↑		—	75	200	ns	**(Note 1)**
12*	TckR	CLKO Rise Time		—	35	100	ns	**(Note 1)**
13*	TckF	CLKO Fall Time		—	35	100	ns	**(Note 1)**
14*	TckL2ioV	CLKO ↓ to Port Out Valid		—	—	0.5 Tcy + 20	ns	**(Note 1)**
15*	TioV2ckH	Port In Valid before CLKO ↑		Tosc + 200	—	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
16*	TckH2ioI	Port In Hold after CLKO ↑		0	—	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
17*	TosH2ioV	OSC1 ↑ (Q1 cycle) to Port Out Valid		—	100	255	ns	
18*	TosH2ioI	OSC1 ↑ (Q2 cycle) to Port Input Invalid (I/O in hold time)	PIC16F7X7	100	—	—	ns	
			PIC16LF7X7	200	—	—	ns	
19*	TioV2osH	Port Input Valid to OSC1 ↑ (I/O in setup time)		0	—	—	ns	
20*	TioR	Port Output Rise Time	PIC16F7X7	—	10	40	ns	
			PIC16LF7X7	—	—	145	ns	
21*	TioF	Port Output Fall Time	PIC16F7X7	—	10	40	ns	
			PIC16LF7X7	—	—	145	ns	
22††*	Tinp	INT pin High or Low Time		Tcy	—	—	ns	
23††*	Trbp	RB7:RB4 Change INT High or Low Time		Tcy	—	—	ns	

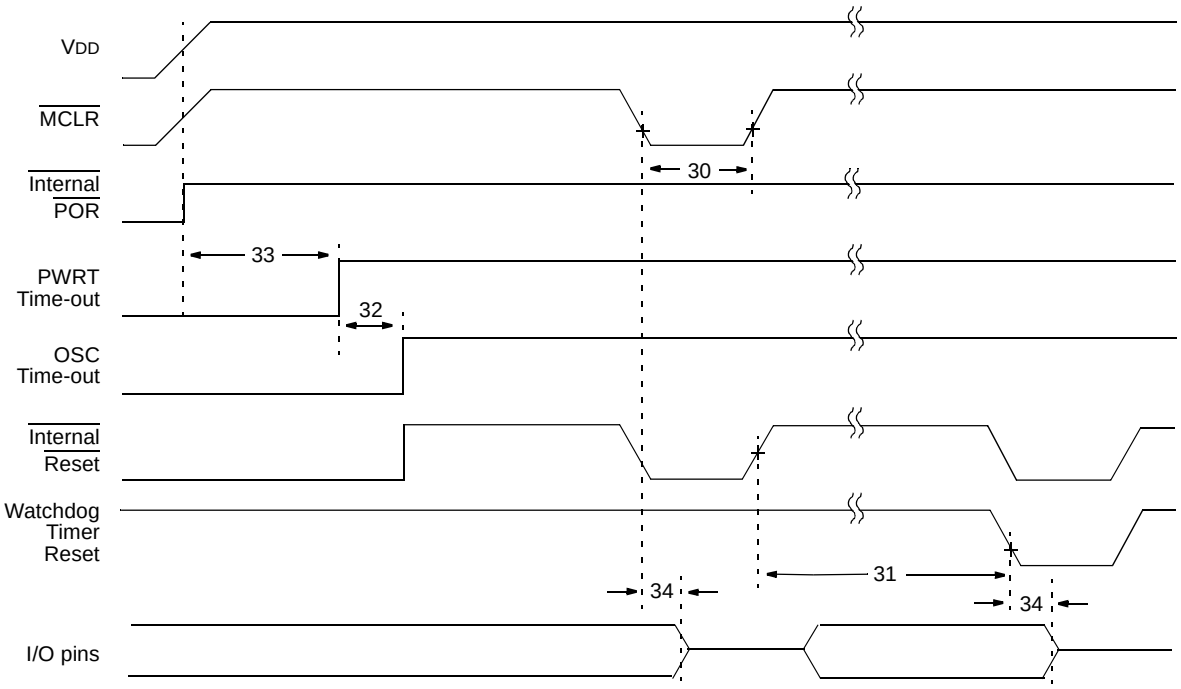
* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

†† These parameters are asynchronous events not related to any internal clock edges.

Note 1: Measurements are taken in RC mode, where CLKO output is 4 x Tosc.

FIGURE 18-7: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER AND POWER-UP TIMER TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

FIGURE 18-8: BROWN-OUT RESET TIMING

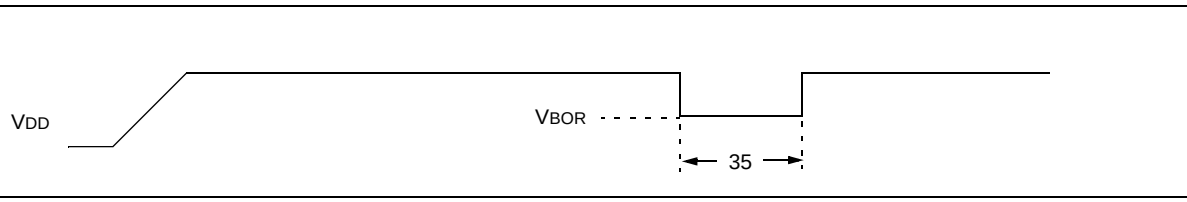


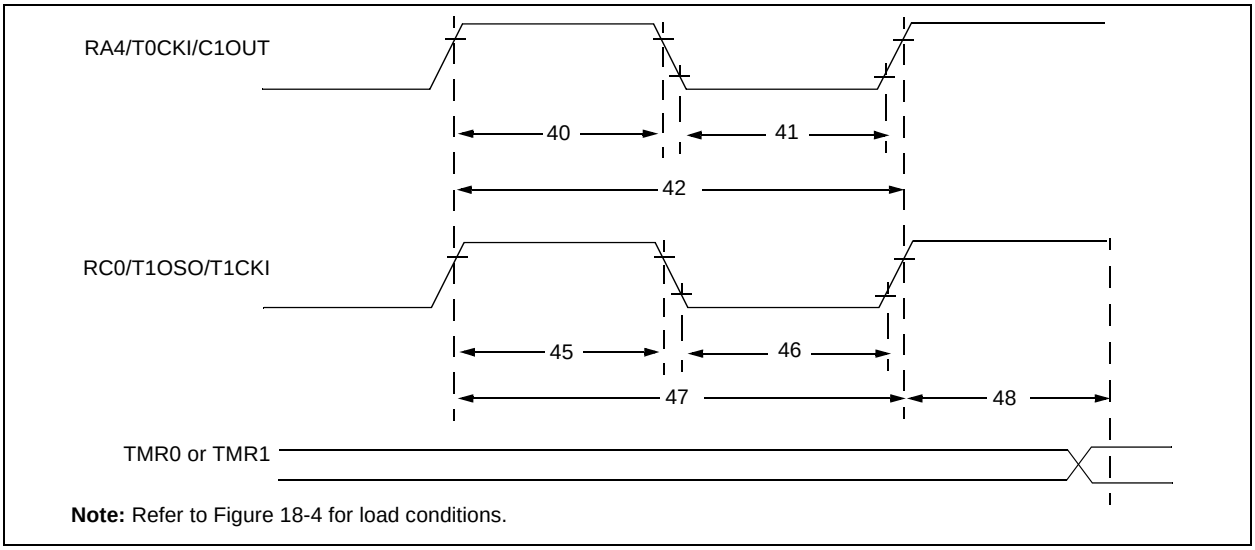
TABLE 18-6: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER, POWER-UP TIMER AND BROWN-OUT RESET REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
30	TMCL	MCLR Pulse Width (low)	2	—	—	µs	VDD = 5V, -40°C to +85°C
31*	TWDT	Watchdog Timer Time-out Period (no prescaler)	7	18	33	ms	VDD = 5V, -40°C to +85°C
32	TOST	Oscillation Start-up Timer Period	—	1024 TOSC	—	—	TOSC = OSC1 period
33*	TPWRT	Power-up Timer Period	28	72	132	ms	VDD = 5V, -40°C to +85°C
34	TIOZ	I/O High-Impedance from MCLR Low or Watchdog Timer Reset	—	—	2.1	µs	
35	TBOR	Brown-out Reset Pulse Width	100	—	—	µs	VDD ≤ VBOR (D005)

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 18-9: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMINGS



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

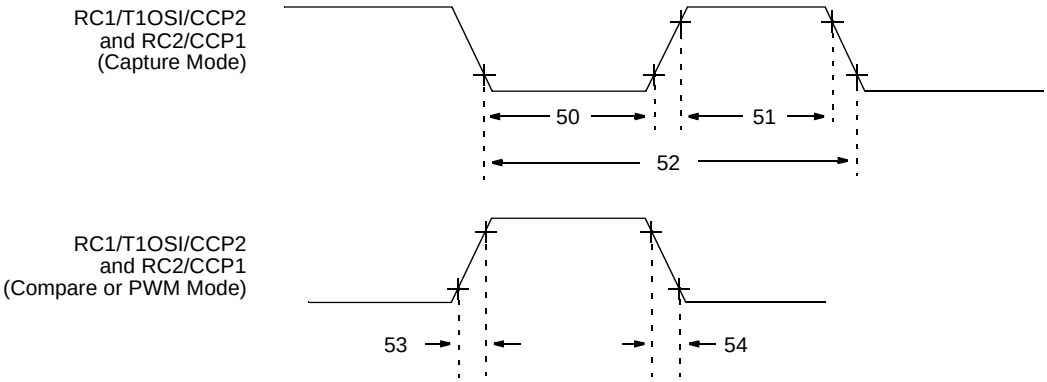
TABLE 18-7: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
40*	TT0H	T0CKI High Pulse Width		No Prescaler	0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	Must also meet parameter 42
				With Prescaler	10	—	—	ns	
41*	TT0L	T0CKI Low Pulse Width		No Prescaler	0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	Must also meet parameter 42
				With Prescaler	10	—	—	ns	
42*	TT0P	T0CKI Period		No Prescaler	TCY + 40	—	—	ns	
				With Prescaler	Greater of: 20 or TCY + 40 / N	—	—	ns	N = prescale value (2, 4, ..., 256)
45*	TT1H	T1CKI High Time	Synchronous, Prescaler = 1		0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	Must also meet parameter 47
			Synchronous, Prescaler = 2, 4, 8	PIC16F7X7	15	—	—	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	25	—	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	PIC16F7X7	30	—	—	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	50	—	—	ns	
46*	TT1L	T1CKI Low Time	Synchronous, Prescaler = 1		0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	Must also meet parameter 47
			Synchronous, Prescaler = 2, 4, 8	PIC16F7X7	15	—	—	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	25	—	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	PIC16F7X7	30	—	—	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	50	—	—	ns	
47*	TT1P	T1CKI Input Period	Synchronous	PIC16F7X7	Greater of: 30 or TCY + 40 / N	—	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)
				PIC16LF7X7	Greater of: 50 or TCY + 40 / N				N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)
			Asynchronous	PIC16F7X7	60	—	—	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	100	—	—	ns	
	FT1	Timer1 Oscillator Input Frequency Range (oscillator enabled by setting bit T1OSCEN)			DC	—	200	kHz	
48	TCKEZTMR1	Delay from External Clock Edge to Timer Increment			2 TOSC	—	7 TOSC	—	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 18-10: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM TIMINGS (CCP1 AND CCP2)



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

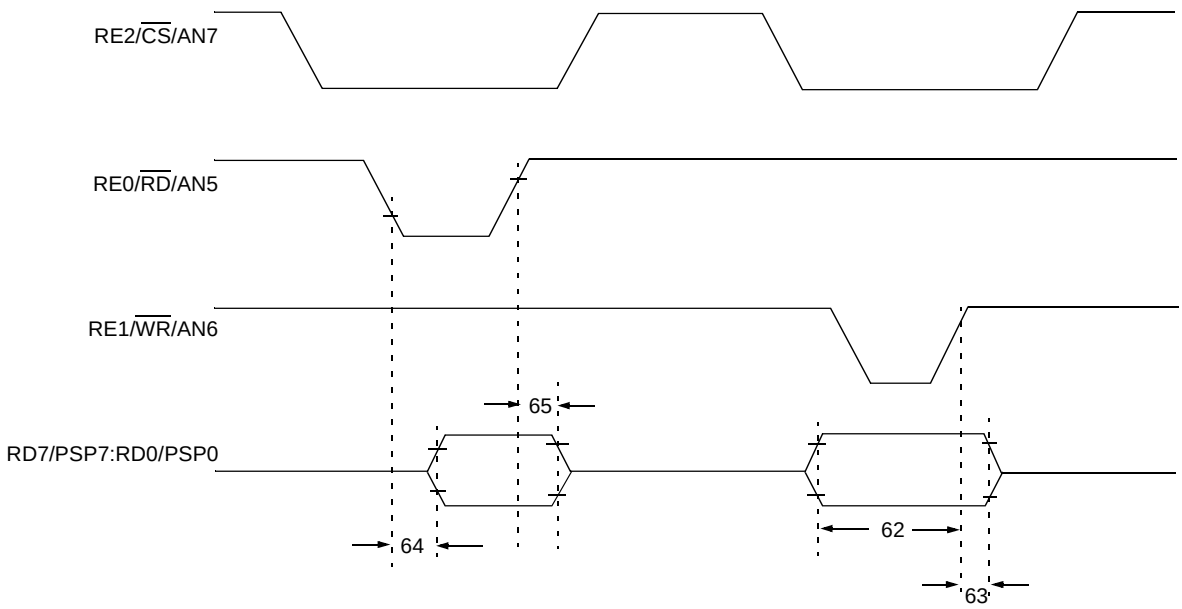
TABLE 18-8: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM REQUIREMENTS (CCP1 AND CCP2)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
50*	TccL	CCP1, CCP2 and CCP3 Input Low Time	No Prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	PIC16F7X7	10	—	—	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	20	—	—	ns	
51*	TccH	CCP1, CCP2 and CCP3 Input High Time	No Prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	PIC16F7X7	10	—	—	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	20	—	—	ns	
52*	TccP	CCP1, CCP2 and CCP3 Input Period			$\frac{3\ T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	—	ns	N = prescale value (1,4 or 16)
53*	TccR	CCP1, CCP2 and CCP3 Output Rise Time		PIC16F7X7	—	10	25	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	—	25	50	ns	
54*	TccF	CCP1, CCP2 and CCP3 Output Fall Time		PIC16F7X7	—	10	25	ns	
				PIC16LF7X7	—	25	45	ns	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in “Typ” column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 18-11: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT TIMING (PIC16F747/777 DEVICES ONLY)



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

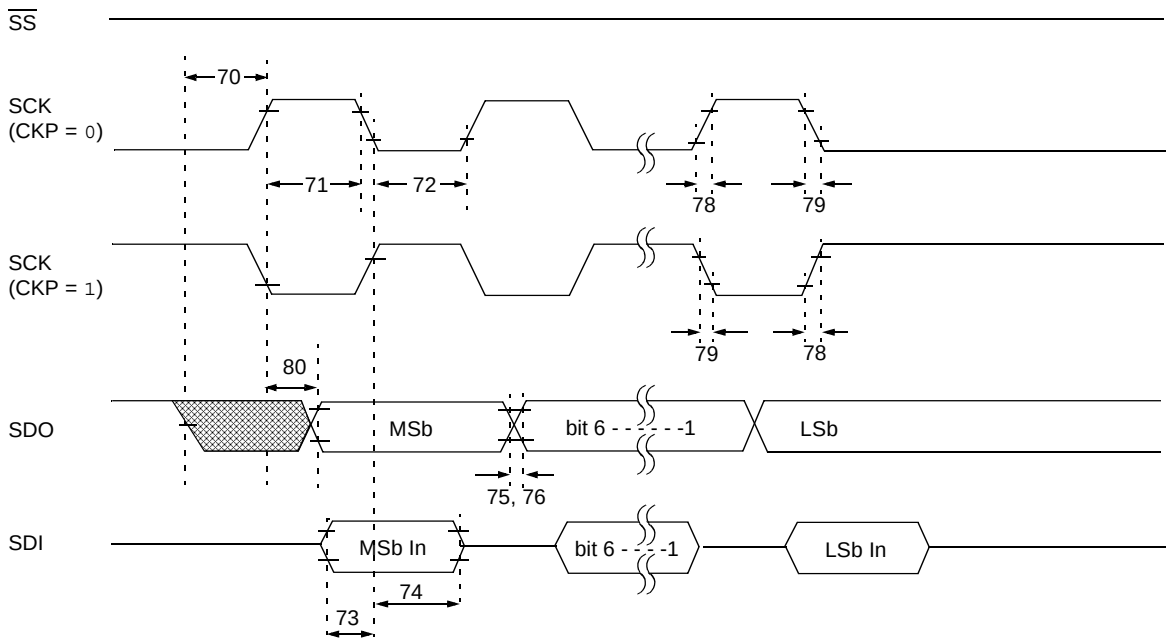
TABLE 18-9: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT REQUIREMENTS (PIC16F747/777 DEVICES ONLY)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
62	TDTV2WRH	Data In Valid before $\overline{WR}$ ↑ or $\overline{CS}$ ↑ (setup time)		20 25	— —	— —	ns ns	 Extended range only
63*	TWRH2DTI	$\overline{WR}$ ↑ or $\overline{CS}$ ↑ to Data In Invalid (hold time)	PIC16F7X7	20	—	—	ns	
			PIC16LF7X7	35	—	—	ns	
64	TRDL2DTV	$\overline{RD}$ ↓ and $\overline{CS}$ ↓ to Data Out Valid		— —	— —	80 90	ns ns	 Extended range only
65	TRDH2DTI	$\overline{RD}$ ↑ or $\overline{CS}$ ↓ to Data Out Invalid		10	—	30	ns	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

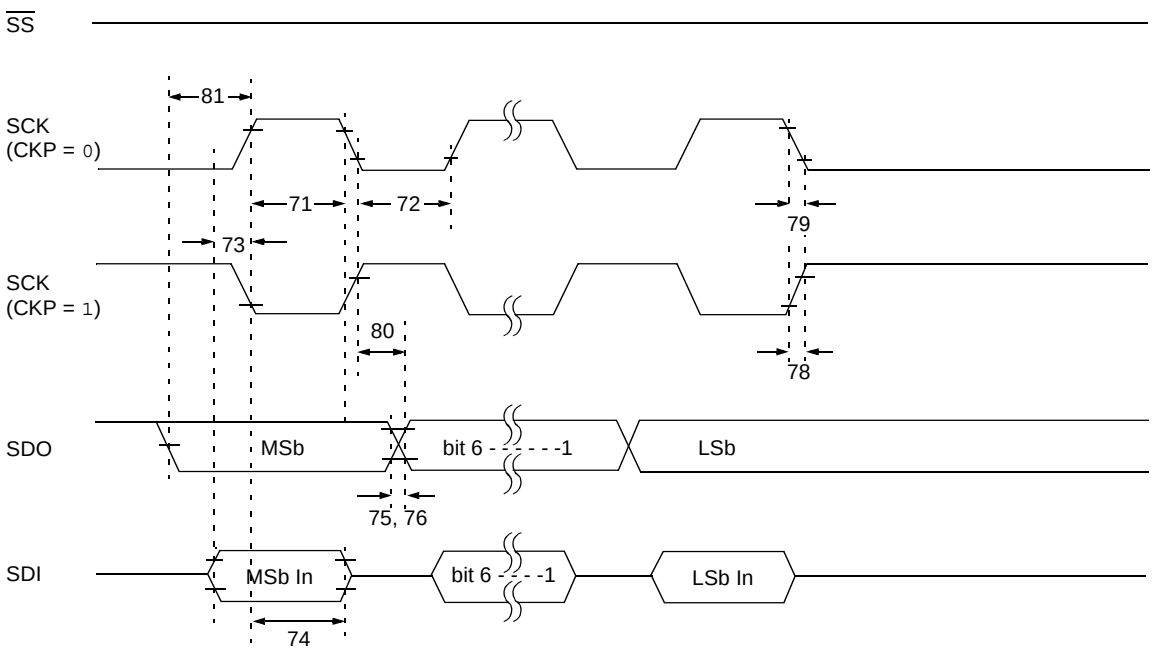
† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 18-12: SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 0, SMP = 0)



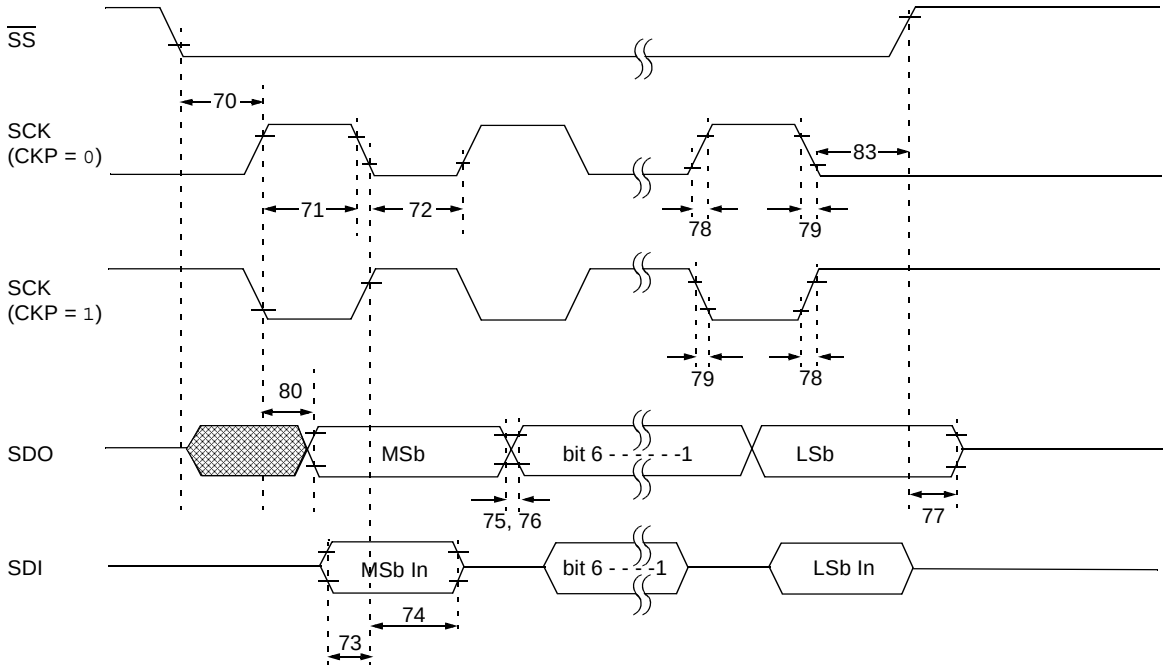
Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

FIGURE 18-13: SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 1, SMP = 1)



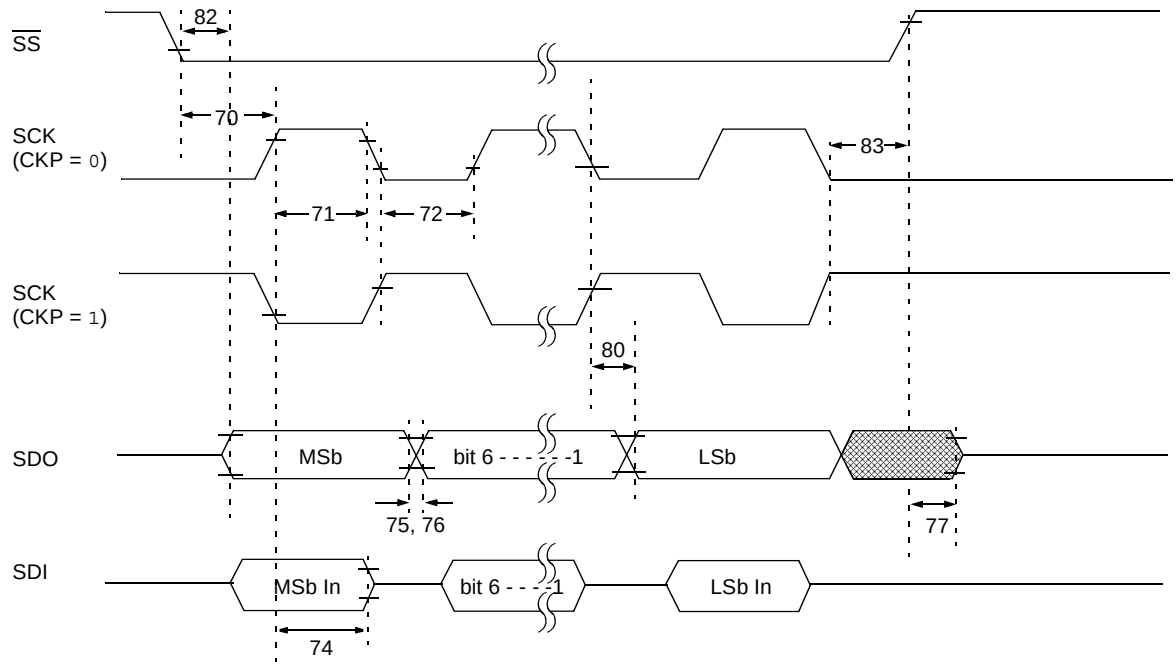
Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

FIGURE 18-14: SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

FIGURE 18-15: SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

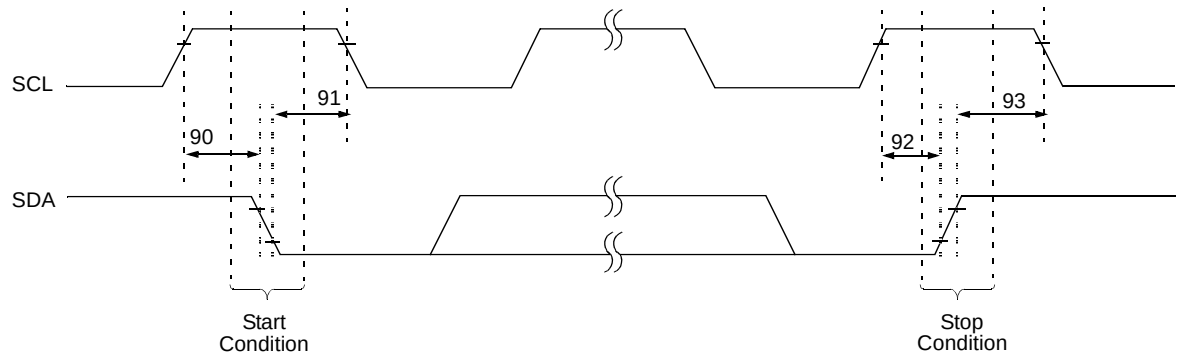
TABLE 18-10: SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
70*	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$ ↓ to SCK ↓ or SCK ↑ Input		Tcy	—	—	ns	
71*	TscH	SCK Input High Time (Slave mode)		Tcy + 20	—	—	ns	
72*	TscL	SCK Input Low Time (Slave mode)		Tcy + 20	—	—	ns	
73*	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	—	ns	
74*	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	—	ns	
75*	TdoR	SDO Data Output Rise Time	PIC16F7X7 PIC16LF7X7	— —	10 25	25 50	ns ns	
76*	TdoF	SDO Data Output Fall Time		—	10	25	ns	
77*	TssH2doZ	$\overline{SS}$ ↑ to SDO Output High-Impedance		10	—	50	ns	
78*	TscR	SCK Output Rise Time (Master mode)	PIC16F7X7 PIC16LF7X7	— —	10 25	25 50	ns ns	
79*	TscF	SCK Output Fall Time (Master mode)		—	10	25	ns	
80*	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO Data Output Valid after SCK Edge	PIC16F7X7 PIC16LF7X7	— —	— —	50 145	ns ns	
81*	TdoV2scH, TdoV2scL	SDO Data Output Setup to SCK Edge		Tcy	—	—	ns	
82*	TssL2doV	SDO Data Output Valid after $\overline{SS}$ ↓ Edge		—	—	50	ns	
83*	TscH2ssH, TscL2ssH	$\overline{SS}$ ↑ after SCK Edge		1.5 Tcy + 40	—	—	ns	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 18-16: I^2C BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING



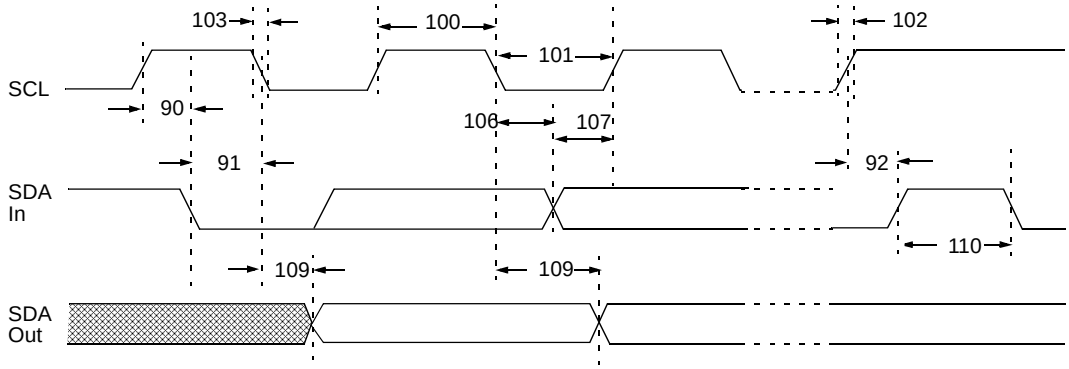
Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 18-11: I²C BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
90*	TSU:STA	Start condition	100 kHz mode	4700	—	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
		Setup time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
91*	THD:STA	Start condition	100 kHz mode	4000	—	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
		Hold time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
92*	TSU:STO	Stop condition	100 kHz mode	4700	—	—	ns	
		Setup time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
93	THD:STO	Stop condition	100 kHz mode	4000	—	—	ns	
		Hold time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

FIGURE 18-17: I²C BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 18-12: I²C BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS

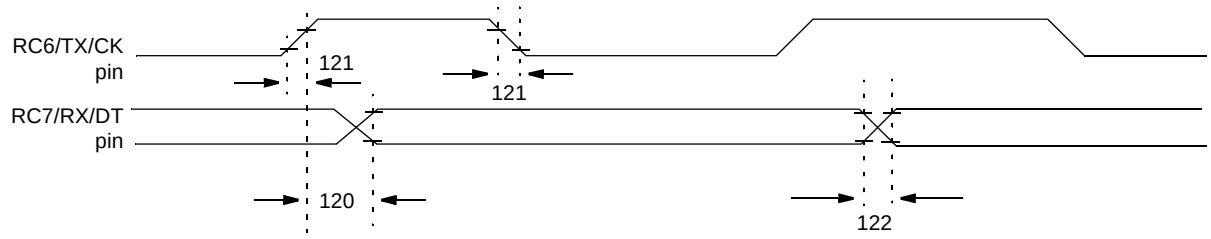
Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
100*	THIGH	Clock High Time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	µs	Device must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP module	1.5 TCY	—		
101*	TLOW	Clock Low Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	Device must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	µs	Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP module	1.5 TCY	—		
102*	TR	SDA and SCL Rise Time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 CB	300	ns	CB is specified to be from 10-400 pF
103*	TF	SDA and SCL Fall Time	100 kHz mode	—	300	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 CB	300	ns	CB is specified to be from 10-400 pF
90*	TSU:STA	Start Condition Setup Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
91*	THD:STA	Start Condition Hold Time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	µs	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
106*	THD:DAT	Data Input Hold Time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	µs	
107*	TSU:DAT	Data Input Setup Time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
92*	TSU:STO	Stop Condition Setup Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
109*	TAA	Output Valid from Clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	**(Note 1)**
			400 kHz mode	—	—	ns	
110*	TBUF	Bus Free Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	µs	
	CB	Bus Capacitive Loading		—	400	pF	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Note 1: As a transmitter, the device must provide this internal minimum delay time to bridge the undefined region (min. 300 ns) of the falling edge of SCL to avoid unintended generation of Start or Stop conditions.

2: A fast mode (400 kHz) I²C bus device can be used in a standard mode (100 kHz) I²C bus system, but the requirement, TSU:DAT ≥ 250 ns, must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line, TR max. + TSU:DAT = 1000 + 250 = 1250 ns (according to the standard mode I²C bus specification), before the SCL line is released.

FIGURE 18-18: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING



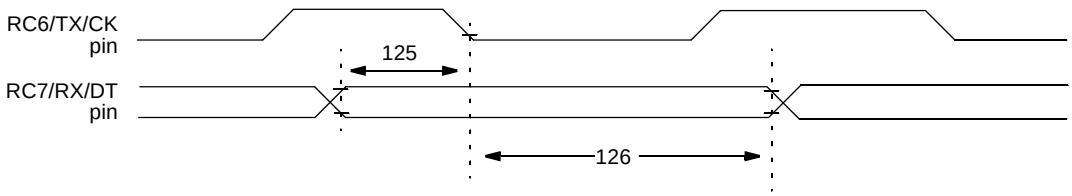
Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 18-13: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
120	TCKH2DTV	SYNC XMIT (MASTER & SLAVE) Clock High to Data Out Valid	PIC16F7X7	—	—	80	ns	
			PIC16LF7X7	—	—	100	ns	
121	TCKRF	Clock Out Rise Time and Fall Time (Master mode)	PIC16F7X7	—	—	45	ns	
			PIC16LF7X7	—	—	50	ns	
122	TDTRF	Data Out Rise Time and Fall Time	PIC16F7X7	—	—	45	ns	
			PIC16LF7X7	—	—	50	ns	

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 18-19: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 18-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 18-14: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
125	TDTV2CKL	SYNC RCV (MASTER & SLAVE) Data Setup before CK ↓ (DT setup time)	15	—	—	ns	
126	TCKL2DTL	Data Hold after CK ↓ (DT hold time)	15	—	—	ns	

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

TABLE 18-15: A/D CONVERTER CHARACTERISTICS: PIC16F7X7 (INDUSTRIAL, EXTENDED) PIC16LF7X7 (INDUSTRIAL)

Param No.	Sym	Characteristic		Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
A01	NR	Resolution	PIC16F7X7	—	—	8 bits	bit	VREF = VDD = 5.12V, VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
			PIC16LF7X7	—	—	8 bits	bit	VREF = VDD = 2.2V
A02	EABS	Total Absolute Error		—	—	< ±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.12V, VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A03	EIL	Integral Linearity Error		—	—	< ±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.12V, VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A04	EDL	Differential Linearity Error		—	—	< ±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.12V, VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A05	EFS	Full-Scale Error		—	—	< ±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.12V, VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A06	EOFF	Offset Error		—	—	< ±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.12V, VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A10	—	Monotonicity **(Note 3)**		—	guaranteed	—	—	VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A20	VREF	Reference Voltage		2.5 2.2	— —	5.5 5.5	V V	-40°C to +125°C 0°C to +125°C
A25	VAIN	Analog Input Voltage		VSS – 0.3	—	VREF + 0.3	V	
A30	ZAIN	Recommended Impedance of Analog Voltage Source		—	—	10.0	kΩ	
A40	IAD	A/D Conversion Current (VDD)	PIC16F7X7	—	180	—	µA	Average current consumption when A/D is on **(Note 1)**
			PIC16LF7X7	—	90	—	µA	
A50	IREF	VREF Input Current **(Note 2)**		N/A —	— —	±5 500	µA µA	During VAIN acquisition. During A/D conversion cycle.

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

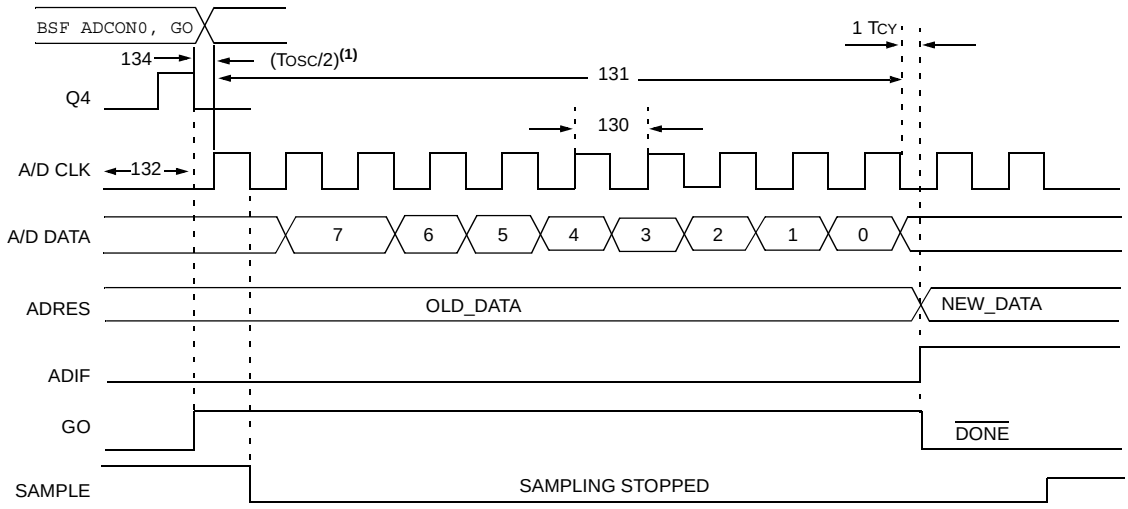
† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: When A/D is off, it will not consume any current other than minor leakage current. The power-down current spec includes any such leakage from the A/D module.

2: VREF current is from the RA3 pin or the VDD pin, whichever is selected as a reference input.

3: The A/D conversion result never decreases with an increase in the input voltage and has no missing codes.

FIGURE 18-20: A/D CONVERSION TIMING



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

TABLE 18-16: A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Sym	Characteristic		Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
130	TAD	A/D Clock Period	PIC16F7X7	1.6	—	—	µs	TOSC based, VREF ≥ 3.0V
			PIC16LF7X7	2.0	—	—	µs	TOSC based, 2.0V ≤ VREF ≤ 5.5V
			PIC16F7X7	2.0	4.0	6.0	µs	A/D RC mode
			PIC16LF7X7	3.0	6.0	9.0	µs	A/D RC mode
131	TCNV	Conversion Time (not including S/H time) **(Note 1)**		9	—	9	TAD	
132	TACQ	Acquisition Time		5*	—	—	µs	The minimum time is the amplifier settling time. This may be used if the "new" input voltage has not changed by more than 1 LSb (i.e., 20.0 mV @ 5.12V) from the last sampled voltage (as stated on CHOLD).
134	TGO	Q4 to A/D Clock Start		—	TOSC/2	—	—	If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: ADRES register may be read on the following TCY cycle.

2: See **Section 12.1 "A/D Acquisition Requirements"** for minimum conditions.

NOTES:

19.0 DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS GRAPHS AND TABLES

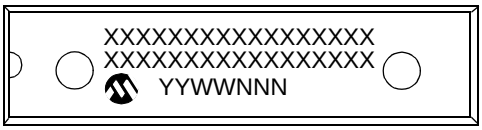
Graphs and tables are not available at this time.

NOTES:

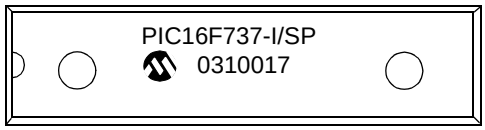
20.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

20.1 Package Marking Information

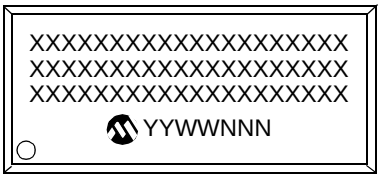
28-Lead PDIP (Skinny DIP)



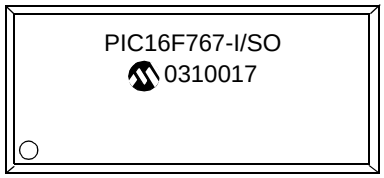
Example



28-Lead SOIC



Example



28-Lead SSOP

Example

28-Lead QFN

Example

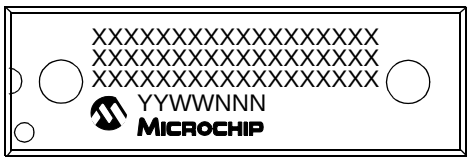
Legend:	XX...X	Customer specific information*
	Y	Year code (last digit of calendar year)
	YY	Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)
	WW	Week code (week of January 1 is week ‘01’)
	NNN	Alphanumeric traceability code

Note: In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line thus limiting the number of available characters for customer specific information.

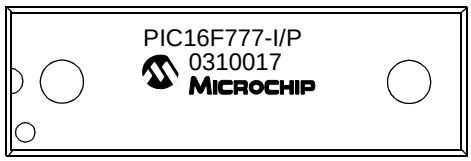
***** Standard PICmicro device marking consists of Microchip part number, year code, week code, and traceability code. For PICmicro device marking beyond this, certain price adders apply. Please check with your Microchip Sales Office. For QTP devices, any special marking adders are included in QTP price.

Package Marking Information (Cont'd)

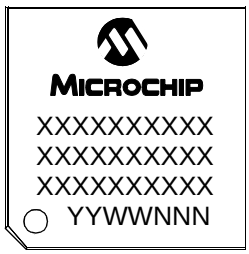
40-Lead PDIP



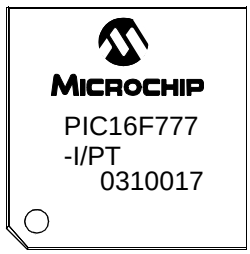
Example



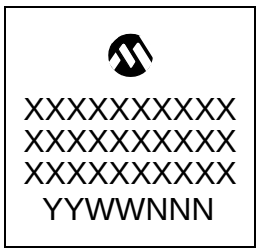
44-Lead TQFP



Example



44-Lead QFN

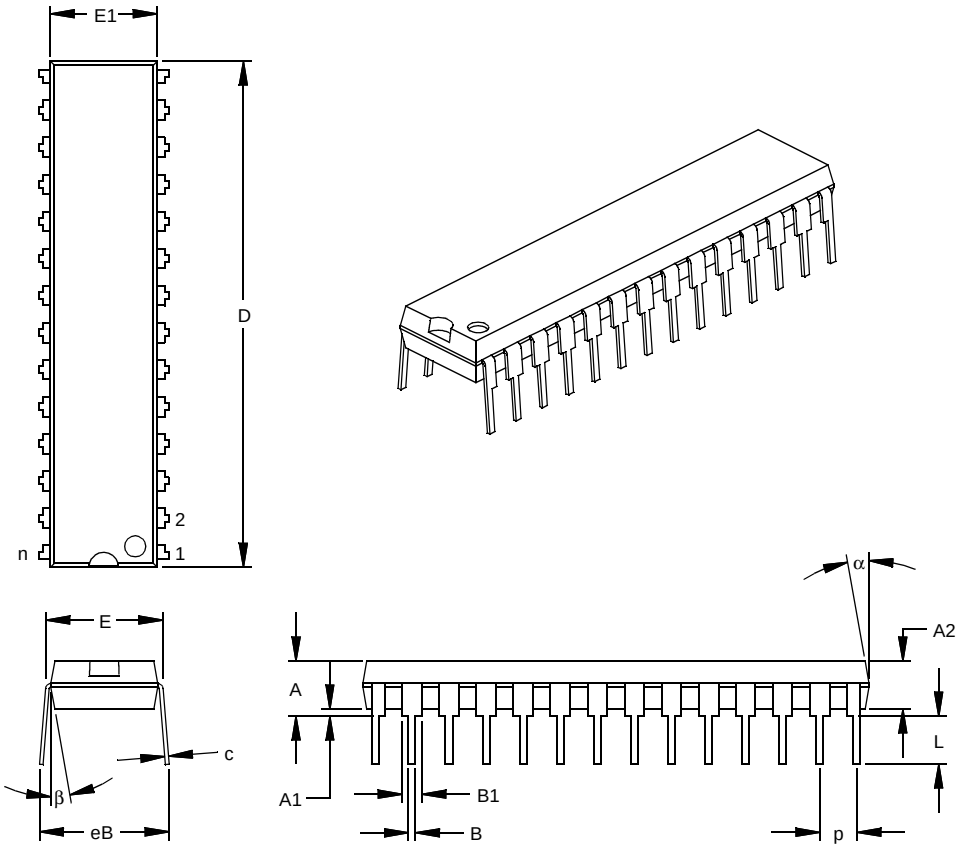


Example

20.2 Package Details

The following sections give the technical details of the packages.

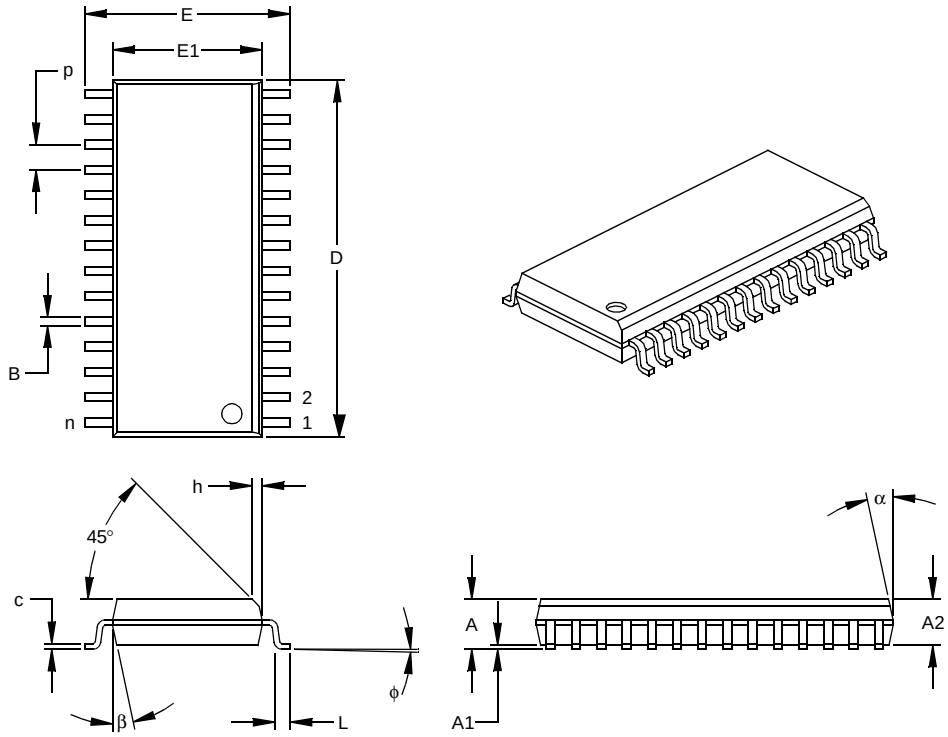
28-Lead Skinny Plastic Dual In-line (SP) – 300 mil (PDIP)



Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		28			28	
Pitch	p		.100			2.54	
Top to Seating Plane	A	.140	.150	.160	3.56	3.81	4.06
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.125	.130	.135	3.18	3.30	3.43
Base to Seating Plane	A1	.015			0.38		
Shoulder to Shoulder Width	E	.300	.310	.325	7.62	7.87	8.26
Molded Package Width	E1	.275	.285	.295	6.99	7.24	7.49
Overall Length	D	1.345	1.365	1.385	34.16	34.67	35.18
Tip to Seating Plane	L	.125	.130	.135	3.18	3.30	3.43
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.012	.015	0.20	0.29	0.38
Upper Lead Width	B1	.040	.053	.065	1.02	1.33	1.65
Lower Lead Width	B	.016	.019	.022	0.41	0.48	0.56
Overall Row Spacing §	eB	.320	.350	.430	8.13	8.89	10.92
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic
Notes:
Dimension D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-095
Drawing No. C04-070

28-Lead Plastic Small Outline (SO) – Wide, 300 mil (SOIC)

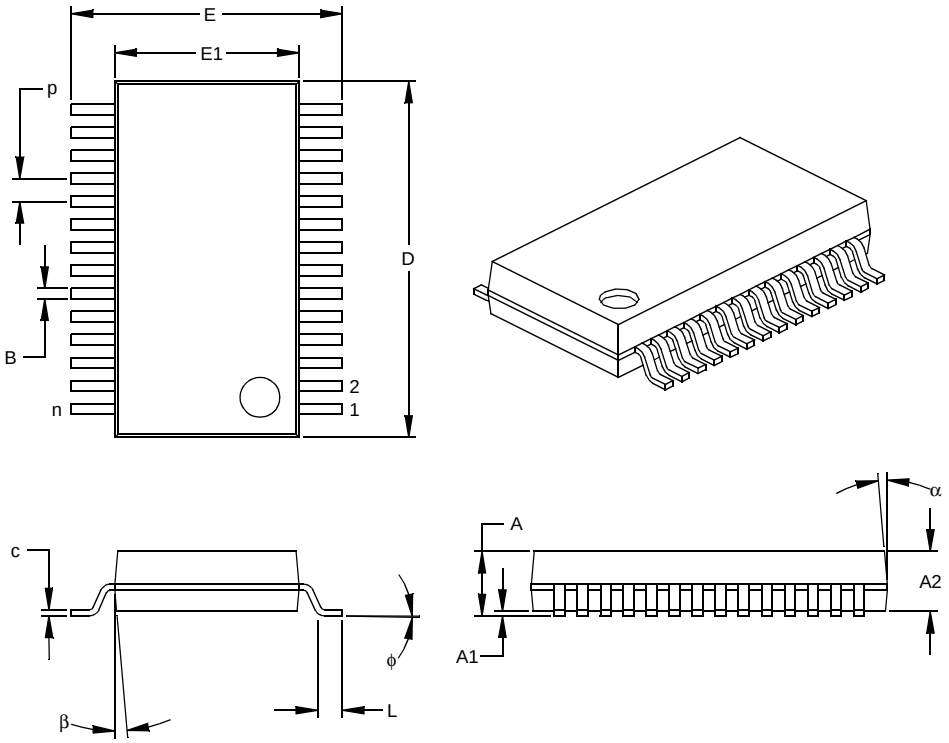


Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		28			28	
Pitch	p		.050			1.27	
Overall Height	A	.093	.099	.104	2.36	2.50	2.64
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.088	.091	.094	2.24	2.31	2.39
Standoff §	A1	.004	.008	.012	0.10	0.20	0.30
Overall Width	E	.394	.407	.420	10.01	10.34	10.67
Molded Package Width	E1	.288	.295	.299	7.32	7.49	7.59
Overall Length	D	.695	.704	.712	17.65	17.87	18.08
Chamfer Distance	h	.010	.020	.029	0.25	0.50	0.74
Foot Length	L	.016	.033	.050	0.41	0.84	1.27
Foot Angle Top	ϕ	0	4	8	0	4	8
Lead Thickness	c	.009	.011	.013	0.23	0.28	0.33
Lead Width	B	.014	.017	.020	0.36	0.42	0.51
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	0	12	15	0	12	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	0	12	15	0	12	15

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MS-013
Drawing No. C04-052

28-Lead Plastic Shrink Small Outline (SS) – 209 mil, 5.30 mm (SSOP)

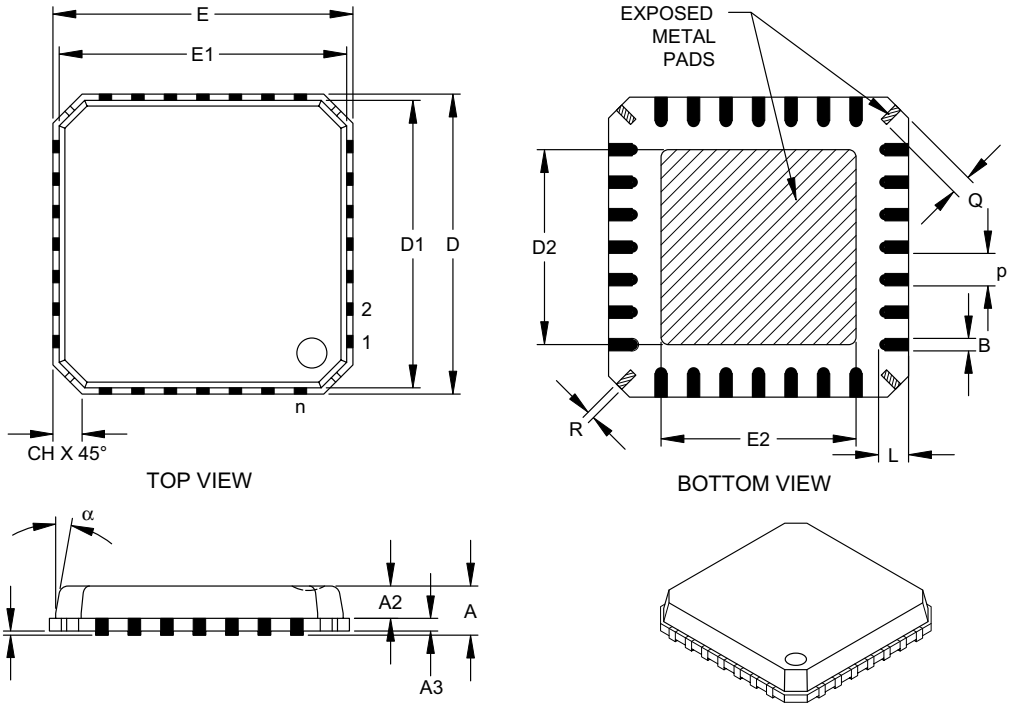


Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		28			28	
Pitch	p		.026			0.65	
Overall Height	A	.068	.073	.078	1.73	1.85	1.98
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.064	.068	.072	1.63	1.73	1.83
Standoff §	A1	.002	.006	.010	0.05	0.15	0.25
Overall Width	E	.299	.309	.319	7.59	7.85	8.10
Molded Package Width	E1	.201	.207	.212	5.11	5.25	5.38
Overall Length	D	.396	.402	.407	10.06	10.20	10.34
Foot Length	L	.022	.030	.037	0.56	0.75	0.94
Lead Thickness	c	.004	.007	.010	0.10	0.18	0.25
Foot Angle	φ	0	4	8	0.00	101.60	203.20
Lead Width	B	.010	.013	.015	0.25	0.32	0.38
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	0	5	10	0	5	10
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	0	5	10	0	5	10

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MS-150
Drawing No. C04-073

28-Lead Plastic Quad Flat No Lead Package (ML) 6x6 mm Body, Punch Singulated (QFN)



Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		28			28	
Pitch	p		.026 BSC			0.65 BSC	
Overall Height	A		.033	.039		0.85	1.00
Molded Package Thickness	A2		.026	.031		0.65	0.80
Standoff	A1	.000	.0004	.002	0.00	0.01	0.05
Base Thickness	A3		.008 REF			0.20 REF	
Overall Width	E		.236 BSC			6.00 BSC	
Molded Package Width	E1		.226 BSC			5.75 BSC	
Exposed Pad Width	E2	.140	.146	.152	3.55	3.70	3.85
Overall Length	D		.236 BSC			6.00 BSC	
Molded Package Length	D1		.226 BSC			5.75 BSC	
Exposed Pad Length	D2	.140	.146	.152	3.55	3.70	3.85
Lead Width	B	.009	.011	.014	0.23	0.28	0.35
Lead Length	L	.020	.024	.030	0.50	0.60	0.75
Tie Bar Width	R	.005	.007	.010	0.13	0.17	0.23
Tie Bar Length	Q	.012	.016	.026	0.30	0.40	0.65
Chamfer	CH	.009	.017	.024	0.24	0.42	0.60
Mold Draft Angle Top	α			12°			12°

*Controlling Parameter

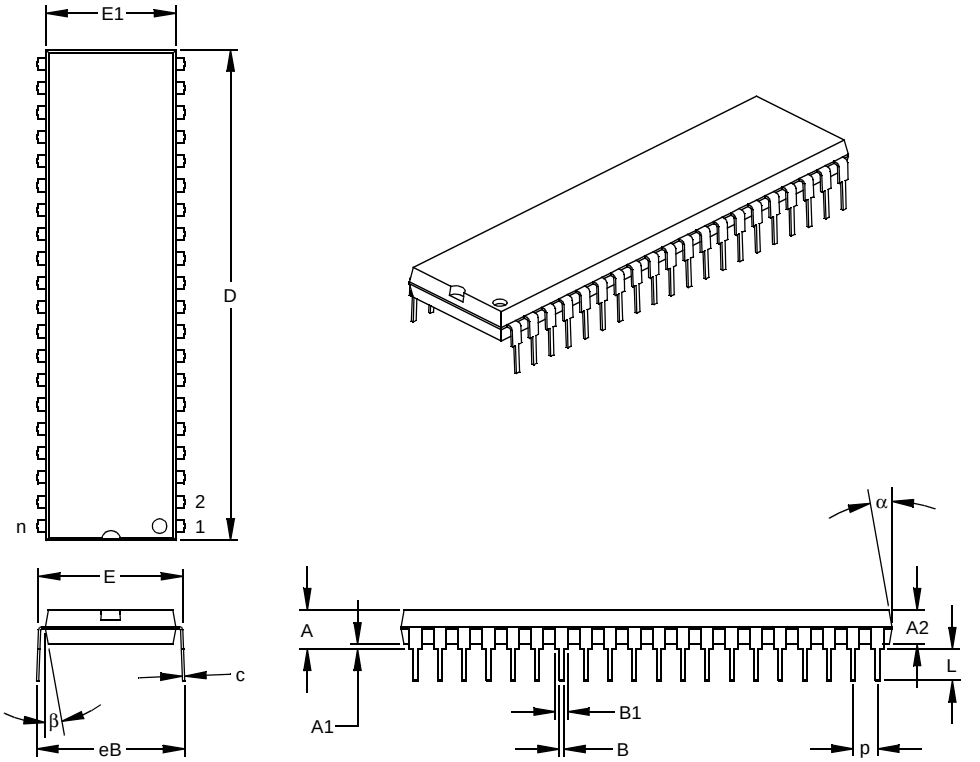
Notes:

Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.

JEDEC equivalent: mMO-220

Drawing No. C04-114

40-Lead Plastic Dual In-line (P) – 600 mil (PDIP)

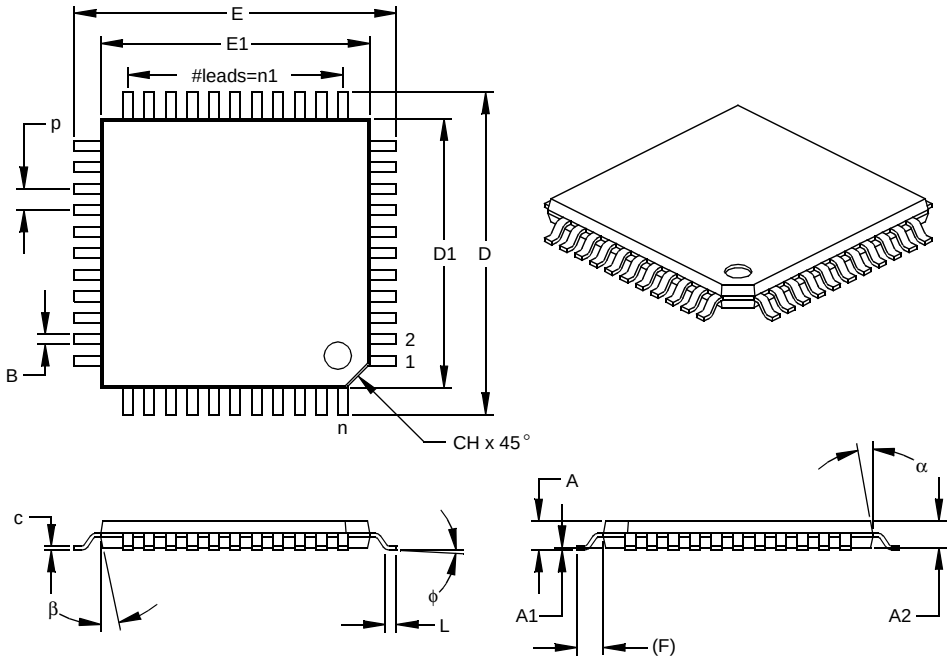


Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		40			40	
Pitch	p		.100			2.54	
Top to Seating Plane	A	.160	.175	.190	4.06	4.45	4.83
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.140	.150	.160	3.56	3.81	4.06
Base to Seating Plane	A1	.015			0.38		
Shoulder to Shoulder Width	E	.595	.600	.625	15.11	15.24	15.88
Molded Package Width	E1	.530	.545	.560	13.46	13.84	14.22
Overall Length	D	2.045	2.058	2.065	51.94	52.26	52.45
Tip to Seating Plane	L	.120	.130	.135	3.05	3.30	3.43
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.012	.015	0.20	0.29	0.38
Upper Lead Width	B1	.030	.050	.070	0.76	1.27	1.78
Lower Lead Width	B	.014	.018	.022	0.36	0.46	0.56
Overall Row Spacing §	eB	.620	.650	.680	15.75	16.51	17.27
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-011
Drawing No. C04-016

44-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) 10x10x1 mm Body, 1.0/0.10 mm Lead Form (TQFP)

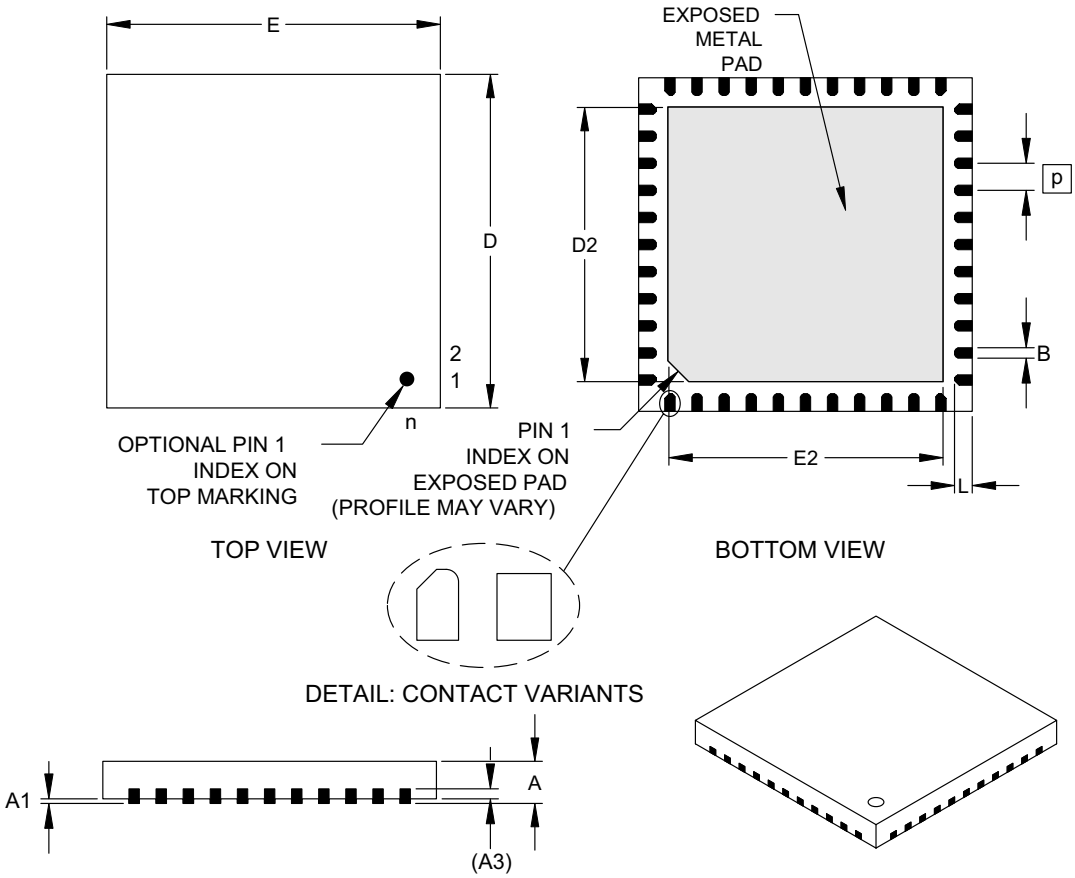


Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		44			44	
Pitch	p		.031			0.80	
Pins per Side	n1		11			11	
Overall Height	A	.039	.043	.047	1.00	1.10	1.20
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.037	.039	.041	0.95	1.00	1.05
Standoff §	A1	.002	.004	.006	0.05	0.10	0.15
Foot Length	L	.018	.024	.030	0.45	0.60	0.75
Footprint (Reference)	(F)		.039		1.00		
Foot Angle	φ	0	3.5	7	0	3.5	7
Overall Width	E	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Overall Length	D	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Molded Package Width	E1	.390	.394	.398	9.90	10.00	10.10
Molded Package Length	D1	.390	.394	.398	9.90	10.00	10.10
Lead Thickness	c	.004	.006	.008	0.09	0.15	0.20
Lead Width	B	.012	.015	.017	0.30	0.38	0.44
Pin 1 Corner Chamfer	CH	.025	.035	.045	0.64	0.89	1.14
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:
Dimensions D1 and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MS-026
Drawing No. C04-076

44-Lead Plastic Quad Flat No Lead Package (ML) 8x8 mm Body (QFN)



Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Contacts	n		44			44	
Pitch	p		.026 BSC [1]			0.65 BSC [1]	
Overall Height	A	.031	.035	.039	0.80	0.90	1.00
Standoff	A1	.000	.001	.002	0	0.02	0.05
Base Thickness	(A3)		.010 REF [2]			0.25 REF [2]	
Overall Width	E	.309	.315	.321	7.85	8.00	8.15
Exposed Pad Width	E2	.246	.268	.274	6.25	6.80	6.95
Overall Length	D	.309	.315	.321	7.85	8.00	8.15
Exposed Pad Length	D2	.246	.268	.274	6.25	6.80	6.95
Contact Width	B	.008	.013	.013	0.20	0.33	0.35
Contact Length	L	.014	.016	.019	0.35	0.40	0.48

*Controlling Parameter

Notes:

1. BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances. See ASME Y14.5M
2. REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only. See ASME Y14.5M
3. Contact profiles may vary.
4. JEDEC equivalent: M0-220

Drawing No. C04-103

NOTES:

APPENDIX A: REVISION HISTORY

Revision A (June 2003)

This is a new data sheet. However, these devices are similar to the PIC16C7X devices found in the PIC16C7X Data Sheet (DS30390) or the PIC16F87X devices (DS30292).

Revision B (November 2003)

This revision includes updates to the Electrical Specifications in **Section 18.0 "Electrical Characteristics"** and minor corrections to the data sheet text.

APPENDIX B: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

The differences between the devices in this data sheet are listed in Table B-1.

TABLE B-1: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

Difference	PIC16F737	PIC16F747	PIC16F767	PIC16F777
Flash Program Memory (14-bit words)	4K	4K	8K	8K
Data Memory (bytes)	368	368	368	368
I/O Ports	3	5	3	5
A/D	11 channels, 10 bits	14 channels, 10 bits	11 channels, 10 bits	14 channels, 10 bits
Parallel Slave Port	no	yes	no	yes
Interrupt Sources	16	17	16	17
Packages	28-pin PDIP 28-pin SOIC 28-pin SSOP 28-pin QFN	40-pin PDIP 44-pin QFN 44-pin TQFP	28-pin PDIP 28-pin SOIC 28-pin SSOP 28-pin QFN	40-pin PDIP 44-pin QFN 44-pin TQFP

APPENDIX C: CONVERSION CONSIDERATIONS

Considerations for converting from previous versions of devices to the ones listed in this data sheet are listed in Table C-1.

TABLE C-1: CONVERSION CONSIDERATIONS

Characteristic	PIC16C7X	PIC16F87X	PIC16F7X7
Pins	28/40	28/40	28/40
Timers	3	3	3
Interrupts	11 or 12	13 or 14	16 or 17
Communication	PSP, USART, SSP (SPI, I^2C Slave)	PSP, USART, SSP (SPI, I^2C Master/Slave)	PSP, AUSART, MSSP (SPI, I^2C Slave)
Frequency	20 MHz	20 MHz	20 MHz
A/D	8-bit	10-bit	10-bit
CCP	2	2	3
Program Memory	4K, 8K EPROM	4K, 8K Flash (1,000 E/W cycles)	4K, 8K Flash (100 E/W cycles)
RAM	192, 368 bytes	192, 368 bytes	368 bytes
EEPROM Data	None	128, 256 bytes	None
Other	—	In-Circuit Debugger, Low-Voltage Programming	—

INDEX

L

M

R

S

T

U

V

W

ON-LINE SUPPORT

Microchip provides on-line support on the Microchip World Wide Web site.

The web site is used by Microchip as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. To view the site, the user must have access to the Internet and a web browser, such as Netscape® or Microsoft® Internet Explorer. Files are also available for FTP download from our FTP site.

Connecting to the Microchip Internet Web Site

The Microchip web site is available at the following URL:

www.microchip.com

The file transfer site is available by using an FTP service to connect to:

ftp://ftp.microchip.com

The web site and file transfer site provide a variety of services. Users may download files for the latest Development Tools, Data Sheets, Application Notes, User's Guides, Articles and Sample Programs. A variety of Microchip specific business information is also available, including listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives. Other data available for consideration is:

- Latest Microchip Press Releases
- Technical Support Section with Frequently Asked Questions
- Design Tips
- Device Errata
- Job Postings
- Microchip Consultant Program Member Listing
- Links to other useful web sites related to Microchip Products
- Conferences for products, Development Systems, technical information and more
- Listing of seminars and events

SYSTEMS INFORMATION AND UPGRADE HOT LINE

The Systems Information and Upgrade Line provides system users a listing of the latest versions of all of Microchip's development systems software products. Plus, this line provides information on how customers can receive the most current upgrade kits. The Hot Line Numbers are:

1-800-755-2345 for U.S. and most of Canada, and

1-480-792-7302 for the rest of the world.

042003

READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this document.

To: Technical Publications Manager Total Pages Sent _____

RE: Reader Response

From: Name _____

Company _____

Address _____

City / State / ZIP / Country _____

Telephone: (_____) _____ - _____ FAX: (_____) _____ - _____

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply? ___Y ___N

Device: PIC16F7X7 Literature Number: DS30498B

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

3. Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

4. What additions to the document do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

5. What deletions from the document could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

7. How would you improve this document?

PIC16F7X7 PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

PART NO.	X	/XX	XXX
Device	Temperature Range	Package	Pattern

Device	PIC16F7X7[1], PIC16F7X7T[1]; VDD range 4.0V to 5.5V PIC16LF7X7[1], PIC16LF7X7T[1]; VDD range 2.0V to 5.5V
Temperature Range	I = -40°C to +85°C (Industrial) E = -40°C to +125°C (Extended)
Package	ML = QFN (Micro Lead Frame) PT = TQFP (Thin Quad Flatpack) SO = SOIC SP = Skinny Plastic DIP P = PDIP SS = SSOP
Pattern	QTP, SQTP, Code or Special Requirements (blank otherwise)

Examples:

a) PIC16F777-I/P 301 = Industrial temp., PDIP package, normal VDD limits, QTP pattern #301.

b) PIC16LF767-I/SO = Industrial temp., SOIC package, extended VDD limits.

c) PIC16F747-E/P = Extended temp., PDIP package, normal VDD limits.

Note 1: F = CMOS Flash
LF = Low-Power CMOS Flash

2: T = in tape and reel – SOIC, SSOP, TQFP packages only.

WORLDWIDE SALES AND SERVICE

AMERICAS

Corporate Office
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7200
Fax: 480-792-7277
Technical Support: 480-792-7627
Web Address: http://www.microchip.com

Atlanta
3780 Mansell Road, Suite 130
Alpharetta, GA 30022
Tel: 770-640-0034
Fax: 770-640-0307

Boston
2 Lan Drive, Suite 120
Westford, MA 01886
Tel: 978-692-3848
Fax: 978-692-3821

Chicago
333 Pierce Road, Suite 180
Itasca, IL 60143
Tel: 630-285-0071
Fax: 630-285-0075

Dallas
4570 Westgrove Drive, Suite 160
Addison, TX 75001
Tel: 972-818-7423
Fax: 972-818-2924

Detroit
Tri-Atria Office Building
32255 Northwestern Highway, Suite 190
Farmington Hills, MI 48334
Tel: 248-538-2250
Fax: 248-538-2260

Kokomo
2767 S. Albright Road
Kokomo, IN 46902
Tel: 765-864-8360
Fax: 765-864-8387

Los Angeles
18201 Von Karman, Suite 1090
Irvine, CA 92612
Tel: 949-263-1888
Fax: 949-263-1338

Phoenix
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7966
Fax: 480-792-4338

San Jose
2107 North First Street, Suite 590
San Jose, CA 95131
Tel: 408-436-7950
Fax: 408-436-7955

Toronto
6285 Northam Drive, Suite 108
Mississauga, Ontario L4V 1X5, Canada
Tel: 905-673-0699
Fax: 905-673-6509

ASIA/PACIFIC

Australia
Suite 22, 41 Rawson Street
Epping 2121, NSW
Australia
Tel: 61-2-9868-6733
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

China - Beijing
Unit 915
Bei Hai Wan Tai Bldg.
No. 6 Chaoyangmen Beidajie
Beijing, 100027, No. China
Tel: 86-10-85282100
Fax: 86-10-85282104

China - Chengdu
Rm. 2401-2402, 24th Floor,
Ming Xing Financial Tower
No. 88 TIDU Street
Chengdu 610016, China
Tel: 86-28-86766200
Fax: 86-28-86766599

China - Fuzhou
Unit 28F, World Trade Plaza
No. 71 Wusi Road
Fuzhou 350001, China
Tel: 86-591-7503506
Fax: 86-591-7503521

China - Hong Kong SAR
Unit 901-6, Tower 2, Metroplaza
223 Hing Fong Road
Kwai Fong, N.T., Hong Kong
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

China - Shanghai
Room 701, Bldg. B
Far East International Plaza
No. 317 Xian Xia Road
Shanghai, 200051
Tel: 86-21-6275-5700
Fax: 86-21-6275-5060

China - Shenzhen
Rm. 1812, 18/F, Building A, United Plaza
No. 5022 Binhe Road, Futian District
Shenzhen 518033, China
Tel: 86-755-82901380
Fax: 86-755-8295-1393

China - Shunde
Room 401, Hongjian Building
No. 2 Fengxiangnan Road, Ronggui Town
Shunde City, Guangdong 528303, China
Tel: 86-765-8395507 Fax: 86-765-8395571

China - Qingdao
Rm. B505A, Fullhope Plaza,
No. 12 Hong Kong Central Rd.
Qingdao 266071, China
Tel: 86-532-5027355 Fax: 86-532-5027205

India
Divyasree Chambers
1 Floor, Wing A (A3/A4)
No. 11, O'Shaugnessey Road
Bangalore, 560 025, India
Tel: 91-80-2290061 Fax: 91-80-2290062

Japan
Benex S-1 6F
3-18-20, Shinyokohama
Kohoku-Ku, Yokohama-shi
Kanagawa, 222-0033, Japan
Tel: 81-45-471- 6166 Fax: 81-45-471-6122

Korea
168-1, Youngbo Bldg. 3 Floor
Samsung-Dong, Kangnam-Ku
Seoul, Korea 135-882
Tel: 82-2-554-7200 Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or
82-2-558-5934

Singapore
200 Middle Road
#07-02 Prime Centre
Singapore, 188980
Tel: 65-6334-8870 Fax: 65-6334-8850

Taiwan
Kaohsiung Branch
30F - 1 No. 8
Min Chuan 2nd Road
Kaohsiung 806, Taiwan
Tel: 886-7-536-4818
Fax: 886-7-536-4803

Taiwan
Taiwan Branch
11F-3, No. 207
Tung Hua North Road
Taipei, 105, Taiwan
Tel: 886-2-2717-7175 Fax: 886-2-2545-0139

EUROPE

Austria
Durisolstrasse 2
A-4600 Wels
Austria
Tel: 43-7242-2244-399
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

Denmark
Regus Business Centre
Lautrup hoj 1-3
Ballerup DK-2750 Denmark
Tel: 45-4420-9895 Fax: 45-4420-9910

France
Parc d'Activite du Moulin de Massy
43 Rue du Saule Trapu
Batiment A - ler Etage
91300 Massy, France
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

Germany
Steinheilstrasse 10
D-85737 Ismaning, Germany
Tel: 49-89-627-144-0
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

Italy
Via Quasimodo, 12
20025 Legnano (MI)
Milan, Italy
Tel: 39-0331-742611
Fax: 39-0331-466781

Netherlands
P. A. De Biesbosch 14
NL-5152 SC Drunen, Netherlands
Tel: 31-416-690399
Fax: 31-416-690340

United Kingdom
505 Eskdale Road
Winnersh Triangle
Wokingham
Berkshire, England RG41 5TU
Tel: 44-118-921-5869
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

07/28/03